

Bell's Modified

LATIN COURSE



Contents

Title	1
Contents	3
Latin Pronunciation	5
Book One	9
Latin Course	11
English Exercises	67
Vocabularies to Exercises	95
Book Two	109
Summary of Grammar	111
Summary of Syntax	119
Latin Course	127
English Exercises	189
Vocabularies to Exercises	225
Book Three	247
Summary of Grammar	249
Summary of Syntax	265
Latin Course	267
English Exercises	337
Vocabularies to Exercises	371
Indices	389
Latin–English Index	391
English–Latin Index	421
Appendix	451
Commentary	453
Credits	455

Latin Pronunciation

VOWEL SOUNDS

VOWELS can be either short or long.

Whether a vowel is short or long can make a difference to the meaning; as — **est** with a short **e** means *is*; **ēst** with long **e** means *eats*. (The difference between these vowels is roughly like that between ‘pen’ and ‘pain’.)

THE SHORT VOWELS **a**, **e**, **i**, **o**, **u** are pronounced as in English: ‘pat’, ‘pet’, ‘pit’, ‘pot’, ‘put’. The **-us** of **amicus** is pronounced to rhyme with ‘puss’, not with (southern) English ‘fuss’.

THE LONG VOWELS are pronounced like the short vowels, only twice as long. They approximate to the English sounds in *bah*, *bay*, *bee*, *bow* (the kind you tie), *boo*. The English so-called long sounds (*a* ‘ay’, *e* ‘ee’, *i* ‘eye’, and *u* ‘you’) developed in the Middle Ages. Until then, English preserved the original Latin sounds, which are still the same in most European languages. A straight horizontal line over the letter can be used to mark a long vowel; as — **ā**, **ē**, **ī**, **ō**, **ū**.

i before another vowel is pronounced as **y**: **Iulius** sounds like ‘Yoolioos’, **maior**, *bigger* like ‘mah-yor’. (The letter *j* as in *Julius* and *major* is just a written variant of *i*, extended with a flourish. *j* was used for this sound in older Latin printed books, but no longer.)

Vowels before **m** or (in some circumstances) **n** were pronounced nasal, as in modern French *bon vin blanc*.

DIPHTHONGS

There are two common vowel combinations, or DIPHTHONGS, in Latin.

The diphthong **ae** developed from an earlier sound **ai**, pronounced as in 'Thailand' or the river 'Kwai'. This is the pronunciation used for **ae** by classicists.

au was originally pronounced like *ow* in 'now', and this is the classical pronunciation.

Less common is the combination **oe**. This is pronounced classically as in *oi* in 'oil', but it later changed to *e*, which we usually have in corresponding English words. It generally survives only after certain consonants (**p**, **b** or **m**) in a few words like **poena**, *penalty*; **oboediens**, *obedient*; and in Greek borrowings like **oenogarum**, *fish sauce with wine*.

CONSONANT SOUNDS

THE CONSONANTS **b**, **d**, **f**, **h**, **k**, **l**, **m**, **n**, **p**, **qu**, **s**, **t**, and **x** are pronounced exactly as in English.

The letter **r** should always be pronounced recognisably in Latin, and preferably trilled. The English tendency to drop it after a vowel needs to be resisted. Compare **mors**, *death* and **mōs**, *habit*; or **parco**, *spare* and **pāco**, *quieten*.

Double consonants should be pronounced double, like the double *n* in 'thinness' (not as in 'Guinness', which has a single sound). This helps to distinguish, e.g., between **alium**, *someone else* and **allium**, *garlic*, or between **annus**, *year* and **anus**, *old woman*.

c and **g** in classical pronunciation are always hard, as in 'cot' and 'got'. The combination **ch** is best pronounced just like **c**. It

is not really a Latin sound at all; **pulcher**, *beautiful* was originally spelt **pulcer**, but the **h** was added in the first century BC because then it was fashionable to sound Greek (see Greek sounds below).

v was pronounced originally like English **w**, as in **vīnum**, *wine*.

GREEK SOUNDS

There are several sounds that occur in Latin words borrowed from Greek, but not often in native Latin words. Romans who knew Greek might have tried to pronounce them as in Greek, while others would have used an approximation:

- **ch, th, rh** like **c, t, r**
- **ph** like **f** (as in **philosophia**, *philosophy*)
- **eu** like **e + u** (as in **Europa**, *Europe*)
- **y** like **i** (in Greek, this sounded like French *u* or German *ü*)
- **z** like English **z** or **dz**.



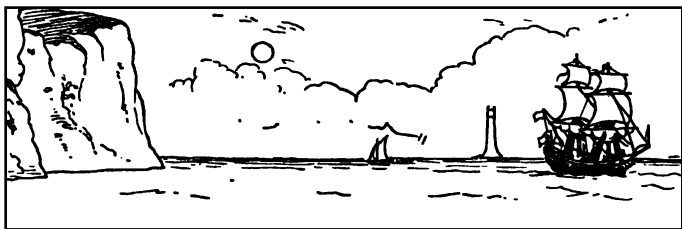
Bell's Modified

LATIN COURSE — BOOK 1





BRITANNIA TRIUMPHANT.



Latin Course

[Look for the meaning of the words in the Vocabulary.]

GRAMMAR

NOMINATIVE CASE — NOUNS

NOMINATIVE CASE. The subject and complement of a Latin sentence take the nominative case.

NUMBER. Latin, like English, has two grammatical numbers: singular and plural.

ENDINGS. The nominative singular ends in **-a**; the nominative plural ends in **-ae**.

STEM. The stem is that part of the substantive to which the endings are joined. Thus in the words **insul-a** and **insul-ae**, **insul-** is the stem, and **-a** and **-ae** are endings.

EXERCISE 1

1. Britannia est patria.
2. Hibernia est insula.
3. Alexandra est regina.
4. Patria est insula.

5. Insulae sunt patriae.
6. Britannia et Hibernia sunt insulae.
7. Regina est Alexandra.
8. Patriae sunt Britannia et Hibernia.
9. Insula est patria.
10. Patriae sunt insulae.

SENTENCE ANALYSIS: **Britannia est insula.**

SUBJECT. **Britannia** is called the subject of the sentence.

PREDICATE. **est insula** is called the predicate.

COMPLEMENT. **insula** is called the complement because it completes the sentence.

NOMINATIVE CASE. Britannia and insula, being the predicate and its complement, are therefore in the nominative case.

GRAMMAR

NOMINATIVE CASE — ADJECTIVES

ADJECTIVES. An adjective is a word that is added to, and expresses an attribute of, a noun. The adjective has the same case, number, and gender as its noun.

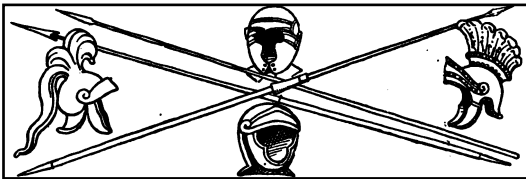
GENDER. Each Latin noun has grammatical gender: either masculine, feminine, or neuter (neither). Grammatical gender does not always align with natural gender. Most substantives of the first declension are feminine; a few denoting males are masculine; there are no neuter substantives of the first declension.

ENDINGS OF ADJECTIVES. The feminine adjective of the first declension has the same endings as the substantive (**-a** in the nominative singular, and **-ae** in the nominative plural).

EXERCISE 2



1. Patria est magna insula.
2. Victoria erat bona regina.
3. Magna regina est bona.
4. Multae insulae sunt parvae.
5. Britannia est magna insula.
6. Britannia et Hibernia sunt magnae insulae.
7. Bonae reginae sunt magnae.
8. Magnae insulae sunt patriae.
9. Multae reginae sunt bonae.
10. Parva insula est magna patria.



HASTAE ET GALEAE.

GRAMMAR

ACCUSATIVE CASE — TRANSITIVE VERBS

A Transitive Verb is different from the verb *to be*.

In the sentence **Britannia est insula**, the word **insula** is in the nominative case, because it merely describes the subject, and is connected with it by the verb **est**.

But in the sentence **Galea ornat figuram**, something is done by the subject to **figuram**. **Ornat** is therefore called a TRANSITIVE VERB.

The object of a transitive verb takes the ACCUSATIVE CASE, which answers the question *what?* or *whom?* The accusative singular ends in **-am**; the accusative plural ends in **-as**.

EXERCISE 3

1. Figura est Britannia.
2. Figura habet hastam.
3. Galea ornat figuram.
4. Hasta est magna.
5. Galea est parva.
6. Figura habet magnam hastam.
7. Parva galea ornat figuram.
8. Galea et hasta ornant figuras.
9. Britannia habet galeam et hastam.
10. Galea parva et hasta magna ornant figuras.



VICTORIA REGINA.

GRAMMAR

GENITIVE CASE — POSSESSION

THE GENITIVE CASE answers the question *of whom?* or *of what?* The genitive singular ends in **-ae**; the genitive plural ends in **-ārum**. It is translated with the preposition *of* or with *-’s*.

ORDER OF WORDS. Transitive verbs are generally placed at the end of the Latin sentence. The verb *to be* often occupies the same place as in English.

EXERCISE 4

1. Figura Britannia galeam portat.
2. Hasta figuram Britannia ornat.
3. Britannia undas gubernat.
4. Victoria erat regina patriae.
5. Britannia et Hibernia insulae Europae sunt.
6. Coloniae Britanniae sunt multae.
7. Figurae reginarum hastas portant.
8. Hasta bonae reginae est longa.
9. Regina insularum multas colonias gubernat.
10. Figurarum hastae sunt longae.

GRAMMAR

DATIVE CASE — INDIRECT OBJECT

INDIRECT OBJECT. The indirect object is the person (or thing) affected indirectly by an action, although not directly acted on by the verb (as *her* in *Give her the book* = *Give the book to her*).

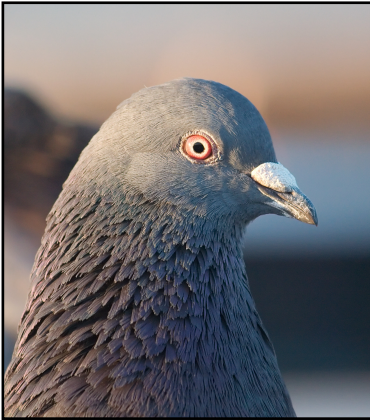
The indirect object in Latin takes the DATIVE CASE, which answers the question *to/for whom?* or *to/for what?* It follows adjectives and verbs that denote advantage or disadvantage, or nearness. It is generally translated by *to* or *for*.

The dative singular ends in **-ae**; the dative plural ends in **-īs**. (A straight mark signifies a long vowel, as **reginīs**, *to the queens*. Short syllables are not marked.)

EXERCISE 5

1. Aquila est magna.
2. Columba est parva.
3. Sagitta est noxia aquilae.

4. Silvati sunt carae aquilis.
5. Columba est praeda cara aquilae.
6. Silvarum umbra est grata aquilis et columbis.
7. Aquila magna est noxia parvis columbis.
8. Silva et umbra sunt gratae reginis.
9. Sagittae sunt noxiae magnis aquilis.
10. Columbae parvae sunt carae reginis.



COLUMBAE.



AQUILA.

GRAMMAR

ABLATIVE CASE

ABLATIVE CASE. The ablative is a case with diverse functions and may be translated by *with*, *from*, *by*, or *in*. Its most frequent use is to denote the **INSTRUMENT** or means by which something is done, or the manner in which some action is performed. The ablative singular ends in **-ā**; the ablative plural ends in **-īs**.

INFLEXION. These five cases – the nominative, accusative, genitive, dative, and ablative – make up the declension of a substantive. A sixth, the VOCATIVE CASE, is used to address a person. It is almost always identical in form to the nominative.

EXERCISE 6

1. Puella figuram rosis ornat.
2. Puellae figuras reginarum coronis ornant.
3. Regina sagittis aquilam vulnerat.
4. Reginae hastis et sagittis pugnant.
5. Puella figuram hastā et galeā ornat.
6. Reginae praeda parva contentae sunt.
7. Silvae aquilis et columbis plenae sunt.
8. Aquilae audaciā magnā plenae sunt.
9. Regina bona puellis contenta est.
10. Aquilae magnā audaciā pugnant.



DECORATING A STATUE OF DIANA.

EXERCISE 7

FIRST DECLENSION

Singular

Nom. Aquil-**a** est magna.

Acc. Aquil-**am** sagitta vulnerat.

Gen. Aquil-**ae** praeda est columba.

Dat. Aquil-**ae** cara est columba.

Abl. Aquil-**ā** digna est praeda.

Plural

Nom. Aquil-**ae** multas columbas vulnerant.

Acc. Aquil-**ās** columbae non amant.

Gen. Aquil-**ārum** patria est magna silva.

Dat. Aquil-**īs** noxiae sunt sagittae.

Abl. Aquil-**īs** plenae sunt insulae.

GRAMMAR

INFLEXION. A noun is declined by adding the case-endings to the end of the stem.

IRREGULAR DATIVE AND ABLATIVE PLURAL. A few nouns like **dea**, *goddess*, and **filia**, *daughter*, have dative and ablative plural endings in **-ābus** (**deābus** and **filiābus**), to distinguish them from the same cases of **deus**, *god*, and **filius**, *son*. As — **magnis deābus**, *to great goddesses*; **bonis filiābus**, *to good daughters*.

EXERCISE 8

Goddesses of the Romans

1. Minerva, Diana, Vesta magnae deae Italiae erant.
2. Minerva dea sapientiae erat.
3. Diana dea lunae erat.
4. Vesta dea arae et flammaram erat.
5. Minervae figura hastam et galeam et lorica habet.
6. Dea figuram victoriae saepe portat.
7. Sapientia saepe causa victoriae est.
8. Noctua plena est sapientiā et prudentiā.
9. Noctuae figura statuam deae saepe ornat.

10. Multae statuæ dearum Italiam ornant.

GRAMMAR

In a series of substantives in Latin, the conjunction **et**, *and* is either used between all, or omitted altogether.



MINERVA, DIANA, AND VESTA.

EXERCISE 9

Goddesses of the Romans

1. Diana, dea lunae, erat filia Latonae.
2. Fuga bestiarum cara deae erat.
3. Diana sagittis multas bestias vulnerat.
4. Luna statuam deae ornat.
5. Dianae sagittae filiabus Niobae noxiae erant.
6. Superbia Niobae causa erat pugnae.
7. Vesta, dea arae, statuas non saepe habet.

8. Puellae sanctas flammās deae semper servant.
9. Magnis deabus cara erat Italia.
10. Rosae et coronae statuas dearum saepe ornant.

GRAMMAR

APPOSITION. When two substantives come together in a sentence and refer to the same person or thing, they are put in the same case by apposition; as — **Diana, dea lunae**, *Diana, the goddess of the moon*.

EXERCISE 10

MASCULINE SUBSTANTIVES IN -a

1. Britannia est magna insula Europae.
2. Incolae Britanniae nautae et agricolae sunt.
3. Nautae undas, agricolae terram amant.
4. Nautis et agricolis luna et stellae carae sunt.
5. Nautae Britanniae magnā audaciā sunt.
6. Incolae insularum terram arant.
7. Incolae nautas coronis victoriae ornant.
8. Prudentia et sapientia nautarum incolis gratae sunt.
9. Agricolae umbram magnarum silvarum amant.
10. Terra agricolis, undae nautis carae sunt.

GRAMMAR

DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE OF QUALITY. An ablative of description, always with an adjective in agreement, is often found in Latin with the verb *to be*, or with another substantive.

Vir magnā audaciā. *A man of great boldness.*

Est parvā patientiā. *She is of small patience.*



AGRICOLA ET PUER.

GRAMMAR

THE VERB **sum**, *I am*, PRESENT TENSE

Sing.

1. **sum**, *I am*.
2. **es**, *thou art*.
3. **est**, *he is*.

Plur.

1. **sumus**, *we are*.
2. **estis**, *you are*.
3. **sunt**, *they are*.

EXERCISE 11

1. Incola Britanniae et nauta reginae sum.
2. Agricola Italiae magnā diligentīā es!
3. Nautae vita agricolae molesta est.

4. Incolae sumus magnae patriae.
5. Nautae magnā audaciā sumus.
6. Bonae puellae estis; regina prudentiam laudat.
7. Rosae sunt carae reginae et puellis.
8. Incola sum coloniae Britanniae.
9. Regina, nautis et agricolis cara es!
10. Bonae filiae et bonae puellae estis.



NAUTA ET PUELLA.

GRAMMAR

FUTURE AND IMPERFECT TENSES OF **sum**, *I am**Future*

Sing.

1. er-**ō**, *I shall be.*
2. er-**is**, *thou wilt be.*
3. er-**it**, *he will be.*

Plur.

1. er-**imus**, *we shall be.*
2. er-**itis**, *you will be.*
3. er-**unt**, *they will be.*

Imperfect

Sing.

1. er-**am**, *I was.*
2. er-**ās**, *thou wast.*
3. er-**at**, *he was.*

Plur.

1. er-**āmus**, *we were.*
2. er-**ātis**, *you were.*
3. er-**ant**, *they were.*

EXERCISE 12

1. Si bona puella eris, regina contenta erit.
2. Incola magnae patriae ero.
3. Si agricolae erimus, vita grata erit.
4. Silvae multis aquilis plenae erunt.
5. Coronis multis dignae eritis, puellae!
6. Silvarum umbra et undae gratae erunt.

7. Insula magna silvis plena erat.
8. Regina, multarum pagnarum causa eras!
9. Terrae rosis magnis plenae erant.
10. Bonae puellae eratis: dignae coronis eritis.

EXERCISE 13

SECOND DECLENSION

The second declension contains **MASCULINE** substantives ending in **-us** and **-er**, and **NEUTER** substantives ending in **-um**. The masculine adjectives end in **-us**, a few in **-er**, and the neuter in **-um**. They are declined in the same way as substantives, having like stems.

Singular Number

<i>Nom.</i>	Domin- us est bon- us .
<i>Acc.</i>	Domin- um bon- um bonus servus laudat.
<i>Gen.</i>	Domin- ī bon- ī servus est malus.
<i>Dat.</i>	Domin- ō bon- ō servus est carus.
<i>Abl.</i>	Domin- ō bon- ō servus dignus est.

GRAMMAR

VOCATIVE. Some substantives ending in **-us** have a separate form for the sixth, vocative case, which is used in addressing an object; as — **Domin-e**, *master!* In the vocative form of substantives in **-us**, the nominative ending **-us** is changed to **-e**. In all other substantives, the vocative and nominative forms are the same.

EXERCISE 14

MASCULINE SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES IN **-us***Singular Number*

1. Domini hortus plenus rosis est.
2. Servus bonus domini hortum arat.
3. Regina rosas in horto laudat.
4. Dominus coronam rosarum servo dat.
5. Amicus statuam Dianae in horto habet.
6. Servi filia figuram deae coronis ornat.
7. Rivus parvus magnum hortum ornat.
8. Servus magnum numerum rosarum domino dat.
9. Servus domino, dominus servo est contentus.
10. Domini servus in pugnā magnā erat.

GRAMMAR

PLACE WHERE? In answer to the question *where?* the place is expressed by the ablative of the substantive preceded by the preposition **in**. As — **in horto**, *in the garden*; **in pugnā**, *in battle*.

EXERCISE 15

MASCULINE SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES IN **-us***Plural Number*

- Nom.* Domin-**ī** bon-**ī** bonos servos laudant.
- Acc.* Domin-**ōs** bon-**ōs** boni servi laudant.
- Gen.* Domin-**ōrum** bon-**ōrum** servi boni sunt.
- Dat.* Domin-**īs** bon-**īs** servi cari sunt.
- Abl.* Domin-**īs** bon-**īs** servi contenti sunt.

EXERCISE 16

MASCULINE SUBSTANTIVES IN **-us***Plural Number*

1. Multi campi insulae equis bonis pleni sunt.
2. Servi equos dominorum in campis servant.
3. Grati equis sunt parvi rivi in hortis.
4. Multi domini bonos equos habent.
5. Horti dominorum grati servis sunt.
6. Servi magnam vietoriam dominorum laudant.
7. Domini amicis magnum numerum equorum dant.
8. Domini multos amicos, servi paucos habent.
9. Servi boni malis servis amici non sunt.
10. Domini boni multos amicos habent et servant.

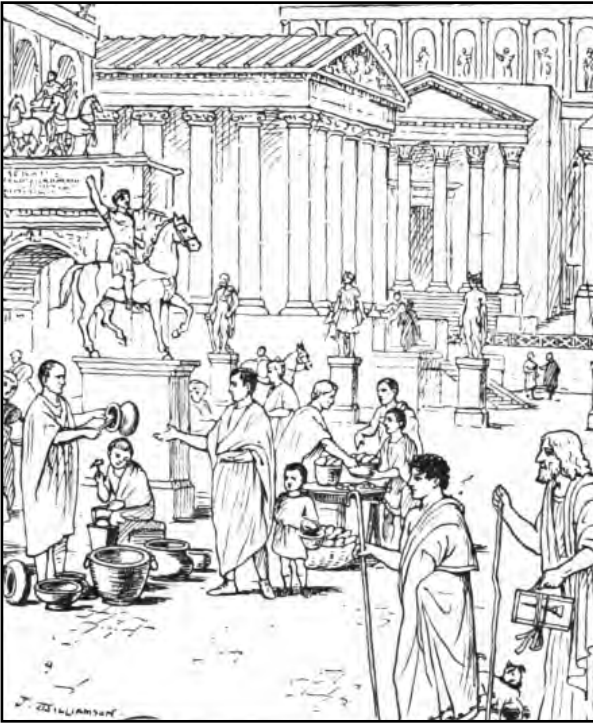


SATURN, MERCURY, AND NEPTUNE.

EXERCISE 17

Three Gods of the Romans

1. Populus Roinanus deos multos habet.
2. In numero deorum sunt Saturnus, Neptunus, Mercurius.
3. Romanorum dei in Olympo habitant.
4. Saturnus, camporum dominus, populum Romanum servat.
5. Neptunus, Oceani deus, undas hastā magnā gubernat.
6. Mercurius, deorum nuntius, deus eloquentiae est.
7. Saturnus in Italiā habitat et incolas magna sapientia gubernat.
8. Neptuno nautae tauros et equos mactant.
9. Alae parvae galeam Mercurii ornant.
10. Stellae Saturni, Neptuni, Mercurii incolis Britanniae carae sunt.



FORUM ROMANUM.

EXERCISE 18

NEUTER SUBSTANTIVES IN **-um***Singular*

- Nom.* For-**um** Romanum ornamentis plenum erat.
Acc. For-**um** Romanum multae statuae ornant.
Gen. For-**i** Romani templa splendida erant.
Dat. For-**ō** Romano bellum noxium erat.
Abl. In for-**ō** Romano multae arae erant.

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	Bell- a saepe longa et horrida sunt.
<i>Acc.</i>	Bell- a adversa Britanni non amant.
<i>Gen.</i>	Bell- ōrum proelia secunda populo grata sunt.
<i>Dat.</i>	Bell- īs magnis Britanni obnoxii sunt.
<i>Abl.</i>	Bell- īs longis servi contenti non sunt.

GRAMMAR

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES. It will be seen that masculine adjectives in **-us** are declined like masculine substantives in **-us** of the second declension; feminine adjectives in **-a** like feminine substantives of the first declension; and neuter adjectives in **-um** like neuter substantives in **-um** of the second declension.

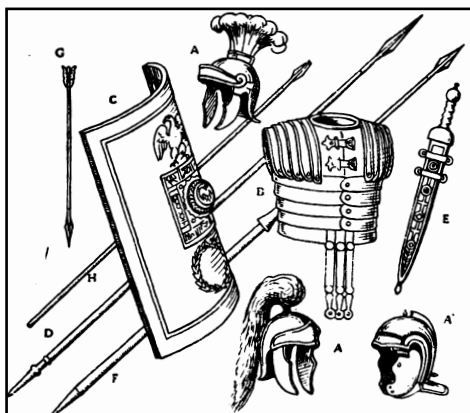
The adjective always agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case. Thus the adjective **bonus** in its three genders is declined as follows.

Singular

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	bon- us	bon- a	bon- um
<i>Acc.</i>	bon- um	bon- am	bon- um
<i>Gen.</i>	bon- ī	bon- ae	bon- ī
<i>Dat.</i>	bon- ō	bon- ae	bon- ō
<i>Abl.</i>	bon- ō	bon- ā	bon- ō

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-a
<i>Acc.</i>	bon-ōs	bon-as	bon-a
<i>Gen.</i>	bon-ōrum	bon-ārum	bon-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bon-īs	bon-īs	bon-īs
<i>Abl.</i>	bon-īs	bon-īs	bon-īs



ROMAN MILITARY EQUIPMENT.

AAA. Galeae; B. Lorica; C. Scutum; D. Hasta; E. Gladius; F. Pilum; G. Sagitta. H. Telum.

EXERCISE 19

Weapons of War

1. Romanis secundum bellum saepe gratum erat.
2. Poetae arma et tela semper laudant.
3. Armis et telis Romani in bello pugnant.

4. Arma erant galeae, loricae, scuta.
5. Tela erant hastae, gladii, pila, sagittae.
6. Scuta longa et galeae ferreae erant.
7. Loricis ferreis in proeliis non saepe pugnant.
8. Scuta figuris aquilarum saepe horrida erant.
9. Romani hastas et pila iactant et gladiis pugnant.
10. Populus Romanus magnā audaciā in bello pugnat.

EXERCISE 20

Forum Romanum

1. In oppidis magnis Italiae semper forum erat.
2. Forum erat locus iudiciorum et negotiorum.
3. Multa teinpla deorum forum ornat.
4. Statuis splendidis et ornamentis forum plenum erat.
5. Forum Romanum magnum et splendidum erat.
6. In foro Romano erant templa Vestae et Saturni.
7. Puellae in templo Vestae flammās sanctas servant.
8. In templo Satnrni populus pecuniam publicam servat.
9. Tabernae, scholae, thermae forum ornant.
10. Viae fori Romani statuis multis plenae erant.

EXERCISE 21

ADJECTIVES IN **-us** AGREEING WITH
MASCULINE SUBSTANTIVES IN **-a**

Singular

Nom.	bon- us naut- a
Acc.	bon- um naut- am
Gen.	bon- ī naut- ae

Dat. bon-**ō** naut-**ae**

Abl. bon-**ō** naut-**ā**

Plural

Nom. bon-**ī** naut-**ae**

Acc. bon-**ōs** naut-**ās**

Gen. bon-**ōrum** naut-**ārum**

Dat. bon-**īs** naut-**īs**

Abl. bon-**īs** naut-**īs**

GRAMMAR

GRAMMATICAL AGREEMENT. Note that the adjective here agrees with the substantive in gender, number, and case, but has different inflexions except in the dative and ablative plural.

PLACE WHITHER? The place *whither* (= *to which*) one goes is expressed by an accusative case preceded by a preposition, such as **ad**, *to*. As — **Nautae navigant ad insulam**, *The sailors sail to the island*.

Agricola et Nauta

1. Britannia est patria bonorum nautarum.
2. Multi incolae Britanniae sunt agricolae.
3. Agricolae boni silvas et herbas amant.
4. Nautae validi undas oceani arant.
5. Multi poetae validos nautas laudant.
6. Poetae clari proelia nautarum narrant.
7. Agricola validus equis et tauris terram arat.
8. Agricolis contentis ventus adversus est molestus.
9. Nautis validis venti secundi sunt grati.
10. Nautae timidi in oceano ventos adversos vitant.



ROMAN SOLDIERS BUILDING A FORT.

EXERCISE 22

Romans and Carthaginians

1. Poeni incolae clari Africae antiquae erant.

2. Agricolae industrii et strenui terram arant.
3. Nautae validi et periti ad Siciliam navigant.
4. Incolas strenuos bona terra Siciliae delectat.
5. Multi agricolae Poenorum in Siciliā habitant.
6. Periti nautae Romanorum ad insulam navigant.
7. Poeni et Romani hastis et gladiis pugnant.
8. Bellum Poenis adversum erat.
9. Romani incolas industrios Africae bello superant.
10. Poetae clari Romanorum de victoriis narrant.

GRAMMAR

PERSONAL PRONOUNS **ego**, I AND **tu**, thou

Nom.	ego , I	tū , thou (you)
Acc.	mē , me	tē , thee
Gen.	meī , of me	tuī , of thee
Dat.	mihi , to/for me	tibi , to/for thee
Abl.	mē , by/with me	tē , by/with thee

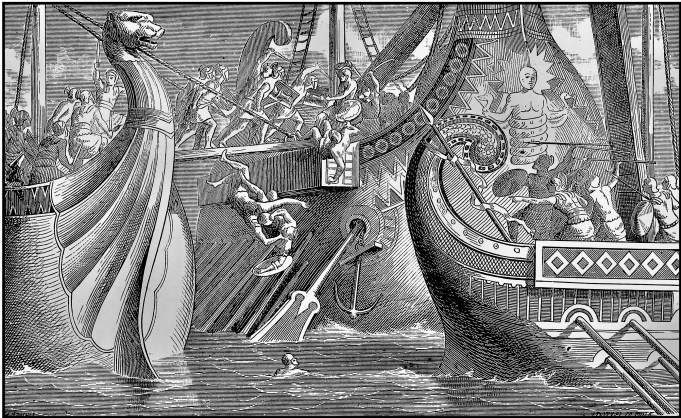
The endings of the verb always denote the person without the use of a personal pronoun. The pronouns are, however, used to express emphasis or contrast; as — *I am a farmer, you are a sailor*; **ego agricola sum, tu nauta es**.

ABLATIVE OF MEANS. The ablative often expresses the cause or means; as — **Ego te sapientiā supero**, *I surpass you in wisdom*. **Diversi sumus studiis**, *We are different in our pursuits*.

EXERCISE 23

Agricola et Nauta

1. Ego agricola strenuus sum, tu nauta validus es.
2. Me tauri et cervi delectant, tibi oceanus et venti grati sunt.
3. Mihi dominus est Marcus, tibi Tullius.
4. Oppidum mihi molestum, tibi gratum est.
5. Ego et tu diversi studiis sumus.
6. Ego a te diversus regulis vitae sum.
7. Ego te sapientiā supero, tu me prudentiā superas.
8. Ego tui semper cupidus ero, nam tu mei cupidus es et semper eras.
9. Si populus cupidus mei et tui erit, vita nobis periculosa non erit.
10. Si tu mihi fidus eris, ego tibi semper fidus ero.



POENI ET ROMANI.



A ROMAN SCHOOL.

EXERCISE 24

A Roman School

1. Romani pueros in ludis educant.
2. Magistri strenui saepe Graeci erant.
3. Sapientia Graeconim virorum clara erat.
4. Servus bonus Romanorum pueros semper gubernat.
5. Servi pueros in viis fori saepe servant.
6. Servus libros pueri ad ludum portat.
7. Pueri parvi in ludo litteras spectant.
8. Magistri litteras pueris nominant.

9. Pueri magistris litteras iterant.
10. Magistri pueros poetarum libris delectant.

GRAMMAR

MASCULINE SUBSTANTIVES IN **-er**

Puer pueri m., *boy*; **magister magistri m.**, *master*. A few substantives ending in **-er**, like **puer**, keep the **e** in the stem; most of them drop the **e**, like **magister**.

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	puer	magister
<i>Acc.</i>	puer- um	magistr- um
<i>Gen.</i>	puer- ī	magistr- ī
<i>Dat.</i>	puer- ō	magistr- ō
<i>Abl.</i>	puer- ō	magistr- ō

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	puer- ī	magistr- ī
<i>Acc.</i>	puer- ōs	magistr- ōs
<i>Gen.</i>	puer- ōrum	magistr- ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puer- īs	magistr- īs
<i>Abl.</i>	puer- īs	magistr- īs

EXERCISE 25

ADJECTIVES ENDING IN **-er***Roman Gods and Goddesses*

1. Viri Romani forum templis pulchris ornant.
2. Sacra via in foro multis templis clara erat.
3. Saturnus et Vesta pulchra templa in sacrā viā habent.

4. Tauri nigri Neptuno sacri erant.
5. Nautae validi tauros nigros Neptuno mactant.
6. Minervae oliva tenera erat sacra.
7. Baccho, poetarum deo, capri teneri erant sacri.
8. Poetae clari capros miseros Baccho mactant.
9. Dianae sagittae apris asperis periculosae erant.
10. Cervus tener Dianae pulchrae sacer erat.

GRAMMAR

The adjectives **asper**, *rough*; **miser**, *wretched*; and **tener**, *tender* keep the **e** before **r** in all the cases. The adjectives **niger**, *black*; **pulcher**, *beautiful*; and **sacer**, *sacred*, drop the **e** before **r** in all the cases.

CASE ENDINGS. The case endings are like those of **bonus**.

EXERCISE 26

The Story of Daedalus the Sculptor

1. Daedalus faber antiquus in Graecia erat.
2. Magister clarus parvum puerum educat.
3. Puer sapientia et prudentia magistrum superat.
4. Daedalus invidia magna puerum neeat.
5. Arbitri Graeci magistrum ad bestias damnant.
6. Faber ad agros insulae Cretae navigat.
7. Minos, vir malus, in agris Cretae regnat.
8. Daedalus, faber clarus, reginam delectat.
9. Regina taurum magnum et asperum servat.
10. Daedalus, reginae minister, tectum tauro aedificat.

EXERCISE 27

Daedalus

1. Tyrannus insulae fabro magno inimicus erat.
2. Daedalum, reginae ministrum, ad bestias damnat.
3. Daedalus magna audacia fugam parat.
4. Alas teneras fugae causa aedificat.
5. Viam stellis et lunae finitimam parat.
6. Vir magnus ad Italiam alis teneris navigat.
7. Daedalus viae tutae causa templum aedificat.
8. In templo alas deo sacras servat.
9. Magnas templi portas ornamentis multis ornat.
10. In numero clarorum fabrorum Daedalus semper erit.

GRAMMAR

The verb *to be*, used with a dative of the person, denotes possession; as — **est mihi gladius**, *I have a sword* (literally, *there is for me a sword*); **sunt Romanis templa multa**, *the Romans have many temples*.



DAEDALUS ET ICARUS.

EXERCISE 28

PERSONAL PRONOUNS **nos**, we AND **vos**, you*Plural*

<i>Nom.</i>	nōs , we	vōs , ye (you)
<i>Acc.</i>	nōs , us	vōs , you
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrī or nostrum , of us	vestrī or vestrum , of you
<i>Dat.</i>	nōbīs , to/for us	vōbīs , to/for you
<i>Abl.</i>	nōbīs , by/with us	vōbīs , by/with you

Athens and Sparta Contrasted

1. Nos incolae Athenarum sumus, vobis Sparta patria cara est.
2. Nobis vita tenera et iucunda est grata, vos disciplina strenua et dura deletat.
3. Nos muri longi, vos hastae et gladii servant.
4. Minerva nostri, Lycurgus vestri, semper est cupidus.
5. Nos sapientia, Minervae donum, deletat: vos disciplinae durae cupidi estis.
6. Vos in bello nobis pemiciosi eratis; vobis in proeliis Thebani perieulosi erant.
7. Multi nostrum, pauci vestrum, Musas et poetas amant.
8. Nobis multa templa deorum, vobis pauca ornamenta sunt.
9. Multis nostrum, paucis vestrum, Minerva cara est.
10. Nobis et vobis mundus semper gratus erit.

GRAMMAR

Nostri and **vestri** are the plural forms of the genitive when used as OBJECTIVE GENITIVES denoting the object of the activity implied by a noun or adjective (like **cupidus**, *fond of*).

Nostrum and **vestrum** are used as PARTITIVE GENITIVES, which denote part of an indefinite whole, such as after **multi** and **pauci**.

GRAMMAR

THE PERFECT TENSE OF **sum**, *I am*

Sing.

1. fu-**ī**
2. fu-**isti**
3. fu-**it**

Plur.

1. fu-**imus**
2. fu-**itis**
3. fu-**ērunt**

EXERCISE 29

A Letter to a Friend

1. Litterae tuae mihi gratae fuerunt.
2. Ego nuper in Italiā fui. Ubi tu tum eras?
3. Si tu et amicus tuus in Britanniā fuistis, magnum fuit gaudium tuum.
4. Sunt et fuerunt et erunt multae historiae Romani populi.

5. Si nunquam in Italiā fuisti, historia Romana memoriā digna est.
6. Roma antiqua monumentis et templis plena fuit.
7. In viis fori Romani multae statuae fuerunt.
8. Multa bella perniciose ornamentis oppidi fuerunt.
9. In bonā et pulchra tabernā fuimus.
10. Multi Britanni et pauci Galli in tabernā fuerunt.



THE ACROPOLIS OF ATHENS.

GRAMMAR

The persons of a verb can be distinguished by the endings. A subject is not used unless it is desired to call attention to the person speaking or to the person or thing pointed out.

EXERCISE 30

THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT TENSES OF **sum**, *I am*

Sing.

1. fu-**eram**
2. fu-**erās**
3. fu-**erat**

Plur.

1. fu-**erāmus**
2. fu-**erātis**
3. fu-**erant**

A Letter (Continued)

1. Diu in tabernā Romanā fueramus.
2. Tum in oppido Pompeiis fuimus.
3. Mirum fuit oppidum et dignum memoriā.
4. Ubi fuerant multi incolae, iam muri sine fenestris, sine portis fuerunt.
5. Incendia Vesuvii oppido perniciosa fuerant.
6. In muris oppidi adhuc pulchrae tabulae fuerunt.
7. Diu in oppido Pompeiis fueramus; turn in insulā Capreis fuimus.
8. In insula multa et pulchra templa fuerant.
9. Iam parvae ruinae fuerunt, ubi magna tecta fuerant.
10. Iam in patriā nostrā sumus et memoria Italiae semper grata erit.

GRAMMAR

APPOSITION. A plural substantive may be in apposition to a singular substantive; as — **oppidum Pompeii**, *the town of Pompeii*; **in insula Capreis**, *in the island of Capreae*.

EXERCISE 31

THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE OF THE VERB **sum**, *I am*

Sing.

1. fu-**ero**
2. fu-**eris**
3. fu-**erit**

Plur.

1. fu-**erimus**
2. fu-**eritis**
3. fu-**erint**



POMPEII AND MOUNT VESUVIUS.

Polyphemus and Ulysses

POLYPHEMUS: Barbari, unde estis? Ubi patria vestra est? Cur in insulā mea estis?

ULIXES: Nos Graeci sumus. Multos annos circa muros Troiae fuimus. Venti adversi causā in insulā tuā sumus. In bello longo clari fuimus. Magnum fuit oppidum Troianum, magnum fuit populus. Nautae validi sumus. Procella causa malorum meorum fuit. Si benignus fueris, grati erimus. Dona advenis semper grata erunt. Si benignus non fueris, dei adversi insulae tuae erunt. Nos miseri sumus; tu benignus eris.

POLYPHEMUS: Tu stultus es, barbare; incola stultae terrae fuisti. In tutelā deorum non sumus, non fuimus, non erimus. Tu cena grata eris. Polyphemi donum magnum et gratum erit.

ULIXES: Si fueris malus, magna erit poena. Si tu et socii fueritis boni, magnum erit praemium.

GRAMMAR

TIME HOW LONG? The accusative of extent or duration answers the question *how long?*; as — **multos annos**, *for many years*.



POLYPHEMUS ET ULIXES.



ROMAN SCHOOLBOYS.

EXERCISE 32

INDICATIVE MOOD OF **sum**, *I am**Dialogue between two boys, Caesar and Tullius.**An old woman shows the way.*

CAESAR: Quis es, puer?

TULLIUS: Ego sum Tullius.

CAESAR: Ubi est ludus tuus?

TULLIUS: Ludus meus prope forum est. Non procul sumus.

CAESAR: Ubi est via ad ludum?

TULLIUS: Incertus sum.

CAESAR: Quid igitur? Nonne via tibi nota est?

TULLIUS: Semper incertus ero, si in ludo diu fuero.

CAESAR: Ego, si semel in ludo fuero, non incertus ero.

TULLIUS: Via ad theatrum mihi nota est.

CAESAR: Via ad ludum mihi mox nota erit.

TULLIUS: Domina, ubi est via ad ludum Marcelli?

VETULA: Iuxta ludum Marcelli fuit taberna mea.

TULLIUS: Nonne via per forum est?

VETULA: Via ad dextram magis apta erit.

TULLIUS: Sed via ad dextram mihi non grata est.

CAESAR: Cur non te delectat?

TULLIUS: Ego et taurus magnus inimici sumus.

CAESAR: Non erit periculum. Ego praesidio ero.

TULLIUS: Via igitur per forum erit.

CAESAR: Habeo tibi gratiam, domina. Vale.

GRAMMAR

PREDICATIVE DATIVE. A few substantives are used in the dative case with the verb **sum** to express a purpose or result, and in English are translated by the nominative. As — **auxilio**, *help*; **praesidio**, *protection*.



SCENE IN A ROMAN SCHOOL.

EXERCISE 33

INDICATIVE MOOD OF **sum**

Arrival at school. The master joins the boys.

TULLIUS: Ecce ostium ludi!

MAGISTER: Salve! Quid est?

CAESAR: Ecce figura deae!

MAGISTER: Figura est Minervae.

TULLIUS: Quis autem est Minerva?

MAGISTER: Minerva dea sapientiae et litterarum est.

TULLIUS: Cur autem est galea in figurā deae?

MAGISTER: Minerva in bello bona magistra est. Nam sapientia et prudentia sunt causae victoriarum.

CAESAR: Nonne Minervae templum in oppido fuit?

MAGISTER: Olim templum in Capitolio erat, non procul. Nunc templi ruinae sunt. Iam hora scholae est.

CAESAR: Attentus sum.

MAGISTER: Nonne peritus es linguae Graecae?

CAESAR: Latinae peritus sum, sed non Graecae.

MAGISTER: Nonne libri tibi grati sunt?

CAESAR: Romanorum poetarum libri mihi cari sunt.

MAGISTER: Ecce tabella tua et stilus tuus! Si attentus fueris, magnum erit praemium.

CAESAR: Quid erit praemio?

MAGISTER: Liber pulcher erit praemio. Sed si studiosus eris, doctus eris. Sapientia est praemium optimum.

CAESAR: Mox studiosus ero. Nunc autem puer sum.

MAGISTER: Si puer studiosus non fuit, vir quoque ignavus erit.

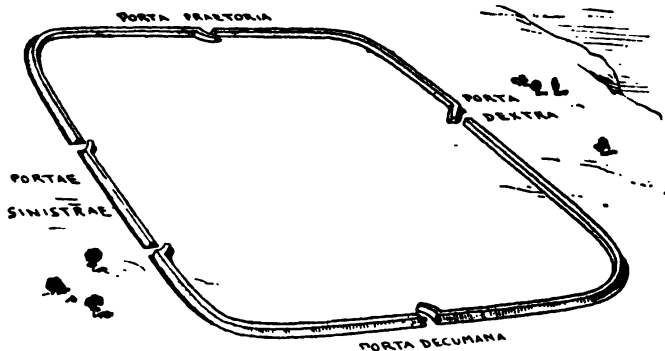
CAESAR: Proximo anno studiosus ero.

MAGISTER: Eheu! Nimis sero erit! Si non hodie studiosi fuimus, cras quoque ignavi erimus.

CAESAR: Attentus sura. In me mora non erit.

GRAMMAR

In answer to the question *when?*, time is expressed by the AB-
LATIVE OF TIME; as — **proximo anno**, *in the next year*.

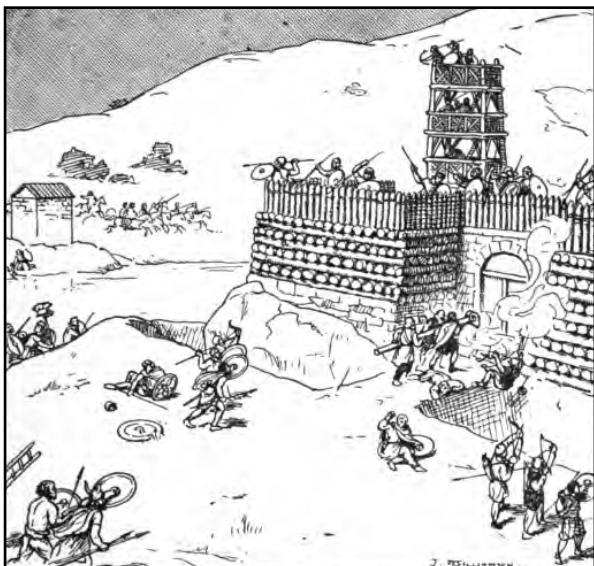


PLAN OF A ROMAN CAMP.

EXERCISE 34

SUBSTANTIVES GENERALLY USED IN THE PLURAL

1. Romanorum castra vallo et fossā tuta ab insidiis erant.
2. Magnae copiae in costris semper fuerunt.
3. Arma Romanorum erant galeae, scuta, loricae.
4. Insidiae Romanis saepe perniciosae fuerunt.
5. Copiae in insidiis Romanos oppugnant.
6. Post pugnam captivi Romanorum servi erant.
7. Post tenebras Romani in castris semper habitant.
8. Castra vallis et fossis tuta a periculo fuerunt.
9. Castra Romana portas quattuor habebant.
10. In Britanniā olim multa castra Romanorum erant.



ATTACK ON A ROMAN CAMP.

EXERCISE 35

An attack by the Gauls

1. Forte Romani Gallos in bello oppugnant.
2. Romani in castris in Galliā erant.
3. Romanorum copiae frumentum ex agris portant.
4. Subito ex latebris Gallorum copiae properant.
5. Portas et vallum et fossam castrorum oppugnant.
6. Paucae copiae adhuc in castris erant.
7. Castra iam in magno periculo erant.
8. Tum Romani frumentum ad castra portant.
9. Galli ad silvas et ad latebras ex periculo properant.
10. Sic castra vallo et fossā tuta erant.

GRAMMAR

PLACE WHENCE. The place from which movement is made is expressed using a preposition with the ablative; as — **ex agris**, *out of the fields*; **ex oppido**; *out of the town*.



BOADICEA AND HER ARMY.

EXERCISE 36

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

Boadicea, a British Queen

1. Multos annos Britannia in tutela populi Romani erat.
2. Boadicea, regina clara Icenorum, Romanis inimica erat.
3. Romani agros et oppida reginae vastant.
4. Copiae Romanae reginam saevis plagis vulnerant.
5. Pulchras filias reginae magnā saevitiā tractant.
6. Regina quadrigas et copias ad bellum parat.
7. Pallio regio saevas plagas celat.
8. Populus fidus ad proelium properat.
9. Romani Icenos magno in proelio superant.
10. Boadicea, regina misera, vitam in pugnā efflat.

GRAMMAR

THE FIRST CONJUGATION

PRESENT TENSE (INDICATIVE ACTIVE)

Sing.

1. am-**ō**, *I love*
2. am-**ās**, *thou lovest*
3. am-**āt**, *he loves*

Plur.

1. am-**āmus**, *we love*
2. am-**ātis**, *you love*
3. am-**ant**, *they love*

EXERCISE 37

Ulysses

1. Graeci cum Troianis decem annos pugnant.
2. Tandem Graeci oppidum praeclarum expugnant.
3. Troia, magnum in Asia oppidum, iam flagrat.
4. Graeci clari ad patriam suam navigant.
5. Viri multi ad Graeciam tuto appropinquant.
6. Sed Ulixes multos annos per oceanum errat.
7. Ventus adversus et dei irati virum et socios ex viā fugant.
8. Neptunus iratus oceani undas agitat.
9. Tandem Ulixes ad insulam Siciliam appropinquat.
10. Polyphemus, Cyclops saevus, in insulā habitat.

GRAMMAR

FUTURE TENSE (INDICATIVE ACTIVE)

Sing.

1. am-**ā-b-ō**, *I shall love*
2. am-**ā-bi-s**, *thou wilt love*
3. am-**ā-bi-t**, *he will love*

Plur.

1. am-**ā-bi-mus**, *we shall love*
2. am-**ā-bi-tis**, *you will love*
3. am-**ā-bu-nt**, *they will love*

EXERCISE 38

Ulysses and Polyphemus

POLYPHEMUS: Barbari, unde navigatis? Cur per oceanum erratis?

ULIXES: Troiae ex oris navigamus. Ad patriam nostram properamus.

POLYPHEMUS: Cur in regnum meum intratis?

ULIXES: Ventus adversus carinam nostram huc portat.

POLYPHEMUS: Procul ex viā erratis. Magnam poenam mihi dabit.

ULIXES: Per deos Polyphemum oramus.

POLYPHEMUS: Polyphemus deos ignorat. Nos deos superamus.

ULIXES: Si tu nos bene tractabis, dei te praemiis onerabunt. Auxilium rogamus. Tu nobis cenam dabis.

POLYPHEMUS: Advenas malos nunquam iuvabimus.

ULIXES: Si tu nos male tractabis, dei advenarum nos vindicabunt.

POLYPHEMUS: Advenas non iuvabo. Socii tui cenam mihi parabunt. Membra vestra lacerabo et bene cenabo.

ULIXES: Eheu! Polyphemus nos lacerabit et devorabit! Quomodo nos ex speluncā Polyphemi liberabimus? Vinum validum Polyphemo dabo. Tum Polyphemi oculum acuto ligno caecabo. Sic me et socios meos a Polyphemo liberabo. Tum ab insulā Siciliā ad Graeciam navigabimus.

GRAMMAR

IMPERFECT TENSE (INDICATIVE ACTIVE)

Sing.

1. am-**ā-ba-m**, *I was loving*
2. am-**ā-bā-s**, *thou wast loving*
3. am-**ā-ba-t**, *he was loving*

Plur.

1. am-**ā-bā-mus**, *we were loving*
2. am-**ā-bā-tis**, *you were loving*
3. am-**ā-ba-nt**, *they were loving*



ULYSSES ABOUT TO PUT OUT THE EYE OF POLYPHEMUS.

EXERCISE 39

1. Sine morā Polyphemus duos socios raptabat.
2. Graecos ad terram magnā violentiā iactat.
3. Viros miseros necat, et cenam tum parabat.
4. Graecorum membra lacerabat et devorabat.
5. Ulixes autem consilium bonum parabat.
6. Lignum magnum in foco flagrabat.
7. Ulixes lignum magnum et acutum raptat.
8. Tum ligno acuto Polyphemi oculum caecat.
9. Statim Ulixes et socii ex speluncā properabant.
10. Sic Graeci iram Polyphemi vitabant.

GRAMMAR

PERFECT TENSE (INDICATIVE ACTIVE)

Sing.

1. amāv-**ī**, *I have loved, I loved*
2. amāv-**istī**, *thou hast loved*
3. amāv-**īt**, *he has loved*

Plur.

1. amāv-**imus**, *we have loved*
2. amāv-**ītis**, *you have loved*
3. amāv-**ērunt**, *they have loved*

EXERCISE 40

Aeneas escapes from Troy

1. Aeneas multis in proeliis circa Troiam pugnavit.
2. Dei Troianum virum e periculo saepe servaverunt.
3. Achilles aliquando Aeneam in pugnā superabat.

4. Neptunus autem e periculo virum raptavit.
5. Post bellum Troianum Aeneas cum sociis suis migravit.
6. Debrum statuas et Minervae scutum portaverunt.
7. Primum ad Graeciam et ad Siciliam navigaverunt.
8. Tum procella saeva profugas ad Africam transportavit.
9. Dido, Poenorum regina, profugas bene tractavit.
10. Aeneas reginae pulchrae de belli pugnis narravit.

GRAMMAR

ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT. The preposition **cum** is regularly used before the name of a person when the English *with* denotes *in company with, along with*. **Aeneas cum sociis suis navigat**, *Aeneas sails with his companions*.



FLIGHT OF AENEAS FROM TROY.

GRAMMAR

PLUPERFECT TENSE (INDICATIVE ACTIVE)

Sing.

1. amāv-**eram**, *I had loved*
2. amāv-**erās**, *thou hadst loved*
3. amāv-**erat**, *he had loved*

Plur.

1. amāv-**erāmus**, *we had loved*
2. amāv-**erātis**, *you had loved*
3. amāv-**erant**, *they had loved*

EXERCISE 41

He relates to Dido the tale of the war

1. 'Graeci multos annos Troiam iam oppugnaverant.
2. Tum Minervae auxilio equum magnum paraverunt.
3. In equo magno multos viros celaverant.
4. Tum Graeci equum ad muros raptaverunt.
5. Viri autem ceteri ad insidias properaverant.
6. Graeci in latebris carinas suas celaverant.
7. Nos autem equum in oppidum raptavimus.
8. Mox viri, in equo celati, oppidum superaverunt.
9. Graeci ex insidiis ad oppidum properaverunt.
10. Dei Troianum oppidum dolo vastaverant.'

EXERCISE 42

Aeneas tells his story

1. 'Troia, Neptuno sacra, iam flagrabat.
2. Oceani per undas ad patriam novam navigavimus.

3. Tum vento secundo ad insulam Delum properavimus.
4. Insula sacra nautas fessos invitat.
5. In templo sacro Phoebum oravimus.
6. "Ubi oppidum novum aedificabimus? Quo properabimus?"
7. "Nonne populum meum, caeli domine, servabis?"
8. Sic deum oraveram. Deus autem responsum incertum significavit.
9. Mox trans oceanum iterum properavimus.
10. Iam ad oppidum tuum, regina magna, navigavimus.'

GRAMMAR

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE (INDICATIVE ACTIVE)

Sing.

1. amāv-**ero**, *I shall have loved*
2. amāv-**eris**, *thou wilt have loved*
3. amāv-**erit**, *he will have loved*

Plur.

1. amāv-**erimus**, *we shall have loved*
2. amāv-**eritis**, *you will have loved*
3. amāv-**erint**, *they will have loved*

EXERCISE 43

Dido falls in love

1. Mox autem Dido Aeneam amavit.
2. Regina coniugium cum Troiano viro optavit.
3. Nuptiae tamen deos non delectabant.

4. Mercurius igitur, deorum nuntius, ad terram properavit.
5. Statim deus Aeneam multis cum verbis culpavit.
6. 'Cur in Africā cessabis?'
7. 'Si ad Italiam tuto navigaveris, magnum regnum ibi parabis.'
8. 'Caeli deus sic imperavit.'
9. 'Frustra pugnaveris et multa pericula vitaveris, si nuptiae Troianae te delectabunt.'
10. Aeneas statim ad Italiam properavit.

EXERCISE 44

Dialogue between a master and a boy. The fall of Troy.

MAGISTER: Si tu mihi de bello Troiano narrabis, praemiam tibi dabo.

PUER: Longa est historia. Quomodo ego de bello narrabo?

MAGISTER: Ubi erat Troia?

PUER: Troia oppidum in orā Asiae erat.

MAGISTER: Cur Graeci Troiam oppugnaverant?

PUER: Troiani Helenam, Graecam feminam, raptaverant.

MAGISTER: Quot annos Graeci oppidum oppugnabant?

PUER: Decem annos Graeci et Troiani pugnauerunt.

MAGISTER: Quomodo Graeci oppidum expugnaverunt?

PUER: Graeci equum magnum aedificaverunt. Tum viri fugam simulaverunt.

MAGISTER: Cur Graeci equum magnum aedificaverant?

PUER: Insidias et latebras paraverunt. In equo ligneo viros paucos celaverant. Tum equum ante portas locant. Ceteri viri ad latebras properant.



THE TROJAN HORSE.

EXERCISE 45

The fall of Troy (Continued)

MAGISTER: Cur Troiani equum in oppidum portaverunt?

PUER: Votum sacrum deis Troianis parabant.

MAGISTER: Ubi Troiani Graecorum donum locaverunt?

PUER: Ante templum dei Troiani monstrum raptant.

MAGISTER: Quomodo Graeci oppidum expugnaverunt?

PUER: Magnum gaudium in oppido regnabat. Graeci ad patriam suam navigaverant. Troiani ad castra deserta Graeco-

rum properant. Subito post tenebras Graeci ex equo properaverunt et oppidum expugnaverunt. Frustra Troiani pugnant. Graeci multos necant, multos captivos raptant. Aeneas, vir Troianus, statuas deorum raptat et ad Italiam properat. Magnum oppidum aedificat et multos annos in Italiā regnat. Equus ligneus Troiae erat perniciosus. Dona igitur inimicorum non laudabimus.



English Exercises

*[The subjects of these Exercises are number for number
the same as in the Latin Exercises.]*

1.

NOMINATIVE CASE

1. Britain is the native-land.
2. The queen is Alexandra.
3. Ireland is an island.
4. Britain and Ireland are islands.
5. The islands are native-lands.
6. Alexandra is the queen.
7. The native-land is an island.
8. The islands are Britain and Ireland.
9. The native-lands are islands.
10. The native-land is Ireland.

2.

NOMINATIVE CASE — ADJECTIVES

1. The island is large.
2. The queen is good.
3. The islands are small
4. The queens are good.
5. Ireland is a large island.
6. A small island is the father-land.
7. The good queen is small.
8. Many queens are good.

9. The small islands are many.
10. Britain and Ireland are large islands.

3.

ACCUSATIVE CASE

1. A spear adorns the figure.
2. Britannia has a helmet.
3. The figures have spears.
4. Helmets adorn the figures.
5. Britannia has a small spear.
6. Small spears adorn the large figures.
7. Many figures have spears and helmets.
8. Britannia has many islands.
9. A helmet and spear adorn the queen.
10. The good queens have large helmets.

4.

GENITIVE CASE

1. A helmet adorns the figure of Britannia.
2. Spears adorn the figures of the queens.
3. The queen of the island is Alexandra.
4. The figure of the queen has a helmet.
5. The queens of the islands carry spears.
6. The queen of Britain has many colonies.
7. Many colonies of Britain are islands.
8. The queen of the islands has many spears.
9. Many islands of Europe are large.
10. The figures of Britannia carry helmets and spears.

5.

DATIVE CASE

1. Eagles are large.
2. Doves are small.
3. The wood is dear to the eagle.
4. The arrows are hurtful to the dove.
5. The dove is pleasing to the queen.
6. Spears are dear to the queen.
7. Woods are pleasing to doves and eagles.
8. Large eagles are hurtful to small doves.
9. The shade and the wood are dear to the eagle and the dove.
10. Dear to the good queen is the small dove.

6.

ABLATIVE CASE

1. The girls adorn the queen with roses.
2. The girl wounds the dove with an arrow.
3. The eagle is content with great booty.
4. The island is full of doves and eagles.
5. The good girls are content with the great queen.
6. The girls wound the eagles with arrows.
7. The queen fights with great boldness.
8. The small dove is full of great boldness.
9. The girls adorn the figures with crowns.
10. The queens fight with spears and arrows.

7.

FIRST DECLENSION

Singular

- Nom.* The dove is small.
Acc. The eagle wounds the small dove.
Gen. Great is the boldness of the small dove.
Dat. Dear to the dove is the shade of the woods.
Abl. The queens are contented with the dove.

Plural

- Nom.* The small doves love the great woods
Acc. The large eagles wound the small doves.
Gen. The island is the native-land of doves.
Dat. Eagles are hurtful to small doves.
Abl. The woods are full of doves.

8.

Three Goddesses of Italy

1. Minerva was a great goddess of Italy.
2. A helmet and a breastplate adorn the statue of the goddess.
3. The figure of the goddess carries a spear.
4. Minerva was the goddess of wisdom.
5. A battle and booty were dear to Minerva.
6. The figure of Victory often adorns the statue of the goddess.
7. Girls adorn the statue with roses and crowns.
8. Minerva loves the wisdom of the owl.
9. Owls are dear to the goddess of wisdom.

10. Italy is full of many statues of the goddess.

9.

Three Goddesses (Continued)

1. Diana was the daughter of Latona.
2. The figure of the moon adorns the helmet of the goddess.
3. Niobe was a queen of Greece.
4. The pride of Niobe was hurtful to Latona.
5. Diana with arrows wounds the daughters of Niobe.
6. The goddess of the moon loves the flight of wildbeasts.
7. The flames of the altar are dear to Vesta.
8. The holy maidens keep the flames of Vesta.
9. Italy was always dear to the goddesses.
10. The maidens adorn the statues of the goddesses with many roses.

10.

MASCULINE SUBSTANTIVES IN -a

1. Britain and Ireland are large islands of Europe.
2. The colonies of the fatherland are many and large.
3. The inhabitants of the colonies are sailors and farmers.
4. The farmer [ploughs] the land, the sailor ploughs the waves.
5. The queen of Britain governs the islands and colonies.
6. The girls praise the wisdom and prudence of the sailors.
7. The inhabitants adorn the statues of the queen with garlands.

8. The good girls love the battles of the sailors.
9. The sailors carry large helmets and spears.
10. The farmers wound the eagles with small arrows.

11.

PRESENT TENSE OF **sum**, *I am*

1. I am an inhabitant of Britain and a farmer.
2. Thou art a great and good queen.
3. The fatherland is contented with the sailors and farmers.
4. We are daughters of a great and good queen.
5. You are inhabitants of a large island.
6. O queen, thou art worthy of many wreaths.
7. O girls, you are the cause of many battles.
8. We are sailors of a great colony.
9. You are good girls and of great prudence [abl.].
10. O queen, thou art dear to the sailors of Britain.

11.

FUTURE AND IMPERFECT TENSES OF **sum**

1. If thou art a good queen, thou wilt be worthy of many crowns.
2. We shall be farmers of a great land.
3. A farmer's life will be troublesome to a sailor.
4. The wood will be full of many doves.
5. The queens were contented with the sailors.
6. We were good daughters; the queen was content.
7. O sailor, thou wast the cause of many battles!
8. I was the cause of many victories.

9. You were sailors of a great father-land.
 10. Thou wast full of great boldness, O queen!

13.

MASCULINES IN **-us** (SINGULAR)

- Nom.* The garden is large.
Acc. The master has a large garden.
Gen. The roses of the large garden are many.
Dat. The wild-beasts are hurtful to the large garden.
Abl. The master is contented with the large garden.
Nom. The friend is good.
Acc. The slave praises the good friend.
Gen. The wisdom of the good friend is great.
Dat. The island is dear to the good friend.
Abl. The slave is worthy of a good friend.

14.

MASCULINES IN **-us** (SINGULAR)

1. A large number of roses is in the garden of the friend.
2. The master adorns the garden with a statue of Minerva.
3. The girl praises the large number of doves in the island.
4. The queen gives a crown to the good lord.
5. The friend of the master has a small stream in the garden.
6. The daughters of the slave adorn the statues with roses.
7. Minerva, Diana, Vesta were in the number of goddesses.
8. The friend [is worthy of] the lord, the lord is worthy of the friend.
9. In the great woods there is a large number of eagles.

10. The waves of the small river are troublesome to the dove.

15.

PLURALS OF SUBSTANTIVES IN **-us**

Nom. There are many stags in the large woods of the island.

Acc. The masters wound many stags with arrows.

Gen. The number of large stags is great.

Dat. The shade of the woods is dear to the small stags.

Abl. The woods in the island are full of stags.

Nom. The wolves lay waste the large gardens.

Acc. The slaves wound the large wolves with spears.

Gen. The number of wolves in the native-land is small.

Dat. The spears of the slaves are hurtful to the wolves.

Abl. The large woods are filled with wolves.

16.

1. Many wolves lay waste the plains of the island.

2. The slaves wound the wolves with spears and swords.

3. The streams in the plains are dear to the horses.

4. The friends praise the great victory of the queen.

5. The stags are dear to the wolves in the plains.

6. Few masters are contented with slaves.

7. The friends praise the gardens of the lords.

8. Good masters will always be friends to slaves.

9. The wolves and stags were inhabitants of the plains.

10. The small streams are dear to the wolves and stags.

17.

Three Gods of the Romans

1. Many gods were dear to the inhabitants of Italy.
2. Olympus was the native-land of the great gods.
3. The sailors sacrifice bulls on the altars of Neptune.
4. Saturn protects the Roman people with great boldness.
5. Small wings adorn the statue of Mercury.
6. Neptune, the god of the ocean, governs the streams.
7. Many gods in Olympus were not friends to Saturn.
8. Saturn dwells in Italy and protects the people.
9. Mercury has many statues in many lands.
10. The slaves sacrifice small bulls to the gods of the people.

18.

SUBSTANTIVES IN **-um**

- Nom.* The large town is full of splendid temples.
- Acc.* The Roman people lays waste the small town.
- Gen.* The gardens of the town are dear to the girls.
- Dat.* The small stream is pleasing to the town.
- Abl.* The large gardens are worthy of the town.
- Nom.* The temples of the gods have altars and statues.
- Acc.* The queen praises the splendid temples of Italy.
- Gen.* The sailors adorn the altars of the temples with wreaths.
- Dat.* Unsuccessful war is hurtful to the large temples.
- Abl.* In the holy temples the inhabitants sacrifice bulls.

19.

SUBSTANTIVES IN **-um**

1. An unsuccessful war was troublesome to the Roman people.
2. The Romans in battle throw spears and javelins.
3. The sailors fight with small swords in the war.
4. The long shield and the small sword were the cause of victory.
5. A helmet, a breastplate, a shield are the arms of a Roman.
6. A spear, a javelin, an arrow are the missiles of Romans.
7. The slaves wound the wild-beasts with missiles and stones.
8. The sailors avoid many missiles with the long shields.
9. The iron missile wounds the savage wolf.
10. Figures of eagles often adorn the long shields.

20.

NEUTERS IN **-um**

1. Many towns in Italy have a large market-place.
2. The market-place was always filled with slaves.
3. The Roman people love the baths and the theatre.
4. In the market-place were the temples of many gods.
5. The battles of the slaves were often hurtful to the statues in the forum.
6. The slaves fight in the streets with stones and swords.
7. Many masters were always in the baths and in the theatres.
8. The splendid shops were filled with many ornaments.

9. Flames were often hurtful to the shops and temples.
10. Mercury, the messenger of the gods, has many statues in the streets.

21.

AGREEING IN CASE, NUMBER, AND GENDER

1. Strong sailors and timid farmers are inhabitants of the island.
2. A timid sailor avoids the great waves of the ocean.
3. The strong farmers plough the land with bulls.
4. The celebrated poets love the battles of the sailors.
5. Adverse winds are troublesome to good farmers.
6. The wicked sailors sacrifice bulls to Neptune.
7. The celebrated poet relates the victory of the queen.
8. Mercury, the god of eloquence, protects the celebrated poets.
9. Neptune, the god of the ocean, wounds the wicked sailors.
10. Adverse winds will always be troublesome to timid sailors.

22.

Romans and Carthaginians

1. The Romans were celebrated inhabitants of Italy.
2. The sailors of the Romans were vigorous and strong.
3. The inhabitants of Africa were industrious and skilful.
4. Many inhabitants of Africa plough the land of Sicily.
5. The skilful sailors of the Romans sail to Sicily.

6. The Roman sailors were not welcome to the Carthaginians.
7. The Romans overcome the Carthaginians in battle.
8. The Carthaginians sail to Africa with a favourable wind.
9. The skilful sailors of the Romans overcome the Carthaginians.
10. The worthy poets relate about the battles with great wisdom.

23.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

A Farmer and a Sailor

1. I am an inhabitant of Britain, thou art a stranger.
2. The island is dear to me; the town delights you.
3. Pleasing to me are the streams, to you the ocean is dear.
4. A life in the woods is troublesome to you and dear to me.
5. I surpass you in prudence [abl.], you surpass me in patience [abl.].
6. If you will be fond of me, I shall always be fond of you.
7. Life will be pleasant to you, if you will be industrious.
8. You were always faithful to me; I shall never be hostile to you.
9. If you surpass me in wisdom [abl.], I surpass you in eloquence [abl.].
10. Different rules of life delight you and me.

24.

MASCULINE SUBSTANTIVES IN **-er***A Roman School*

1. The schools of the Roman boys were often in small sheds in the forum.
2. The boys always have attendants in the streets.
3. The attendants of the boys were good slaves.
4. The slaves carry books to school for the boys.
5. The attendants protect the boys in the streets of the forum.
6. The master of the school was often a Greek.
7. The boy repeats the Greek letters to the master.
8. The books of the poets delight the masters and boys.
9. The poets relate in the books about the victories of the heroes.
10. The boys name the books of the poet for the masters.

25.

ADJECTIVES ENDING IN **-er***Various Customs of the Romans*

1. The attendants sacrifice to the gods in the beautiful temples.
2. Bacchus, the god of poets, loves the tender goat.
3. Black bulls delight Neptune, the god of the ocean.
4. Tender olive-trees were sacred to Minerva.
5. The beautiful Diana wounds with arrows the rough boar.

6. The arrows of the beautiful boy are dangerous to the tender deer.
7. Beautiful statues of Mercury adorn the Sacred Street.
8. The rough boars in the woods are dangerous to tender boys.
9. The beautiful deer avoid the spears of the heroes.
10. The farmers plough the rough field with black bulls.

26.

Daedalus, The Earliest Sculptor in Greece

1. The statues of Daedalus were large and beautiful.
2. The Greeks praise the beautiful statues of the workman.
3. A small boy was dear to the famous workman.
4. The great master praises the beautiful statues of the boy.
5. The statues of the boy surpass the statues of Daedalus.
6. Daedalus with great envy kills the tender boy.
7. The Greeks carry the workman to the judges.
8. The judges condemn the wicked man to [ad] the wild-beasts.
9. The workman by great prudence avoids the wild-beasts.
10. Daedalus sails to a beautiful island of Greece.

27.

Daedalus Escapes From Crete by Flying

1. The tyrant of Crete does not love the famous workman.
2. A savage bull was the cause of the anger of the tyrant.
3. The servants of the ruler keep the workman in the island.

4. Daedalus prepares wings for the purpose of flight.
5. He prepares a journey near to the moon and stars.
6. He sails to the fields of ancient Italy.
7. In the lands of Italy he builds a temple to the gods.
8. He adorns the beautiful temple with many statues.
9. He gives the sacred wings to the god of the temple.
10. The Greeks and Romans reckon [have] Daedalus in the number of famous workmen.

28.

PLURAL PERSONAL PRONOUNS

Luxurious Athens and Stern Sparta Contrasted

1. We are inhabitants of Sparta, you are strangers in the town.
2. Vigorous discipline delights us, you are fond of a pleasant life.
3. Different rules of life are dear to you and to us.
4. We are different from [a] you in our pursuits.
5. We are content with the protection of spears; long walls protect you.
6. The olive and the rose are dear to us.
7. Few of you love a pleasant life.
8. To many of us the temple of Minerva is dear.
9. You were hostile to us: the Thebans were dangerous to you.
10. To many of us and few of you a pleasant life is dear.

29.

PERFECT OF **sum***A Letter from Italy*

1. We have been in Italy. Where have you been?
2. If you have been in Britain, a letter will be welcome.
3. The history of the Roman people was dear to you at [in] school.
4. If we have never been in Italy, the history of Rome is known to us.
5. The towns were and are full of beautiful monuments.
6. Great was my joy; great will be yours, if you shall be in Italy.
7. In the streets and in the market-places were many statues of Mercury.
8. The inns were good, and many friends were known to us.
9. The inhabitants of Rome were friendly to us.
10. Horrid war has been destructive to the monuments of Italy, but there are still many statues in the town.

30.

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT OF **sum***A Visit to Italy*

1. I had been a long time in the town.
2. The beautiful monuments of the forum had been known to me.
3. Then we were in a beautiful inn in celebrated Campania.
4. Vesuvius was near to the gates of the town.

5. The fires of Vesuvius had been destructive to Pompeii.
6. Where a house had been, now there was a wall.
7. A beautiful island was near to the town.
8. Formerly there had been many temples in the island.
9. Where the dwellings had been, now there were ruins.
10. The history of the temples had been known to us, and the memory of the island will always be pleasant.

31.

FUTURE PERFECT OF **sum***Polyphemus and Ulysses*

POLYPHEMUS: O barbarian, whence art thou? Where was thy native-land? Why art thou on my shore?

ULYSSES: O Polyphemus, I am a Greek. My companions are great sailors. We have been for a long time on the ocean. The winds have been adverse to us. A woman was the cause of the Trojan war. The battles have been many in the Trojan fields. The war has been destructive to the town. Now we are in thy island on account of adverse winds. If thou wilt be kind, thy reward will be great. If thou art unfriendly, the gods will be adverse to thee.

POLYPHEMUS: The inhabitants of Greece are foolish: you have been in a land of barbarians. I will be kind to you and your companions.

ULYSSES: If your companions shall have been kind, we shall be grateful to you. We are under [in] the protection of the gods. The gods will be kind to your island.

POLYPHEMUS: A beautiful gift shall be thine. Thy companions shall be pleasant meals. Then thou shalt be a meal.

32.

INDICATIVE MOOD OF **sum***Dialogue between Two Boys and an Old Woman*

CAESAR: Hail, O boy! Who is the master of the school?

TULLIUS: Marcellus was the master. Now a Greek is the lord.

CAESAR: How many boys are in the school?

TULLIUS: Once we were many, now we are few.

CAESAR: Where is thy slave?

TULLIUS: Today he is in the fields.

CAESAR: Where is the way to school?

TULLIUS: I am uncertain. My memory was always bad.

CAESAR: Lo! here is an old woman!

TULLIUS: O mistress! Where will be the way to the school of Marcellus?

OLD WOMAN: The way is known to me. My shop is near the school.

TULLIUS: I shall be grateful to you, if the way shall be known to me.

OLD WOMAN: Here is the temple of Saturn! The way to the right will be suitable to you.

TULLIUS, I am grateful to you, mistress.

33.

INDICATIVE MOOD OF **sum***A Master and Two Boys, Tullius and Caesar*

TULLIUS: Hail! O master. Here is an industrious boy!

MASTER: Hail! O boy. Why art thou here?

CAESAR: I shall be grateful, if the school shall have been known to me.

MASTER: Great is my joy, if a boy has been industrious.

CAESAR: Great will be my thanks to you, if I shall be learned.

MASTER: If you shall be learned, the memory of school will be pleasing to you.

CAESAR: I shall always be attentive and industrious.

MASTER: Thou art skilled in the Latin language [gen.]. Here is a writing-tablet! The Greek letters will now be known to you.

CAESAR: Farewell! Tomorrow the letters will be known to me.

35.

PLURAL SUBSTANTIVES

The Romans in Britain

1. The Romans formerly had many camps in Britain.
2. Large forces of the Romans sail to our island.
3. The Britons carry few and ancient arms.
4. The Roman forces overcome the barbarians of our native-land.
5. The arms and weapons of the strangers were destructive to the wretched barbarians.
6. The Romans attack the forces of the Britons with swords and spears and arrows.

7. The forces of the barbarians make ready for flight [prepare flight] and hasten to the woods.
8. Then the Romans protect a camp with ditches and ramparts.
9. The Britons do not build camps, but the ambushes were dangerous to the Roman forces.
10. The Romans protect the town with a ditch and a rampart.

35.

PLURAL SUBSTANTIVES

A Roman Camp

1. The moon was full and the waves were destructive to the Roman forces on the ocean.
2. Great was the danger of the forces in the island.
3. The camps were safe from danger but they had not corn.
4. The forces bring corn to the camp from the fields.
5. Many of the Romans were in the fields for the sake of the corn.
6. A few were in the camp for the sake of protection.
7. The forces of the barbarians hasten from ambush and attack the Romans.
8. The Romans throw darts and hasten to the camp.
9. The camp was protected by walls and ditches.
10. The Romans overcome the forces of the barbarians.

36.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

Boadicea perishes in Battle with the Romans.

1. The Romans had large forces in Britain for many years.
2. By chance Boadicea, queen of the Iceni, was hostile to the Romans.
3. The Romans wound the beautiful queen with fierce blows.
4. The queen and [her] daughters supplicate the gods.
5. The Druids with fierce words urge on the queen to [ad] war.
6. 'Great has been the pride of Rome; great shall be the danger.'
7. 'The Gauls are attacking the gates of the town of Rome.'
8. 'Hostile arms shall be destructive to the native-land of the Romans.'
9. 'Thy people shall be master in lands where the eagles of the Romans have not been.'
10. The wretched queen fights and breathes out [her] life in the fierce battle.

37.

FIRST CONJUGATION, PRESENT TENSE

1. The Greeks attack the town of Troy for ten years.
2. At last the Greeks conceal a few men in a wooden horse.
3. The Trojans carry the wooden horse into the town.
4. The men in the wooden horse capture the town.
5. The splendid monuments of Troy are soon in flames.

6. The tired heroes hasten to their native-lands.
7. A few of the Greeks wander over the ocean for many years.
8. Adverse winds carry a few heroes out of their ways.
9. The angry gods raise the waves with fierce winds.
10. Ulysses by chance draws near to the island of the fierce Polyphemus.

38.

PRESENT AND FUTURE TENSES

Ulysses and Polyphemus

POLYPHEMUS: O barbarian, whence dost thou sail? Why dost thou wander over the waves of the ocean?

ULYSSES: I sail from the Trojan shores. I hasten to Greece.

POLYPHEMUS: Why dost thou enter into my island?

ULYSSES: Adverse winds drive our ships out of their courses.

POLYPHEMUS: Thou art wandering far from thy native-land.

ULYSSES: We implore help. Thou wilt assist us.

POLYPHEMUS: We will not assist strangers. We will drive thee and thy comrades from our island.

ULYSSES: The gods will help us. We supplicate our gods.

POLYPHEMUS: We know not the gods. Polyphemus surpasses the gods.

ULYSSES: If thou wilt treat us well, the gods will load thy companions with rewards.

POLYPHEMUS: We shall give a beautiful reward to you. Thy companions will give a meal to us.

ULYSSES: If thy companions shall treat us ill, the angry gods will avenge us.

POLYPHEMUS: We shall tear thy limbs, and we shall dine well.

ULYSSES: Alas! Polyphemus and [his] comrades will tear and devour us! How shall I free my men from Polyphemus? We will give good wine to the great and savage tyrant. Then we shall destroy the eye of the monster with sharp stakes. So we shall free ourselves [nos] from Polyphemus. Then we shall hasten over the ocean to our father-land.

39.

IMPERFECT TENSE

1. Then Polyphemus was preparing a meal in the cave.
2. Not far off two Greeks were avoiding the monster.
3. The Cyclops throws the men to the earth.
4. Without delay he rends and devours the limbs.
5. But the Greeks in the cave were preparing a plan.
6. Large logs were burning on the hearth.
7. Without delay the comrades were seizing the logs.
8. Then with the sharp stakes they were blinding the eye of Polyphemus.
9. At once Ulysses was hastening to his ship.
10. Soon the Greeks were sailing from the island.

40.

PERFECT TENSE

Aeneas escapes from Troy

1. The Greeks fought for many years around the walls of Troy.
2. Aeneas, a Trojan hero, overcame many of the Greeks.
3. The gods often saved Aeneas out of the battle.
4. Then the fires of the Greeks devoured the town.
5. Aeneas seized the statues of his gods and hastened from the town.
6. Many companions sailed with the Trojan hero.
7. The angry gods raised great waves on the ocean.
8. Adverse winds carried the ships out of their courses.
9. By chance the ships drew near to the shores of Africa.
10. Dido loaded the fugitives with many gifts.

41.

PLUPERFECT TENSE

The Story of Aeneas

1. 'For ten years we had overcome the Greeks in battle.
2. Often we had preserved our town from danger.
3. We had avoided many plans dangerous to Troy.
4. Then the Greeks with great wisdom prepared a new plan.
5. Firstly they had built a wooden horse on the shore.
6. Then they had placed the horse before the gates of Troy.
7. The heroes of the Greeks had hastened to ambush.
8. But the Trojans dragged the horse through the gates.

9. Soon the men hastened out of the horse and overcame the town.
10. Troy was in flames and the Greeks had overcome us by a plan.'

42.

1. We have wandered far from our native-land.
2. The fierce Greeks destroyed our town and our temples.
3. We are sailing to a new land and implore help.
4. If thou wilt help us, O great queen, the gods will load thee with rewards.
5. We have avoided the dangers of the ocean. Thou wilt help the wretched fugitives.
6. Then we will sail to the shores of a new fatherland.
7. By chance we have sailed to your fields, O queen.
8. Great will be our thanks, if thou wilt treat us well.
9. The weary sailors implore your protection.
10. If thou wilt not give us aid, the gods will avenge us.

43.

VARIOUS TENSES

Aeneas and Dido

1. Soon the queen of the Trojans had loaded the Greeks with gifts.
2. The tender queen loves the weary fugitive.
3. The marriage however did not please the gods.
4. The messenger of the gods had hastened to Aeneas.
5. Then with many words Mercury blames the Trojan.

6. 'Why hast thou not already sailed for Italy?
7. Thy comrades shall build a great town in the new fatherland.
8. The Trojan marriage does not please the gods.
9. If thou wilt hasten from the city, thou wilt avoid many dangers.'
10. Without delay Aeneas was sailing to a new kingdom.

44.

The Fall of Troy (Dialogue)

MASTER: I have related to you about the Trojans. Where is Troy?

BOY: The Trojans used to live in the town. Now it is a ruin on the coast of Asia.

MASTER: Why is there a ruin, where the town was?

BOY: The Greeks attacked Troy for ten years and destroyed the town.

MASTER: Why did the Greeks sail to the coast of Troy?

BOY: A Trojan hero had seized a Greek woman.

MASTER: How did the Greeks capture the town?

BOY: Not in battle but by stratagem they overcame the Trojans.

MASTER: Where did the Greeks prepare an ambush?

BOY: They built a wooden horse. Then they pretend flight. They conceal a few heroes in the great horse. The other heroes hasten to their hiding-places on the coast. Great joy reigns in the Trojan camp.

45.

MASTER: Where did the Greeks place the wooden horse?

BOY: They dragged the monster to the walls of Troy.

MASTER: Why did the Trojans carry the horse into the town?

BOY: They desire a gift for their angry gods.

MASTER: How did the Greeks prepare their plan?

BOY: After dark the heroes hasten out of the horse. After the long war great joy reigns in the town. The other Greeks hasten out of their hiding-places. Soon they overcome the Trojans. The beautiful temples of the gods are in flames. The Greeks kill many heroes, many women. A few Trojans hasten to their ships and sail across the ocean. Aeneas wanders to the coast of Italy. He builds a new town and prepares a great kingdom.



Vocabularies to Exercises

NOTE. Latin has no article. Depending on context, **patria** may be translated *the country*, *a country*, or simply *country*.



1.

Singular.

insula, *island*.

patria, *native-land, country*.

regina, *queen*.

est, (*he, she, it*) *is*.

erat, (*he, she, it*) *was*.

Britannia, *Great Britain*.

Hibernia, *Ireland*.

Alexandra, *Alexandra*.

Victoria, *Victoria*.

et, *CONJ.*, *and*.

Plural.

insulae, *islands*.

patriae, *native-lands*.

reginae, *queens*.

sunt, (*they*) *are*.

2.

Singular.

magna, *great, large*.

parva, *small, little*.

bona, *good*.

multa, *much, many*.

Plural.

magnae.

parvae.

bonae.

multae.

3.

figūra, *a figure*.

galea, *helmet*.

hasta, *spear*.

Britannia, *Britannia (the figure personified)*.

hab-et, (*he, she, it*) *has*.

hab-ent, (*they*) *have*.

orn-at, (*he, she, it*) *adorns*.

orn-ant, (*they*) *adorn*.

4.

colonia, *colony*.

Europa, *Europe*.

unda, *wave*.

longa, ADJ., *long*.

port-at, (*he, she, it*) *carries*.

port-ant, (*they*) *carry*.

gubern-at, (*he, she, it*) *governs*.

gubern-ant, (*they*) *govern*.

5.

aquila, *eagle*.

columba, *dove*.

praeda, *prey, booty*.

sagitta, *arrow*.

silva, *wood*.

umbra, *shade*.

cāra, ADJ., *dear*.

grāta, ADJ., *pleasant, pleasing*.

noxia, ADJ., *hurtful*.

6.

audācia, *boldness*.

corōna, *garland, wreath*,
crown.

puella, *girl, maiden*.

rosa, *rose*.

plena, ADJ., *filled with, full of*
(+ abl.).

contenta, ADJ., *contented with*
(+ abl.).

pugn-at, (*he, she, it*) *fight*s.

pugn-ant, (*they*) *fight*.

vulner-at, (*he, she, it*) *wounds*.

vulner-ant, (*they*) *wound*.

7.

am-at, (*he, she, it*) *loves*.

am-ant, (*they*) *love*.

digna, ADJ., *worthy of* (+ abl.).

non, ADV., *not*.

8.

āra, *altar*.

dea, *goddess*.

flamma, *flame*.

lōrīca, *corselet, breastplate*.

lūna, *moon*.

noctua, *owl*.

prūdentia, *prudence*.

sapientia, *wisdom*.

statua, *statue*.

victōria, *victory*.

Diāna, *the goddess Diana*.

Minerva, *the goddess Minerva*.

Italia, *Italy*.

Vesta, *the goddess Vesta*.

er-at, (*he, she, it*) *was*.

er-ant, (*they*) *were*.

saepe, ADV., *often*.

9.

bestia, *wild beast*.

causa, *cause*.

filia, *daughter* (dat. and abl.

filiābus).

fuga, *flight*.

pugna, *fight, battle*.

superbia, *pride*.

Lātōna, *Latona*.

Graecia, *Greece*.

Nioba, *Niobe*.

sancta, ADJ., *holy*.

serv-at, (*he, she, it*) *keeps or protects*.

serv-ant, (*they*) *keep or protect*.

semper, ADV., *always*.

10.

agricola m., *farmer*.

incola m., *inhabitant*.

nauta m., *sailor*.

stella f., *star*.

terra f., *earth, land*.

ar-at, (*he, she, it*) *ploughs*.

ar-ant, (*they*) *plough*.

11.

diligentia -ae f., *diligence*.

molesta, ADJ., *troublesome*.

vita -ae f., *life*.

sum, *I am*.

laud-at, (*he, she, it*) *praises*.

laud-ant, (*they*) *praise*.

12.

er-ō, *I shall be*.

er-am, *I was*.

sī, CONJ., *if*.

13.

amicus -i m., *friend*.

hortus -i m., *garden*.

dominus -i m., *master, lord*.

servus -i m., *slave*.

bonus, ADJ., *good*.

cārus, ADJ., *dear*.

contentus, ADJ., *contented with*
(+ abl.).

magnus, ADJ., *great, large*.

noxius, ADJ., *hurtful*.

dignus, ADJ., *worthy of*
(+ abl.).

malus, ADJ., *bad, wicked.*

14.

numerus -i m., *number.*

rivus -i m., *a stream, (small)
river.*

d-at, (*he, she, it*) *gives.*

d-ant, (*they*) *give.*

parvius, ADJ., *small.*

plenus, ADJ., *full of (+ abl.).*

in, PREP., + abl., *in, on.*

15.

cervus -i m., *stag.*

lupus -i m., *wolf.*

vast-at, (*he, she, it*) *lays waste.*

vast-ant, (*they*) *lay waste.*

16.

equus -i m., *horse.*

campus -i m., *plain.*

multus, ADJ., *much, many.*

non, ADV., *not.*

paucus, ADJ., *few.*

17.

āla -ae f., *wing.*

ēloquentia -ae f., *eloquence.*

deus -i m., *a god.*

nuntius -i m., *messenger.*

ōceanus -i m., *ocean.*

populus -i m., *people.*

taurus -i m., *bull.*

Rōmānus, ADJ., *Roman.*

Mercurius -i m., *Mercury.*

Neptūnius -i m., *Neptune.*

Sāturnus -i m., *Saturn.*

Olympus -i m., *Olympus.*

habit-at, *dwells, lives.*

habit-ant, *dwelt, live.*

mact-at, *sacrifices.*

mact-ant, *sacrifice.*

18.

bellum -i n., *war.*

forum -i n., *forum, market-
place.*

oppidum -i n., *a town.*

ornamentium -i n., *ornament,
decoration.*

proelium -i n., *battle.*

templum -i n., *temple.*

de, PREP. + ABL., *about.*

adversus -a -um, ADJ.,
unsuccessful, adverse.

horridus -a -um, ADJ., *rough;
horrid, savage.*

longus -a -um, ADJ., *long.*

obnoxius -a -um, ADJ.,

exposed.

splendidus -a -um, ADJ.,

splendid.

secundus -a -um, ADJ.,

prosperous, successful.

19.

arma armōrum n.pl., arms

(defensive armour).

gladius -ii m., sword.

pīlum -i m., javelin (for hurling

at the enemy).

poeta -ae m., poet.

saxum -i n., a stone (large).

scutum -i n., a shield (oblong

and covered with leather).

telum -i n., a missile (weapon

for throwing).

ferreus -a -um, ADJ., iron,

made of iron.

molestus -a -um, ADJ.,

troublesome.

iact-at, throws.

iact-ant, throw.

vit-at, avoids.

vit-ant, avoid.

20.

iūdicium -ii m., trial (judicial).

locus -i m., a place.

negōtium -i n., business.

pecūnia -ae f., money.

publicus -a -um, ADJ., public.

schola -ae f., a school.

tabema -ae f., a shop, shed; inn,

tavern.

thermae -arum f., baths

(warm).

theātrum -i n., a theatre.

via -ae f., a street.

21.

clārus -a -um, ADJ., famous,

celebrated.

herba -ae f., grass, plant.

secundus -a -um, ADJ., fair,

favourable.

timidus -a -um, ADJ., timid.

validus -a -um, ADJ., strong.

narr-at, relates.

narr-ant, relate.

ventus -i m., the wind.

22.

Africa -ae f., Africa.

antīquus -a -um, ADJ.,
ancient.
industrius -a -um, ADJ.,
industrious.
perītus -a -um, ADJ., *skilful,*
skilled in (gen.).
strēnuus -a -um, ADJ.,
vigorous.
Poeni -ōrum m., *the*
Carthaginians.
Sicilia -ae f., *Sicily.*
ad, PREP. + acc., *to.*
delect-at, *pleases.*
delect-ant, *please.*
nāvig-at, *sails.*
nāvig-ant, *sail.*
super-at, *overcomes, surpasses.*
super-ant, *overcome, surpass.*

23.

ā, ab (before a vowel), PREP.
 + abl., *from.*
advena -ae m., *a stranger.*
cupidus -a -um, ADJ.; *fond of*
(gen.).
ego, 1ST PERS. PRON., *I.*
tū, 2ND PERS. PRON., *thou.*
dīversus -a -um, ADJ.,
different.

fidus -a -um, ADJ., *faithful.*
inimīcus -a -um, ADJ., *hostile,*
unfriendly (dat.).
molestus -a -um, ADJ.,
troublesome, disagreeable
(dat.).
patientia -ae f., *patience.*
perīculōsus -a -um, ADJ.,
dangerous (dat.).
rēgula -ae f., *a rule.*
studium -i n., *pursuit, taste.*
supero, 1ST SING., *I surpass.*
super-as, 2ND SING., *you*
surpass.
tutus -a -um, ADJ., *safe.*

24.

Graecus -a -um, adj., *Greek.*
littera -ae f., *a letter (of the*
alphabet); in plural, a letter,
an epistle.
liber, librī m., *a book.*
lūdus -i m., *a school.*
magister, magistri m., *master,*
teacher.
minister, ministri m.,
attendant, servant.
puer, puerī m., *a boy (to the age*
of seventeen).

vir, virī m., *a man, a hero.*

ēduc-at, *educates.*

ēduc-ant, *educate.*

iter-at, *repeats.*

iter-ant, *repeat.*

nōmin-at, *names.*

nōmin-ant, *name.*

spect-at, *looks at.*

spect-ant, *look at.*

semper, ADV., *always.*

25.

asper -era -erum, ADJ., *rough, savage.*

miser -era -erum, ADJ., *wretched.*

tener -era -erum, ADJ., *tender.*

niger -gra -grum, ADJ., *black.*

pulcher -chra -chrum, ADJ., *beautiful.*

sacer -cra -crum, ADJ., *sacred.*

ager agri m., *field, land.*

aper apri m., *a boar.*

caper capri m., *a goat.*

olīva -ae f., *olive-tree, olive.*

Bacchius -i m., *Bacchus (the god of wine).*

26.

arbiter -tri m., *umpire, judge.*

causā, ABL., *for the sake of, on account of (placed after substantive, gen. +).*

faber -bri m., *a workman.*

Daedalus -i m., *Daedalus.*

Mīnōs m., *Minos.*

invidia -ae f., *envy.*

tectum -i n., *a roof, a dwelling, house.*

damn-at, *condemns.*

damn-ant, *condemn.*

nec-at, *kills.*

nec-ant, *kill.*

regn-at, *reigns.*

regn-ant, *reign.*

aedific-at, *builds.*

aedific-ant, *build.*

sine, PREP. + abl., *without.*

27.

ira -ae f., *anger.*

par-at, *prepares.*

par-ant, *prepare.*

proper-at, *hastens.*

proper-ant, *hasten.*

finitimus -a -um, ADJ., *near (+ dat.).*

tyrannus -i m., *tyrant, ruler.*

via -ae f., *a journey.*

Gallus -i m., *a Gaul.*

28.

Athenae -arum f.pl., *Athens*
(the capital of Attica in
Greece).

disciplīna -ae f., *discipline.*

dōnum -i n., *a gift.*

dūrus -a -um, *ADJ.*, *hard.*

iūcundus -a -um, *ADJ.*,
pleasant.

Lycurgus -i m., *Lycurgus* (a
Spartan lawgiver).

mundus -i m., *the world.*

mūrus -i m., *a wall.*

Mūsa -ae f., *a Muse* (goddess
of art, poetry, or music).

perniciōsius -a -um, *ADJ.*,
destructive.

praesidium -i n., *protection,*
defence.

Sparta -ae f., *Sparta* (a large
town in the South of
Greece).

Thēbāni -ōrum m.pl., *the*
Thebans.

29.

gaudium -ii n., *joy.*

historia -iae f., *history, story.*

memoria -ae f., *memory,*
mention.

monumentum -i n., *a*
monument, building.

Rōma -ae f., *the city of Rome.*

nōtus -a -um, *ADJ.*, *known.*

nunquam, *ADV.*, *never.*

nūper, *ADV.*, *lately.*

tum, *ADV.*, *then, at that time.*

tuus -a -um, *ADJ.*, *thy, your*
(personal pronominal
adjective).

ubi, *ADV.*, *where.*

30.

adhuc, *ADV.*, *still.*

diū, *ADV.*, *for a long time.*

fenestra -ae f., *a window.*

iam, *ADV.*, *now, already.*

incendium -i n., *fire,*
conflagration.

mīrus -a -um, *adj.*, *wonderful.*

ōlim, *ADV.*, *once, formerly.*

porta -ae f., *a gate.*

prope, *PREP. + acc.*, *near.*

ruīna -ae f., *ruin.*

tabula -ae f., picture, painting.

Campānia -ae f., Campania.

Capreae -ārum f.pl., the
island of Capri.

Pompēii -ōrum m.pl., the
town of Pompeii.

Vesuvius -i m., Vesuvius (the
volcano).

31.

annus -i m., a year.

barbarus -i m., a stranger.

benignus -a -um, ADJ., kind.

cena -ae f., a meal.

cur?, ADV., why?

circā, PREP. + acc., around.

fēmina -ae f., a woman.

grātus -a -um, ADJ., grateful.

malum -i n., an ill, misfortune.

meus -a -um, ADJ., my, mine
(personal pronominal
adjective).

poena -ae f., punishment,
penalty.

Polyphēmus -i m.,
Polyphemus.

praemium -ii n., reward, prize.

procella -ae f., storm.

socius -ii m., ally, companion.

stultus -a -um, ADJ., foolish,
stupid.

Trōia -ae f., Troy (a town in
Asia Minor).

Trōianus -a -um, ADJ., Trojan.

tūtēla -ae f., protection.

Ulixes m., Ulysses.

unde, ADV., whence?

vester vestra vestrum, ADJ.,
your (pl.) (personal
pronominal adjective).

per, PREP. + acc., through.

32.

aptus -a -um, ADJ., suitable,
fitting.

attentus -a -um, ADJ.,
attentive.

dextra -ae f., right hand; **ad
dextram**, to the right.

domina -ae f., mistress, lady.

ecce, INTERJ.; imperative
verb, look!, behold!, lo!; here
is (+ nom.; as — **ecce puer**,
look! here is a boy).

grātia -ae f., thanks.

habeo, I have, give.

hodiē, ADV., today.

igitur, CONJ., therefore, then.

incertus -a -um, ADJ.,
uncertain.

mox, ADV., *soon.*

iuxtā, PREP. + acc., *near.*

magis, COMP. ADV., *more.*

nonne, INTERROG., *not;*
nonne est, *is not?*

periculum -i n., *danger.*

procul, ADV., *far off.*

quis quis quid, INTERROG.
PRON., (m./f.) *who? (n.)*
what?

quot, INDECL. ADJ., *how*
many?

salvē, hail! *good day!*

sed, CONJ., *but.*

semel, ADV., *once.*

valē, *farewell.*

vetula -ae f., *old woman.*

33.

autem, CONJ., *but.**

Capitōlium -i n., *the Capitol (a*
hill at Rome, with temple
of Jupiter).

crās, ADV., *tomorrow.*

doctus -a -um, ADJ., *learned.*

ēheu!, INTERJ., *alas!*

hīc, ADV., *here.*

hōra -ae f., *hour, time.*

ignāvus -a -um, ADJ., *idle.*

Latīnus -a -um, ADJ., *Latin.*

lingua -ae f., *language.*

magistra -ae f., *mistress.*

Marcellus -i m., *Marcellus.*

mora -ae f., *delay.*

nam, CONJ., *for.*

nimis, ADV., *too.*

nunc, ADV., *now.*

optimus -a -um, ADJ., *best.*

ostium -i n., *door.*

proximius -a -um, ADJ., *next.*

quoque, ADV., *also.*

sērō, ADV., *late.*

stilus -i m., *a stilus*

(instrument for writing by
scratching on wax).

studiosus -a -um, ADJ.,
industrious.

tabella -ae f., *tablet (for*
writing).

* NOTE. The words **autem**, *but*; **igitur**, *therefore*; and **tamen**, *however*, never stand first in a sentence, but usually occupy the second place.

34.

Britanni -ōrum m.pl., *the people of Britain, the Britons.*

captīvus -ī m., *a captive.*

castra -ōrum n.pl., *a camp.*

cōpiae -ārum f.pl., *forces.*

fossa -ae f., *a ditch.*

habē-bant, *they had.*

insidiae -ārum f.pl., *an ambush.*

noster -tra -trum, *ADJ., our (personal pronominal adjective).*

oppugn-ant, *they attack.*

post, *PREP. + acc., after, behind.*

quattuor, *NUM. ADJ., four.*

tenēbrae -ārum f.pl., *darkness, dark.*

vallum -i n., *a wall, rampart.*

35.

ex, *PREP. + abl., out of, from (sometimes e before consonants).*

forte, *ADV., by chance.*

frūmentum -i n., *corn.*

Gallia -ae f., *Gaul (ancient France).*

Gallus -i m., *a Gaul.*

latēbrae -arum f.pl., *hiding-place.*

proper-ant, *they hasten.*

sic, *ADV., thus.*

subito, *ADV., suddenly.*

36.

Boadicēa -ae f., *Boadicea (an ancient British Queen).*

cēl-at, *he/she/it conceals.*

Druidae -ārum m., *the Druids (priests and wise men of the ancient Britons).*

effl-at, *he/she/it breathes out.*

Icēni -ōrum m.pl., *the Iceni (a tribe of ancient Norfolk).*

incit-ant, *they urge on.*

ōr-ant, *they implore, supplicate.*

pallium -i n., *cloak.*

plāga -ae f., *a blow.*

quadrīgae -ārum f.pl., *four-horsed chariot.*

rēgius -a -um, *ADJ., royal.*

saevitia -ae f., *cruelty.*

saevus -a -um, *ADJ., cruel, fierce.*

tract-ant, *they handle, treat.*

37.

agito, 1 V. A., *I raise, disturb.***appropinquo**, 1 V. N., *I draw near to (+ ad + acc.).***Asia -ae f.**, *Asia Minor.***cum**, PREP. + abl., *with.***Cyclops**, *a Cyclops (fabled race of giants in Sicily).***decem**, NUM. ADJ., *ten.***erro**, 1 V. N., *I wander.***expugno**, 1 V. A., *I take by storm, capture.***fessus -a -um**, ADJ., *tired, weary.***flagro**, 1 V. N., *I am in flames, I burn.***fugo**, 1 V. A., *I put to flight, drive away.***in**, PREP. + acc., *into.***īrātus -a -um**, ADJ., *angry.***ligneus -a -um**, ADJ., *wooden.***per**, PREP. + acc., *over.***praeclārus -a -um**, ADJ., *famous.***tandem**, ADV., *at length, at last.***tūtō**, ADV., *safely.***via -ae f.**, *path, course.*

38.

acūtus -a -um, ADJ., *sharp.***auxilium -i n.**, *help, aid.***bene**, ADV., *well.***caeco**, 1 V. A., *I blind.***carīna -ae f.**, *a bark, ship.***cēno**, 1 V. N., *I dine.***dēvoro**, 1 V. A., *I devour.***do**, 1 V. A., *I give (fut. dabo).***hūc**, ADV., *hither, towards this place.***ignōro**, 1 V. A., *I know not, am ignorant of.***intro**, 1 V. A./N., *I enter.***iuvo**, 1 V. A., *I help, assist.***lacero**, 1 V. A., *I tear, rend.***libero**, 1 V. A., *I set free.***lignum -i n.**, *wood, stake, log of wood.***male**, ADV., *badly, ill.***membrum -i n.**, *a limb.***monstrum -i n.**, *a monster.***nāvigo**, 1 V. N., *I sail.***oculus -i m.**, *an eye.***onero**, 1 V. A., *I load.***ōra -ae f.**, *coast.***ōro**, 1 V. A., *I implore.***pare**, 1 V. A., *I prepare.***porto**, 1 V. A., *I carry.*

quōmodo, ADV., *how?*

regnum -i n., *a kingdom.*

rogo, 1 V. A., *I ask.*

spēlunca -ae f., *a cave.*

supero, 1 V. A., *I surpass,*
overcome.

tracto, 1 V. A., *I treat, handle.*

vindico, 1 V. A., *avenge.*

39.

consilium -ii n., *a plan.*

duo, NUM. ADJ., *two (m. acc.*
duos).

focus -i m., *hearth.*

iacto, 1 V. A., *I throw.*

neco, 1 V. A., *I kill.*

rapto, 1 V. a., *I seize, drag.*

sine, PREP. + abl., *without.*

statim, ADV., *immediately, at*
once.

suus -a -um, ADJ., *his, her, its,*
their (personal pronominal
adjective).

violentia -ae f., *violence.*

40.

Achilles m., *Achilles (a Greek*
hero at the siege of Troy).

Aeneas -ae m., *Aeneas (a*
Trojan hero).

aliquando, ADV., *once upon a*
time, one day.

Dido f., *Dido (the queen of*
Carthage).

migro, 1 V. N., *I migrate.*

narro, 1 V. A., *I relate.*

primum, ADV., *firstly.*

profuga -ae m., *an exile,*
fugitive.

pugno, 1 V. N., *I fight.*

servo, 1 V. A., *I protect,*
preserve.

transporto, 1 V. A., *I carry*
across.

41.

cēlātus -a -um, ADJ.,
concealed.

cēlo, 1 V. A., *I conceal.*

cēteri -ae -a ADJ., *the others,*
the rest.

dolus -i m., *craft, stratagem.*

loco, 1 V. A., *I place.*

novus -a -um, ADJ., *new.*

oppugno, 1 V. A., *I attack.*

vasto, 1 V. A., *I lay waste,*
destroy.

42.

caelum -i n., *heaven.***Dēlōs -i f.**, *Delos (an island near Greece).***invīto**, 1 V. A., *I invite.***iterum**, ADV., *again.***Phoebus -i m.**, *Phoebus (god of the sun).***quō**, ADV., *whither?, to what place?***responsum -i n.**, *an answer.***significo**, 1 V. A., *I make known.***trans**, PREP. + acc., *across.***verbum -i n.**, *a word.***vīto**, 1 V. A., *I avoid.*

43.

cesso, 1 V. N., *I linger, delay.***coniugium -ii n.**, *marriage.***culpo**, 1 V. A., *I blame.***dēlecto**, 1 V. A., *I please.***frustrā**, ADV., *in vain.***ibi**, ADV., *there.***impero**, 1 V. A., *I order.***nuptiae -ārum f.pl.**, *wedding.***opto**, 1 V. A., *I desire.***tamen**, CONJ., *however.*

44.

aedifico, 1 V. A., *I build.***ante**, prep. + acc., *before, in front of.***dē**, PREP. + abl., *about.***expugno**, 1 V. A., *I capture, take by storm.***quot**, INDECL. ADJ., *how many?***simulo**, 1 V. A., *I pretend.*

45.

vōtum -i m., *an offering.***dēsertus -a -um**, ADJ., *deserted.***laudo**, 1 V. A., *I praise.*

Bell's Modified

LATIN COURSE — BOOK 2





THE SACRED CAPITOLINE GESE.

Summary of Grammar

DECLENSIONS

DECLENSIONS are groups of nouns which are categorised based on how they inflect to show case, number, and gender.

The key to knowing the declension to which a noun belongs is knowing its nominative singular and genitive singular forms, as given in dictionary entries.

FIRST DECLENSION

Model: **aquila aquilae f.**, *eagle*.

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	aquil- a , <i>an eagle</i> .
<i>Voc.</i>	aquil- a , <i>O eagle</i> .
<i>Acc.</i>	aquil- am , <i>an eagle</i> .
<i>Gen.</i>	aquil- ae , <i>of an eagle</i> .
<i>Dat.</i>	aquil- ae , <i>to or for an eagle</i> .
<i>Abl.</i>	aquil- ā , <i>by, with, or from an eagle</i> .

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	aquil- ae , <i>eagles</i> .
<i>Voc.</i>	aquil- ae , <i>O eagles</i> .
<i>Acc.</i>	aquil- ās , <i>eagles</i> .
<i>Gen.</i>	aquil- ārum , <i>of eagles</i> .
<i>Dat.</i>	aquil- īs , <i>to or from eagles</i> .
<i>Abl.</i>	aquil- īs , <i>by, with, or from eagles</i> .

Notes

Most substantives of the first declension are feminine, except those denoting males; as — **agricola**, *farmer*; **nauta**, *sailor*. Remember to memorise the gender as well as the nominative singular and genitive singular forms.

A few feminine substantives have **-ābus** in the dative and ablative plural to distinguish them from the corresponding cases of masculine substantives in the second declension; as — **deābus**, **filiābus**.

SECOND DECLENSION (-US)

Model: **dominus dominī m.**, *lord*.

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	domin- us , <i>a lord</i> .
<i>Voc.</i>	domin- e , <i>O lord</i> .
<i>Acc.</i>	domin- um , <i>a lord</i> .
<i>Gen.</i>	domin- ī , <i>of a lord</i> .
<i>Dat.</i>	domin- ō , <i>to or for a lord</i> .
<i>Abl.</i>	domin- ō , <i>by, with, or from a lord</i> .

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	domin- ī , <i>lords</i> .
<i>Voc.</i>	domin- ī , <i>O lords</i> .
<i>Acc.</i>	domin- ōs , <i>lords</i> .
<i>Gen.</i>	domin- ōrum , <i>of lords</i> .
<i>Dat.</i>	domin- īs , <i>to or for lords</i> .
<i>Abl.</i>	domin- īs , <i>by, with, or from lords</i> .

Notes

VOCATIVE CASE. A few substantives ending in **-us** in the nominative have a vocative form in **-e**, which is used in addressing an object. In all other substantives, the forms of the nominative and vocative cases are the same.

SECOND DECLENSION (**-ER**)

Model: **puer pueri m.**, *boy*.

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	puer
<i>Voc.</i>	puer
<i>Acc.</i>	puer- um
<i>Gen.</i>	puer- ī
<i>Dat.</i>	puer- ō
<i>Abl.</i>	puer- ō

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	puer- ī
<i>Voc.</i>	puer- ī
<i>Acc.</i>	puer- ōs
<i>Gen.</i>	puer- ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puer- īs
<i>Abl.</i>	puer- īs

Notes

Most substantives in **-er**, however, drop the **e** in all other cases, as **magister magistrī m.** (acc. **magistrum**). Remember that the stem is always derived from the genitive singular form.

SECOND DECLENSION (-**UM**)

Model: **bellum belli n.**, *war*.

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	bell- um
<i>Voc.</i>	bell- um
<i>Acc.</i>	bell- um
<i>Gen.</i>	bell- ī
<i>Dat.</i>	bell- ō
<i>Abl.</i>	bell- ō

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	bell- a
<i>Voc.</i>	bell- a
<i>Acc.</i>	bell- a
<i>Gen.</i>	bell- ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bell- īs
<i>Abl.</i>	bell- īs

Notes

Substantives ending in **-us** and **-er** are masculine; those in **-um** are neuter.

Substantives ending in **-ius** have the vocative singular in **-ī**; as — **fili**, *O son*; **Claudī**, *O Claudius*. In the genitive singular, **-ii** is often contracted into **-ī**, as **Claudī**, *of Claudius*.

Deus, *god*, usually has a contracted form **dī** in nominative plural; **dīs**, in the dative and ablative plural; and sometimes **deum** in the genitive plural.

ADJECTIVES IN **-US -A -UM***Singular*

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	bon- us	bon- a	bon- um
<i>Voc.</i>	bon- e	bon- a	bon- um
<i>Acc.</i>	bon- um	bon- am	bon- um
<i>Gen.</i>	bon- ī	bon- ae	bon- ī
<i>Dat.</i>	bon- ō	bon- ae	bon- ō
<i>Abl.</i>	bon- ō	bon- ā	bon- ō

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	bon- ī	bon- ae	bon- a
<i>Voc.</i>	bon- ī	bon- ae	bon- a
<i>Acc.</i>	bon- ōs	bon- as	bon- a
<i>Gen.</i>	bon- ōrum	bon- ārum	bon- ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bon- īs	bon- īs	bon- īs
<i>Abl.</i>	bon- īs	bon- īs	bon- īs

ADJECTIVES IN **-ER -ERA -ERUM***Singular*

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	tener	tener- a	tener- um
<i>Voc.</i>	tener	tener- a	tener- um
<i>Acc.</i>	tener- um	tener- am	tener- um
<i>Gen.</i>	tener- ī	tener- ae	tener- ī
<i>Dat.</i>	tener- ō	tener- ae	tener- ō
<i>Abl.</i>	tener- ō	tener- ā	tener- ō

The plural endings are as in **bonus**. Many adjectives in **-er** drop the **e**; as — **niger nigra nigrum**, *black*.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

First person **ego**, *I*; second person **tu**, *you*.

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	ego	tū
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	tē
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	tuī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	tibi
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	tē

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	nōs	vōs
<i>Acc.</i>	nōs	vōs
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrī or nostrum	vestrī or vestrum
<i>Dat.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs
<i>Abl.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs

NOTE ON GENITIVE CASE. The genitives **mei**, **tui**, **nostrī**, and **vestrī** are only used as OBJECTIVE GENITIVES after adjectives like **memor**, *mindful*, and **cupidus**, *fond*, or substantives like **timor**, *fear*, **accusator**, *an accuser*; as — **accusator mei**, *an accuser of me*.

The genitives **nostrum** and **vestrum** are only used as PARTITIVE GENITIVES; as, **multi nostrum**, *many of us*; **unus vestrum**, *one of you*.

CONJUGATIONS

CONJUGATIONS are groups of verbs which are categorised based on how they inflect to show person, number, tense, mood, and voice.

The key to knowing the declension to which a noun belongs is knowing its principal parts, as given in dictionary entries.

FIRST CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE ACTIVE

Model: **amō amāre amāvī amātum**, *love*. Verbs of the first conjugation have a long **ā** in the second principal part.

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Future</i>
<i>Sg.</i> 1.	am- ō	am-ā- ba-m	am-ā- b-ō
2.	am-ā- s	am-ā- bā-s	am-ā- bi-s
3.	am-a- t	am-ā- ba-t	am-ā- bi-t
<i>Pl.</i> 1.	am-ā- mus	am-ā- bā-mus	am-ā- bi-mus
2.	am-ā- tis	am-ā- bā-tis	am-ā- bi-tis
3.	am-a- nt	am-ā- ba-nt	am-ā- bu-nt
	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Future Perfect</i>
<i>Sg.</i> 1.	amā- v-ī	amā- v-era-m	amā- v-er-ō
2.	amā- v-istī	amā- v-erā-s	amā- v-erī-s
3.	amā- v-it	amā- v-era-t	amā- v-erī-t
<i>Pl.</i> 1.	amā- v-imus	amā- v-erā-mus	amā- v-erī-mus
2.	amā- v-istis	amā- v-erā-tis	amā- v-erī-tis
3.	amā- v-ērunt	amā- v-era-nt	amā- v-erī-nt

The verb **do dare dedi datum**, *give* belongs to this conjugation, but has a short **a** in its present stem **da-** in all persons of the

indicative except in the second person singular of the present tense.

PRESENT: **do, dās, dāt, dāmus, dātis, dant**; FUTURE: **dābo**; Imperfect: **dābam**. PERFECT SYSTEM endings (suffixed to the third principal part, **dedi**) are entirely regular.

THE VERB **SUM ESSE FUĪ**, BE

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Future</i>
<i>Sg.</i> 1.	sum	eram	erō
2.	es	erās	eris
3.	est	erat	erit
<i>Pl.</i> 1.	sumus	erāmus	erimus
2.	estis	erātis	eritis
3.	sunt	erant	erunt
	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Future Perfect</i>
<i>Sg.</i> 1.	fuī	fueram	fuerō
2.	fuistī	fuerās	fuerīs
3.	fuit	fuerat	fuerit
<i>Pl.</i> 1.	fuerimus	fuerāmus	fuerīmus
2.	fuistis	fuerātis	fuerītis
3.	fuērunt	fuerant	fuerint

The compounds of **sum esse fuī** (except **possum** and **prōsum**) are inflected like **sum**; as — **absum**, *I am absent*; **adsum**, *I am present, I am at hand*. PERFECT SYSTEM endings (suffixed to the third principal part, **fuī**) are entirely regular.



Summary of Syntax

THE CASES

Nominative

The subject of a verb and the complement take the nominative case.

nominative case	copulative verb	complement
Britannia	est	insula.
<i>Britain</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>an island.</i>

Vocative

The person or thing addressed takes the vocative case; as — **O nuntie!** *O messenger!* The word **O** is called the vocative particle.

Accusative

The DIRECT OBJECT of a transitive verb takes the accusative case.

nominative case	transitive verb	direct object
Regina	laudat	puellas.
<i>The queen</i>	<i>praises</i>	<i>the girls.</i>

The accusative also follows certain prepositions, many of which denote motion; as — **ad**, *to, toward*; **in**, *into*; **per**, *through*; **trans**, *across*.

Verbs of making, saying, and thinking often have a second accusative agreeing with the object. **Populus Ciceronem consulem creavit**, *The people elected Cicero consul.*

Verbs of saying and teaching have two accusatives: one of the person, the other of the thing. **Te litteras docebo**, *I will teach you letters.*

Genitive

The genitive case generally depends on another substantive, and often denotes POSSESSION: **hastae nautarum**, *the spears of the sailors.*

It sometimes denotes an indefinite whole of which a part is taken, and is then called a PARTITIVE GENITIVE: **multi Romanorum**, *many of the Romans.*

It sometimes denotes the object of action implied in substantives and adjectives, and is then called the OBJECTIVE GENITIVE (as opposed to the subjective or possessive): **timor hostium**, *fear of the enemy*, **memor nostri**, *mindful of us.*

Dative

The dative is the case of the INDIRECT OBJECT, which is usually a person.

nom. case	trans. verb	direct object	indirect object
Magister	dat	librum	puero.
<i>The master</i>	<i>gives</i>	<i>a book</i>	<i>to the boy.</i>
Romani	indicunt	bellum	Gallis.
<i>The Romans</i>	<i>declare</i>	<i>war</i>	<i>on the Gauls.</i>

A transitive verb may have both an direct and indirect object; an intransitive verb may only have an indirect object. **Servio tibi**, *I am a slave to you, I serve you*; **paret magistro**, *he is obedient to the master, he obeys his master.*

The dative of the person with the verb **sum** denotes possession, and calls attention to the thing rather than its possessor. **Sunt mihi multi agri**, *there are to me many fields, many fields are mine, I have many fields.*

The dative follows certain adjectives, as: **fidus**, *faithful*; **amicus**, *friendly*; **finitimus**, *near*; **inimicus**, *hostile*. **Pueri magistris sunt inimici**, *the boys are hostile to the masters.*

The dative is used predicatively to express a purpose or a cause, almost in an adjectival sense:

Est omnibus bono. *It is for the good of all.*

Impedimento fuit. *It was a hindrance.*

Mare est exitio nautis. *The sea is a source of ruin to sailors.*

Ablative

The ablative case expresses the general notion of an instrument, under which head are included ablatives of means, cause, description, and manner.

INSTRUMENT. **Nautae gladiis pugnant.** *The sailors fight with swords.*

CAUSE. **Multi peccant ignorantia.** *Many sin from ignorance.*

DESCRIPTION. **Parvā staturā fuit.** *She was of small stature.*

MANNER (with adjective). **Optimis verbis causam dicit.** *He pleads the case with excellent words.*

ABLATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES. The ablative also follows certain prepositions denoting rest or separation, and adjectives denoting fullness, want, etc.; as — **plēnus** (also used with genitive), **dignus**, **contentus**, and **liber**.

ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS. The English preposition from is translated by **ex**, *out of*, or **ab**, *away from*.

Excito e somno. *I arouse from (out of) sleep.* (CIC.)

Urbem ex periculo servo. *I save the city from danger.* (CAES.)

Homines ab iniuria arceo. *I ward off men from wrong-doing.*
(CIC.)

Hostes ab oppidis prohibeo. *I keep off the enemy from the towns.* (CAES.)

Apposition

If a substantive by itself does not express all that it is desired to say of a person or thing, another substantive may be added to explain the first. These two substantives are put in the same case and are said to be in **APPOSITION**; as — **urbs Roma**, *the city of Rome*; **consulis Mari bella**, *the wars of the consul Marius*.

Adjectives

Adjectives are often used as nouns, to name people in the masculine and feminine, or things in the neuter, as **sapientes**, *wise men*; **omnia**, *all things*.

The adjectives **medius**, **primus**, and **summus** have a partitive force; as — **media via**, *the middle of the road*; **summus mons**, *the top of the mountain*.

PREPOSITIONS

With the Accusative Case

ad, *to, toward*.

ante, *before*.

apud, *among (of persons)*.

circā, *around*.

contrā, *against*.

in, *into*.

inter, *between*.

intrā *within*.

iuxtā, *beside*.

ob, *on account of*.

per, *through*.

post, *after, behind*.

prope, *near*.

trans, *across*.

propter, *on account of*.

With the Ablative Case

ā, ab, *from, away from*.

in, *in, on*.

cum, *with*.

prō, *before, for*.

dē, *down from, concerning*.

sub, *under*.

ex, ē, *out of, from*.

Ablatives of Accompaniment and Manner

The preposition **cum** must always be translated *with* before the name of a person, when it means *together with* or *along with*; as — **cum exercitu**, *with the army*. It is often used with an ablative of manner, especially when there is no agreeing adjective; as — **cum silentio**, *in silence*; **cum magno studio**, *with great zeal*.

PLACE

PLACE WHERE is expressed by the ablative with a preposition; as — **in castris**, *in the camp*; **in fugā**, *in flight*; **sub muro**, *under the wall*.

PLACE TO WHICH is expressed by the accusative with a preposition; as — **in forum**, *into the marketplace*; **ad forum**, *to (the neighbourhood of) the marketplace*; **per forum**, *through the marketplace*.

PLACE FROM WHICH is expressed by the ablative with a preposition; as — **ex Capitolio**, *out of the Capitol*; **a Capitolio**, *from (the neighbourhood of) the Capitol*; **de Capitolio**, *down from the Capitol*.

TIME

TIME WHEN is expressed by the ablative case; as — **hieme**, *in winter*; **proximo anno**, *next year*.

TIME HOW LONG is expressed by the accusative case; as — **decem annos**, *during ten years*; **multos dies**, *for many days*.

ORDER OF LATIN WORDS

The Subject, with any words that qualify it, stands first; the Grammatical Object comes in the middle of the sentence; the natural position of the Verb is at the end of the sentence, for the verb is the most important word and combines the whole sentence.

POSITION OF GENITIVE. The natural position of an adjective or governed genitive is after its substantive, except for adjectives of size or for the sake of emphasis; as — **civis Romanus**, *a Roman citizen*; **magister equitum**, *the master of the horse*; **via Appia**, *the Appian way*; but **magnus Alexander**, *the great Alexander*; and **fratris tui mors**, *the death of your brother*.

If a substantive is dependent on another substantive, which is qualified by an adjective, the genitive stands between the adjective and its substantive, as **magna oratoris eloquentia**, *the great eloquence of the orator*; **summam rei militaris prudentiam**, *the greatest skill in military affairs*.

PARTITIVE GENITIVE. This rule does not apply to the partitive genitive, which usually follows the substantive on which it depends; as — **magna pars militum**, *a large part of the soldiers*.

ADVERBS. Adverbs usually stand immediately before the word they qualify.

GENERAL RULE FOR ORDER. The following, then, is the usual order of words in a simple sentence, but a word often acquires emphasis by being moved from its usual position:

(1) Subject. (2) Indirect object. (3) Direct object. (4) Verb.



A FIGHT BETWEEN ROMANS AND GAULS.

Latin Course

GRAMMAR

THE THIRD DECLENSION

CONSONANT-STEM NOUNS

Substantives of the third declension have highly regular endings. They derive their stem by removing the **-is** ending from the genitive singular.

The model for masculine and feminine substantives of the third declension is **victor victōr-is m.**, *conqueror* (stem **victōr-**).

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	victor
<i>Acc.</i>	victōr- em
<i>Gen.</i>	victōr- is
<i>Dat.</i>	victōr- i
<i>Abl.</i>	victōr- e

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	victōr- ēs
<i>Acc.</i>	victōr- ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	victōr- um
<i>Dat.</i>	victōr- ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	victōr- ibus

EXERCISE 1

Marius

1. Scriptores Romani de multis Gallorum bellis narrant.
2. Magnus olim erat Romanorum timor, Galli enim in pugnā victores fuerant.
3. Romani in magno dolore et timore erant.
4. Oratores strenui multis verbis animos Romanorum incitabant.
5. Romani Marium imperatorem creant.
6. Mox imperator clarus pastores et uxores pastorum in oppidum vocat.
7. Tum magnae imperatoris copiae Gallos barbaros superant.
8. Victores honoribus magnis imperatorem ornant.
9. Magni erant victorum clamores.
10. Roma enim timore et terrore libera erat.

EXERCISE 2

Sulla

1. Magnus erat victorum error.
2. Mario magnus patriae amor non erat.

3. Imperator magnus honores multos solum optabat.
4. Mox Romani imperatorem novum creant.
5. Sulla praetor praeclarus Romani populi erat.
6. Populus magno amore praetorem amat.
7. Sulla, populi defensor, Marium superat et fugat.
8. Populus, timore liber, victorem multis honoribus cumulat.
9. Dictator peritus patriam servaverat.
10. Roma timore et terrore iterum libera fuit.



A ROMAN EMPEROR AND A PRAETOR.

EXERCISE 3

Ancient Customs

1. Multi flores in hortis Romanorum erant.
2. Varii sunt florum colores.
3. Multi flores odorem non habent.
4. Romani multos et bonos mores servabant.
5. Coronis florum statuas deorum saepe ornabant.
6. Florum corona victoriae signum erat.
7. More antiquo color albus deis gratus erat.
8. Neptuno autem tauri nigro colore erant sacri.
9. Mores antiquorum Romanorum Britannis saepe grati sunt.
10. Mores bonos servabimus; mores malos repudiabimus et culpabimus.

GRAMMAR

Substantives of the third declension that have a greater number of syllables in the genitive singular than in the nominative singular are called increasing, or IMPARISYLLABIC.

The genitive plural of substantives of the third declension nearly always end in **-um**. There are some exceptions among words of one syllable, of which the genitive plural sometimes ends in **-ium**.

The Capitol

1. Romani carcerem prope Forum aedificaverunt.
2. In carcere captivos vinculis onerabant.
3. Carceris vincula dura at severa erant.
4. Captivi multi in carcere sub terrā erant.

5. Prope Forum et carcerem erat Capitolium.
6. Praeclarum Iovis templum in Capitolio erat.
7. Galli quondam Capitolium et aggeres vicinos oppugnabant.
8. Forte in Capitolio anseres multi deae magnae sacri erant.
9. Galli aggeres et muros paene expugnaverant.
10. Anseres forte vigilabant et clangore magno Capitolium servaverunt.



JUPITER.

EXERCISE 5

1. Iuppiter pater et dominus caeli erat.
2. Iuppiter et Neptunus et Pluto fratres erant.
3. Saturnus pater fratrum erat.
4. Iuppiter, Saturni filius, patri suo inimicus erat.
5. Filius validus patrem suum mox superavit.
6. Tum fratres mundum in regna separaverunt.
7. Iuppiter imperium caeli vindicavit.
8. Neptunus oceani imperium postulavit.
9. Pluto Tartarum, mortuorum regnum, gubernavit.
10. Rhea mater fratrum magnorum erat.

GRAMMAR

The substantives **pater**, **māter**, and **frāter** have the regular endings for imparisyllabic substantives. (The stems **patr-**, **mātr-**, and **frātr-** arise from contraction, dropping the **e** before the **r**.)

EXERCISE 6

sum AND THE FIRST DECLENSION

TULLIUS: Quis es, puer?

MARCUS: Ego sum Marcus.

TULLIUS: Quo properas?

MARCUS: Ad ludum ambulo.

TULLIUS: Ubi est ludus tuus?

MARCUS: Ludus meus est prope Viam Sacram.

TULLIUS: Quot estis in ludo?

MARCUS: Saepe centum sumus. Iam multi aegrotant.

TULLIUS: Quot linguarum es peritus?

MARCUS: Linguae Latinae satis peritus sum et elementorum Graecorum.

TULLIUS: Quomodo linguam novam tractas?

MARCUS: Magister litteras puero format. Tum pueri litteras in ceris iterant. Magistri pueros ad studium incitant.

TULLIUS: Quam iucundum est! Ego nondum ad ludum com-
meo.

MARCUS: Si elementorum peritus fueris, tum magister poet-
arum scripta recitabit.

TULLIUS: Quare noctuae figura ludi tectum ornat?

MARCUS: Quia Minerva, sapientiae dea, noctuas amat.

TULLIUS: Ubi tu habitas?

MARCUS: Trans fluvium in villa parva habitamus.

TULLIUS: Longa est via ad ludum.

MARCUS: Servus fidus quotidie libros meos ad ludum portat et
viae ex periculis me servat.

TULLIUS: Puer me vocat. Vale.



A ROMAN HOLIDAY.

EXERCISE 7

A Grateful Lion

1. Romani bestiarum pugnās semper amabant.
2. Leones cum leonibus et tauris in arenā pugnabant.
3. Saepe Romani captivos ad pugnam leonum dabant.
4. Servus quondam cum leone magno pugnabat.
5. Leo et servus iam in arenā magnā erant.
6. Sed in leone benigno non erat ferocia.
7. Servus enim leonem antea bene tractaverat.
8. Magna erat amicitia inter leonem et servum.
9. Spectatores igitur veniam servo dant.
10. Postea servus cum leone in viis ambulabat.

EXERCISE 8

Juno and the Peacock

1. Pavones olim Iunoni sacri erant.
2. Iuno autem Iovis soror erat.
3. Pluto frater Iunonis et Iovis erat.
4. Plutoni, deo mortuorum, tauros nigros nautae mactabant.
5. Saturnus, Plutonis pater, in Italiā olim regnabat.
6. Galea mira et hasta magna Plutoni erant.
7. Sermo Iunonis cum pavone superbo notus est.
8. Pavo superbus pulchris pennarum coloribus non erat contentus.
9. In sermone pavo novum donum postulavit.
10. Iuno autem pavoni donum negavit.

A Soldier's Weapons

1. Milites Romani armis et telis pugnabant.
2. In brachiis sinistris militum scuta erant.
3. Militis galea et lorica tela periculosa propulsabant.
4. Pedites gladium et duo pila semper portabant.
5. Multi pedites sed equites pauci in castris Romanorum semper erant.
6. Equites cum peditibus saepe pugnabant.
7. In castris milites vallo et fossā tuti erant.
8. Pedites circa castra fossam et vallum aedificabant.
9. Barbarorum equites Romanorum peditibus saepe periculosi erant.
10. Equis arma erant hasta et gladius.

EXERCISE 10

Carthage

1. Carthago oppidum praeclarum in orā Africae erat.
2. Oppidi clari origo parva et mira fuit.
3. Dido, virgo pulchra, iram Tyrii tyranni vitabat.
4. Cum paucis comitibus Dido in Africam navigavit.
5. Mox magna hominum multitudo in novā patriā habitabat.
6. Mira reginae pulchritudo Aeneam, virum Troianum, delectavit.
7. Dido quoque magnam Troiani militis fortitudinem amavit.
8. Nuptiae autem virginis miserae deis superbis non gratae fuerunt.

5. Hominum improborum proditio Ciceroni nota erat.
6. Orator praeclanis quattuor orationee contra Catilinam in Foro recitavit.
7. Consul auxilio legionnm populum Romanum Bervavitr.
8. Legiones Romanae Catiliuam in pugna magna superaverunt.
9. Romani Ciceronem multis gratulationibus oneravervmt.
10. Orator enim praeclarus Romam a pericnlo et proditioe liberaverat.



CICERO.



A ROMAN ORATOR ON THE ROSTRA.

EXERCISE 12

Cicero (Continued)

1. *Faucos post annos magna erat fortunae mutatio.*
2. *Cicero orationibus suis multos inimicos paraverat.*

3. Causae contentionis inter Ciceronem et Antonium variae erant.
4. Sociorum proditio Caesari et Pompeio perniciose fuerat.
5. Tum Cicero multas orationes contra Antonium, consulem Romanum, in foro recitavit.
6. Orationes autem Ciceroni perniciosae erant.
7. Legiones Romanae in imperio et ditione Antonii consulis erant.
8. Antonius irā magnā orationum causā flagrabat.
9. Pauci milites ex legionibus Antonii Ciceronem gladiis oppugnaverunt.
10. Milites saevi magnum orationum scriptorem superaverunt et necaverunt.

GRAMMAR

THE THIRD DECLENSION

CONSONANT-STEM NEUTER NOUNS

The model for neuter substantives of the third declension is **nōmen nōminis n.**, *conqueror*. Once again, its stem is formed by removing the **-is** ending from the genitive singular. As with all neuter substantives, the nominative, vocative, and accusative forms are identical.

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	nōmen
<i>Acc.</i>	nōmen
<i>Gen.</i>	nōmin- is
<i>Dat.</i>	nōmin- i
<i>Abl.</i>	nōmin- e

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	nōmin- a
<i>Acc.</i>	nōmin- a
<i>Gen.</i>	nōmin- um
<i>Dat.</i>	nōmin- ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	nōmin- ibus

EXERCISE 13

1. Homeri nomen multis hominibus notum est.
2. Homerus, poeta Graecus, de certamine Troiano carminibus narravit.
3. Graeci pueri carmina Homeri in ludo recitabant.
4. Britanni pueri carmina Homeri adhuc recitant.
5. Certamen inter Graecos et Troianos praeclarum est.
6. Femina pulchra (nomen autem erat Helena) Troiani certaminis causa erat.
7. Inter Troianos viros nomina Hectoris et Aeneae nota sunt.
8. Inter multa nomina Graecorum victorum Achilles dignus memoria est.
9. Ulixes ceteros Graecos magno ingenio superavit.

10. Homerus carminibus longis de laboribus Ulixis narravit.



ROMAN TRADER AND ANCIENT BRITONS.

EXERCISE 14

Ancient Customs

1. Multi Graecorum disciplinā severā animos et corpora firmabant.
2. Philosophi animum sanum in corpore sano semper laudabant.
3. Itaque animos studio, corpora labore firmabant.
4. In pectore honesto animus malus non est.

5. Frigus corporibus Graecorum molestum non erat.
6. Britannorum antiquorum corpora nuda erant.
7. Antiquis temporibus pauci nautae ad litora Britanniae navigabant.
8. Nautae metalla ex nostris litoribus portabant.
9. In litore nostro homines barbari pictis corporibus advenas oppugnabant.
10. Picta Britannorum corpora militum Romanorum animos olim excitabant.

EXERCISE 15

Ancient Customs

1. Mores Latini generis honesti erant.
2. Scelera magna antiquis temporibus rara fuerunt.
3. Romanorum corpora vulneribus et oneribus obnoxia erant.
4. Vulnera in adverso militis pectore honesta erant.
5. Vulnera multa magnae fortitudinis signa erant.
6. Opera multa et onera magna honestos animos delectabant.
7. Postea autem scelera Latini generis multa et magna fuerunt.
8. Homines mali magna onera vitabant.
9. Vitia et scelera Latino generi pernicioosa erant.
10. Tandem Germani barbari genus Latinum superaverunt.

GRAMMAR

SECOND CONJUGATION

PRESENT TENSE (INDICATIVE ACTIVE)

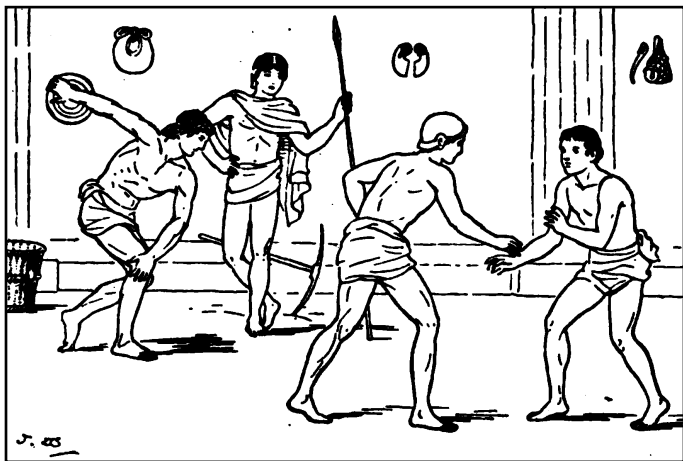
Sing.

1. mon-**e-o**, *I advise*
2. mon-**ē-s**
3. mon-**e-t**

Plur.

1. mon-**ē-mus**
2. mon-**ē-tis**
3. mon-**e-nt**

The model for the second conjugation is **moneō monēre monuī monitus**, *advise*. Verbs of the second conjugation have a long **ē** in the second principal part.



SCENE IN A GYMNASIUM.

EXERCISE 16

A Letter from a Friend

1. Si tu vales, gaudeo; ego valeo.
2. Quotidie sol hie ardet. In hortis saepe sedemus.
3. Doleo quod tu non hie sedes.
4. Hortus me tenet, habet, possidet.
5. Experientia, magistra bona, me docet.
6. Itaque corpus et animum exerceo.
7. Primum studeo, timi corpus exerceo. Filia me semper monet.
8. Tum pilam vehementer et diu moveo.
9. Semper valeo, si corpus exerceo.
10. Amicos multos hie habemus. Vale.

GRAMMAR

SECOND CONJUGATION

IMPERFECT TENSE (INDICATIVE ACTIVE)

*First Conjugation**Second Conjugation*

Sing.

Sing.

1. am-**ā-ba-m**1. mon-**ē-ba-m**, *I was advising*2. am-**ā-bā-s**2. mon-**ē-bā-s**3. am-**ā-ba-t**3. mon-**ē-bā-t**

Plur.

Plur.

1. am-**ā-bā-mus**1. mon-**ē-bā-mus**2. am-**ā-bā-tis**2. mon-**ē-bā-tis**3. am-**ā-ba-nt**3. mon-**ē-ba-nt**

The endings of all conjugations in the imperfect follow the first, except with the respective theme vowel.

GRAMMAR

SECOND CONJUGATION

FUTURE TENSE (INDICATIVE ACTIVE)

*First Conjugation**Second Conjugation*

Sing.

Sing.

1. am-**ā-b-ō**1. mon-**ē-b-ō**, *I shall advise*2. am-**ā-bi-s**2. mon-**ē-bi-s**3. am-**ā-bi-t**3. mon-**ē-bi-t**

Plur.

Plur.

1. am-**ā-bi-mus**1. mon-**ē-bi-mus**2. am-**ā-bi-tis**2. mon-**ē-bi-tis**3. am-**ā-bu-nt**3. mon-**ē-bu-nt**

The endings of the second conjugation follow the first, with **ē** as the stem vowel.



YOUTHS PRACTICING RUNNING
IN THE GYMNASIUM.

EXERCISE 17

The Gymnasium

1. Oppida magna in Graeciā multa gymnasia habebant.
2. Gymnasium autem nomen habebat quod Graeci corporibus nudis se exercebant.
3. In gymnasio multi viri variis disciplinis corpora sua exercebant.
4. In scholis Graecis praeceptores boni pueros docebant.
5. Itaque Graeci viri corpore et animo valebant.
6. Britanni magnam gratiam Graecis semper debebunt.
7. Graecis enim Britanni multa ludorum genera debent.
8. Semper valebis, si corpus tuum in gymnasio saepe exercebis.
9. Propter gymnasia multa semper valebimus et flore-
bimus.
10. Itaque pueri nostri multorum populorum pueros doce-
bunt.

GRAMMAR

SECOND CONJUGATION

PERFECT SYSTEM (INDICATIVE ACTIVE)

	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Future Perfect</i>
<i>Sg.</i>	monu- ī	monu- eram	monu- erō
	monu- istī	monu- erās	monu- erīs
	monu- it	monu- erat	monu- erit
<i>Pl.</i>	monu- imus	monu- erāmus	monu- erīmus
	monu- istis	monu- erātis	monu- erītis
	monu- ērunt	monu- erant	monu- erint

The model for the second conjugation is **moneō monēre monuī monitum**, *advise*. The stem of the perfect system conjugations is based on the third principal part, **monuī**,* *I have warned, I warned, I did warn*, from which the **-i** ending is removed.



THE INFANT HERCULES
STRANGLING THE SERPENT.

Hercules

1. Inter praeclaros antiquae Graeciae viros eminebat Hercules.
2. Dum infans in cunis iacebat, non procul serpens magnus latuerat.
3. Puer autem serpentem non timuit.
4. Monstra saeva puerum validum non terruerunt.
5. Infans dextrā suā serpentem tenuit.
6. Puer validus se filium dignum Iove patre praebuit.
7. Mox puer corpore multum valebat.

* The **-uī** third principal part ending is characteristic of second conjugation verbs.

8. Hercules quondam patris tauros in agris servabat.
9. Puer leones et ursos ab armentis prohibebat.
10. Hercules leonem miagnum dextrā validā delevit.



HERCULES AND THE NEMEAN LION.

EXERCISE 19

Hercules and Apollo

1. Tum Hercules saevae Iunonis iram excitavit.
2. Mox autem Apollo virum sic monuit.
3. 'Si Mycenarum tyranno decem annos parueris, vitam longam habebis.'
4. 'Eurystheus, tyrannus saevus, multos labores imperabit.'
5. Ego autem tibi auxilium praebebo.'
6. 'Homines multi nomen tuum timebunt.'
7. Populi multi te pro deo tenebunt.'
8. 'Multae et saevae bestiae Graeciam multos annos ter-
ruerunt.'
9. 'Si tu monstra deleveris, Graecia magnam gratiam tibi
debebit.'

10. 'Magna pericula te non terrebunt, nam ego tibi auxilium praebuero.'

EXERCISE 20

Roman Boys at Play

HORATIUS: Cur times, Marce? Quid te terruit?

MARCUS: Praescriptum memoriā non teneo.

HORATIUS: Ego quoque vix satis teneo. Non est causa timoris.

MARCUS: Magistri nostri iram horreo.

HORATIUS: Non est periculum. Hodie te non terrebit.

MARCUS: Quid! Nonne nos hodie docet?

HORATIUS: Domi manet. Non bene valet!

MARCUS: Gratiam tibi habeo. Quis nos docebit?

HORATIUS: Cornelius te docebit. Satis benignus est.

MARCUS: Iam studebo. Sic praescriptum satis tenebo.

HORATIUS: Semper studes. Cur non corpora nostra exercemus?

MARCUS: Pilae certamen mihi non placet.

HORATIUS: Satia studuisti. Si corpus tuum non exercebis, animus tuus non valebit.

Marcus. Semper me rides! Cur tu non studes?

HORATIUS: Studeo, sed non semper. Modus est studiorum.

MARCUS: Tintinnabulum nos monet. Hora scholae adest.

HORATIUS: Ubi latent libri mei? Quia habet libros meos?

MARCUS: Ecce hic iacent! Quam tardus es!

HORATIUS: Bene mones. Si properabimus, tempore aderimus.



DRUIDS, OR CELTIC PRIESTS.

EXERCISE 21

The Druids

1. Caesar de moribus Gallorum antiquorum narrat.
2. In Galliā multa genera hominum sunt.
3. Primum genus est Druidarum vel sacerdotum.
4. Druidae sacrificia publica et privata parant.
5. Sacerdotea magnum numerum puerorum educant.

6. Fui etiam sunt magno apud Druidas honore.
7. Druidae multa et sacra carmina memoriae mandant.
8. Post Druidas secundum genus est equitum.
9. Bellum equitibus, sacrificia Druidis, curae sunt.
10. Druidae in Britannia sacerdotes et magistri piorum erant.

GRAMMAR

THE THIRD DECLENSION

i-STEM (FALSE IMPARISYLLABIC) NOUNS*Singular*

<i>Nom.</i>	urbs
<i>Acc.</i>	urb- em
<i>Gen.</i>	urb- is
<i>Dat.</i>	urb- i
<i>Abl.</i>	urb- e

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	urb- es
<i>Acc.</i>	urb- es
<i>Gen.</i>	urb- ium
<i>Dat.</i>	urb- ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	urb- ibus

The key difference between regular imparisyllabic substantives and nouns like **urbs urbis f.**, *city* is the genitive plural **-ium** ending (**urbs urbis** gives **urbium**; **pars partis**: **partium**; **gens -ntis**: **gentium**).

This **-ium** ending is shared with PARISYLLABIC SUBSTANTIVES (non-increasing). This is because **urbs urbis** is not truly imparisyllabic; it comes from the old parisyllabic form ***urbis urbis**.

A substantive belongs to this type if its stem ends in two consonants.

EXERCISE 22

The Capitol

1. Capitolium arx urbis Romae erat.
2. Romulus urbem sacram designavit et nominavit.
3. Tarquinius autem postea arcem aeternam in Capitolio aedificavit.
4. In summā arce Iovis templum erat.
5. In medio templo deus magnus habitabat.
6. Iuno, Iovis soror, dextram templi partem tenebat.
7. Pars autem sinistra Minervae sacra erat.
8. Iuppiter Romanae gentis urbem et arcem semper servabat.
9. Iunoni, reginae caeli, feminae Romanae erant sacrae.
10. Minervae in tutela erant artes honestae.

EXERCISE 23

The Capitol (Continued)

1. Capitolii frontem statuae aureae ornabant.
2. Arx enim digna maiestate patris caeli erat.
3. Galli quondam urbem et arcem oppugnabant.

4. Mediā nocte Galli summam arcem paene expugnaverant.
5. Sed forte in arce anseres Iunoni sacri erant.
6. Anseres clangore magno urbem et arcem servaverunt.
7. Milites de arce Gallos barbaros deturbaverunt.
8. Itaque deae auxilio urbis arx a barbaris tuta erat.

GRAMMAR

THE THIRD DECLENSION

i-STEM (PARISYLLABIC) NOUNS*Singular*

<i>Nom.</i>	cīvis
<i>Acc.</i>	civ- em
<i>Gen.</i>	civ- is
<i>Dat.</i>	civ- ī
<i>Abl.</i>	civ- e

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	civ- ēs
<i>Acc.</i>	civ- ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	civ- ium
<i>Dat.</i>	civ- ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	civ- ibus

All these substantives are parisyllabic and the genitive plural ends in **-ium**. The abl. sg. ends in **-e** and the acc. sg. ends in **-em**.

Most parisyllabic substantives in **-is** are declined like **civis**, but a few have two accusatives such as **navis**, acc. **navem** or

navim (and **classis**, **turris**, etc.), and many have two ablatives, as **navi** or **nave**.

EXERCISE 24

Roman Warships

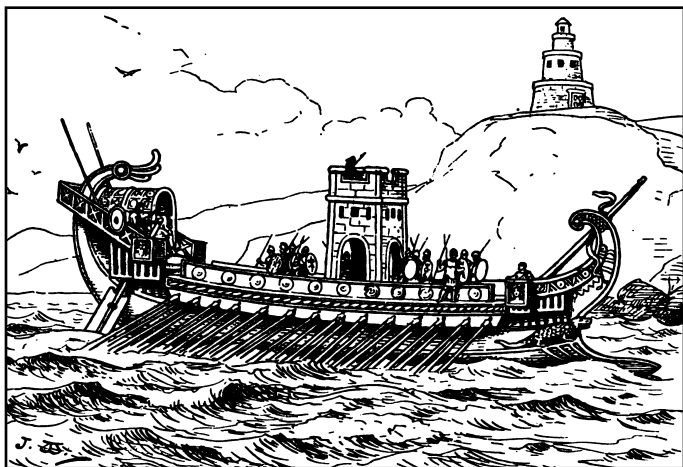
1. Gives Romani dim paucas naves habebant.
2. Poeni autem Romanorum hostes erant.
3. Tum Poeni cum classe magna ad Italiam navigaverunt.
4. In classe Punica multae naves longae erant.
5. Romani autem parvum numenim navium longamm habebant.
6. Stabim cives Romani classem navium longamm aedificabant.
7. Fabri Romani naves novas ex navibus longis Poenorum parant.
8. Faucis annis clasaem navium centum paraverunt.
9. In navibus longia puppis alta erat.
10. Nautae in puppe alta navem gubernabant.

EXERCISE 25

Roman Warships (Continued)

1. In mediā navi Romani validas turrea aedificabant.
2. Nautae multi in turribus telis at sagittis pugnabant.
3. Frontem navis protā altā et rostro aeneo ornaverunt.
4. Rostrum aeneum navibus hostium perniciosum erat.
5. In navibus longis multa transtra erant.
6. Nautae in transtris navem remis incitabant.
7. Vento secundo nautae remis et velis navigabant.

8. Vento adverso navem remis solum incitabant.
9. Navis longa nomen de numero transtrorum habuit.
10. Romanae naves Punicis classibus perniciosae erant.



ROMAN WARSHIP.

EXERCISE 26

Head-Dress of the Greeks

1. In oppidis Graeciae homines nude capite in viis ambulabant.
2. Cives enim multos et pulchros crines in capitibus habebant.
3. Feminae antiquae magnā cum curā caput crines servabant.
4. Viatores autem et venatores solem aestivum a capitibus suis arcebant.

5. Variae et pulchrae pelles tegumenta capitum praebebant.
6. Figurae nautarum multorum et paucorum deorum capita nuda nunquam habent.
7. Inter decs Mercurius, inter nautas Ulixes et Charon in capitibus tegumenta semper habent.
8. In Graeciā pueri crines capitum tonsos, iuvenes crines longos habebant.
9. Feminae in Graeciā raro in viis publicis ambulabant.
10. Itaque raro capita sua tegumentis pulchris ornabant.

GRAMMAR

THE THIRD DECLENSION

i-STEM (PARISYLLABIC) NEUTER NOUNS

Model: **mare maris n.**, *the sea*.

Singular

N.A.	mare
G.	mar- is
D.A.	mar- i

Plural

N.A.	mar- ia
G.	mar- ium
D.A.	mar- ibus

EXERCISE 27

Neptune

1. Iuppiter caelum, Neptunus mare, Pluto Tartarum gubernabat.
2. Romani antiqui magna vasti maris pericula timebant.
3. Itaque scriptores de Neptuno et mari non saepe narrant.
4. Graeci autem de maris deo multas fabulas habebant.
5. Neptunus in aureo palatio sub undis maris habitabat.
6. Equi miri, pedibus aeneis et iubis aureis, Neptunum per maris undas portant.
7. In mari circa Neptunum monstra mira saltant.
8. Neptunus mare vastum et ventos iratos tridente magno gubernat.
9. Nautae deo maris tauros nigros et albos mactabant.
10. Viatores multi pro tutis viis bestias in litore maris mactabant.

GRAMMAR

i-STEM (FALSE IMPARISYLLABIC) NEUTER NOUNS

Neuter words ending in **-al** and **-ar** such as **animal -is** or **exemplar -is**, like **urbs**, are false imparisyllabic. (Old forms: ***animale -is**.) Hence, they take their genitive plurals in **-ium**: **animalium, exemplarium**.

EXERCISE 28

Neptune and the Walls of Troy

1. Neptunus et Apollo quondam moenia Troiae aedificaverunt.
2. Laomedon, Troiae rex, deo maris praemia laboris negavit.
3. Turn animal saevum ex mari appropinquavit et agros Troianos vastabat.
4. Hercules autem cives animali diro liberavit.
5. Troiani saevo animali puellam saepe mactabant.
6. Oraculi responaa forte regis filiam ad animal noxium damnaverant.
7. Tum Hercules virginem ex fato diro eervavit et saevum animal necavit.
8. Rex autem improbus praemia pro leto auimalis negavit.
9. Hercules cum paucis navibus ad moenia Troiana navigavit.
10. Vir iratus moenia expugnavit et regem necavit.

GRAMMAR

ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS

Model: **tristis triste**, *sad, gloomy*.

Singular

	M.F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	trist- is	trist- e
<i>Acc.</i>	trist- em	trist- e
<i>Gen.</i>	trist- is	trist- is
<i>Dat.</i>	trist- ī	trist- ī
<i>Abl.</i>	trist- ī	trist- ī

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	trist- ēs	trist- ia
<i>Acc.</i>	trist- ēs	trist- ia
<i>Gen.</i>	trist- ium	trist- ium
<i>Dat.</i>	trist- ibus	trist- ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	trist- ibus	trist- ibus

The ablative singular always ends in **-ī**, while the neuter nominative singular ends in **-e**.

The genitive plural, like all parisyllabic substantives, is always **-ium**.



CHARON.

EXERCISE 29

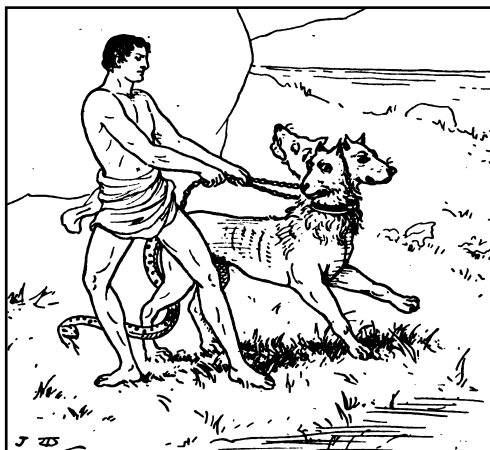
Tartarus

1. Tartarus erat sedes tristis hominum mortuorum.
2. Styx, flumen lugubre, sedes vivorum et mortuorum separabat.
3. Animae portam Tartari per speluncam immanem intrabant.
4. Pluto, deus crudelis, incolas tristis regni gubernabat.
5. In tristi limine bestiae multae et turpes habitabant.
6. Mercurius, nuntius deorum, animas tenues ad flumen lugubre congregat.
7. Hinc iter breve ad regna tristia Plutonis erat.
8. Charon, portitor terribilis, fluminis undas servabat.
9. Manes mortuorum formas tenues sine corpore habent.
10. In nave lugubri Charon animas tristes trans flumina portabat.

EXERCISE 30

Tartarus (Continued)

1. Omnis animarum turba in ripis tristibus Charontem appellat.
2. Mors omnibus hominibus communis est.
3. Itaque inter animas sunt fortes, iuvenes, turpes, nobiles, humiles.
4. Nauta tristis brevi tempore omnes animas trans flumen portat.
5. Cerberus, canis hostilis et immanis, regna tristia servat.
6. In Tartaro omnes animae canem crudelem timent.
7. Primo in limine sunt dulces et graciles infantes.
8. Prope sedem infantium aut miserabiles et deformes senes.
9. In ultimis agris habitant manes virorum illustrium.
10. Poena tristis et crudelis manibus omnibus hominum improborum communis fuit.



CERBERUS.

EXERCISE 31

Elysium

1. Cerberus, canis horribilis, animas omnes a flumine arcebat.
2. Non procul hinc erant dulcia et viridia arva Elysii.
3. Elysium fuit dulcis sedes anlmnim bestarum.
4. Tartarus fuit regnum lugubre animamm damnatarum.
5. In Tartaro animae poenas crudeles ob scelera crudelia dabant.
6. In Elysio autem manes voluptates dulces ob vitas nobiles habebant.
7. Viri fortes arma illustria et equos graciles tractant.
8. Mortales interdum ad tristia regna appropinquabant.
9. Orpheus gracilis uxorem iliustrem optabat.

10. Hercules Cerberum, canem crudelem, ad terram e Tartaro portavit.
11. Per speluncam horribilem omnes ad terram appropinquabant.



NYPHS LISTENING TO THE SONGS OF ORPHEUS.

GRAMMAR

ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS

Model: **acer acris acre**, *keen, sharp*.

Singular

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācr- is	ācr- e
<i>Acc.</i>	acr- em	acr- em	acr- em
<i>Gen.</i>	acr- is	acr- is	acr- is
<i>Dat.</i>	acr- i	acr- i	acr- i
<i>Abl.</i>	acr- i	acr- i	acr- i

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	acr- ēs	acr- ēs	acr- ia
<i>Acc.</i>	acr- ēs	acr- ēs	acr- ia
<i>Gen.</i>	acr- ium	acr- ium	acr- ium
<i>Dat.</i>	acr- ibus	acr- ibus	acr- ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	acr- ibus	acr- ibus	acr- ibus

The case endings are entirely the same as **tristis**, except in the m. Nom. sg.

A few adjectives, of which **celer celeris celere**, *swift, quick* is the most common, differ from **ācer** by keeping the **e** before the **r** in the stem throughout the declension.

EXERCISE 32

Mercury

1. Mercurius filius celebr Iovis erat.
2. Mercurii pedes volueres erant.

3. Itinera pedestria Mercurio sacra erant.
4. Deus pede acri et celeri semper properat.
5. Ad Tartarum deus animas terrestres congregat.
6. In viis terrestribus multae statuae deo sacrae erant.
7. Deus eloquentiā magnā celeber erat.
8. Poetae multa et terrestria Mercurii itinera laudant.
9. Sic Mercurius Aeneam a Punicis nuptiis prohibet.
10. Alae parvae caput et pedes dei volucris semper ornant.

EXERCISE 33

The Death of the Chimaera

1. Musae erant deae celebres carminum et artium.
2. Pegasus equus volueer Musarum erat.
3. Bellerophon, eques acer, equum volucrem superavit.
4. Chimaera, monstrum celebre, in Lyciā habitabat.
5. Monstrum alacre et celere hominibus inimicum erat.
6. Bellerophon auxilio volucris equi monstrum superavit.
7. Eques acer equi celebris in tergo pugnavit.
8. Pugna equestris monstro perniciosa erat.
9. Eques sagittis celeribus et volucris Chimaeram vulneravit.
10. In agris terrestribus volucrem bestiam necavit.



THE DEATH OF THE CHIMAERA.

EXERCISE 34

The Fall of Bellerophon

1. Bellerophon propter victoriam animo acri et alacri erat.
2. In multis pugnis hostes celebres et acres superaverat.
3. Tandem deis immortalibus inimicus erat.
4. Fuga equi erat celeris et alacris.

5. Bellerophon igitur in tergo celeris equi ad caelum properat.
6. In itinere autem dei equitem acrem ad terram deturbant.
7. Equus tamen ad caelum iter volucre maturat.
8. Postea Pegasus in numero siderum celebrium erat.
9. Bellerophontis autem alaeris animam tenuem Mercurius ad Tartarum portavit.
10. Sic superbia equiti acri pemiciosa erat.

GRAMMAR

ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION

Model: **fēlix fēlix fēlix** (gen. sg. **fēlicis**), *fortunate, lucky, happy*.

Singular

	M.F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	fēlix	fēlix
<i>Acc.</i>	fēlic- em	fēlix
<i>Gen.</i>	fēlic- is	fēlic- is
<i>Dat.</i>	fēlic- ī	fēlic- ī
<i>Abl.</i>	fēlic- ī or -e	fēlic- ī or -e

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	fēlic- ēs	fēlic- ia
<i>Acc.</i>	fēlic- ēs	fēlic- ia
<i>Gen.</i>	fēlic- ium	fēlic- ium
<i>Dat.</i>	fēlic- ibus	fēlic- ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	fēlic- ibus	fēlic- ibus

ENDINGS. Adjectives of one termination have **-ī** or **-e** in the abl. sg., **-ia** in the n. N.A. pl., and **-ium** in the gen. pl. Conjugated likewise is **sapiens sapiens sapiens**, gen. **sapientis**, *wise*.

EXERCISE 35

Carthage

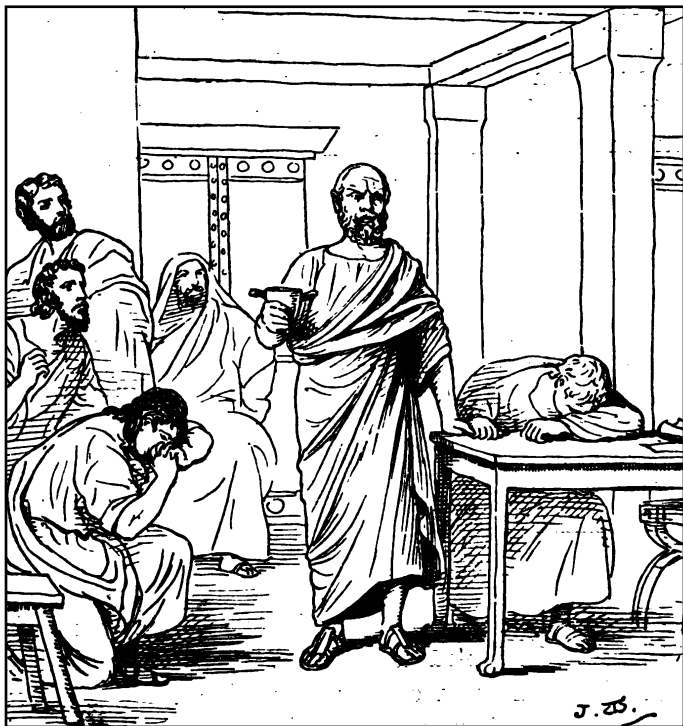
1. Carthago urbs infelix in Africā erat.
2. Cives homines simplices sed nautae audaces erant.
3. In navibus velocibus Poeni in Italiam navigabant.
4. Agri Carthaginienses feraces erant.
5. Incolae simplices erant agricolae felices.
6. Animalia rapacia agros feraces vastabant.
7. Causa atrocis belli cum Romanis simplex erat.
8. Romani rapaces Carthaginis, urbis felicitis, invidi erant.
9. Multae et atroces erant pugnae belli infelicitis.
10. Tandem felices Romani infelicem Carthaginem vastaverunt.

EXERCISE 36

Socrates

1. Socrates philosophus sapiens et celebris apud Graecos erat.
2. Philosophus moribus prudentibus et constantibus praeclarus erat.
3. Corpus laborum ingentium patiens erat.
4. Ingentis frigoris et caloris neglegens erat.
5. Vir sapiens veritatem ingenti amore amabat.
6. Discipuli diligentes magistrum sapientem laudabant.

7. Athenienses ingenti invidiā virum prudentem et sapientem accusabant.
8. Discipuli constantes ingentem magistri dolorem levabant.
9. Indices autem philosophum praestantem capitis damnaverunt.
10. Discipuli amantes viri sapientis mortem ploraverunt.



SOCRATES DRINKING THE CUP OF HEMLOCK.

GRAMMAR

THIRD CONJUGATION

PRESENT TENSE (INDICATIVE ACTIVE)

<i>Sg.</i>	reg- o
	regi- s
	regi- t
<i>Pl.</i>	regi- mus
	regi- tis
	regi- nt

The model for the third conjugation is **regō regere rēxī rēctum**, *rule*. Verbs of the third conjugation have a short **ĕ** in the second principal part. (In the case of the third conjugation, the added vowel, **-i-**, is not technically part of the stem.)

EXERCISE 37

Eruption of Vesuvius

Periculum nostrum iam intellegis. Ego et mater mea vivimus, sed avunculus non iam vivit. Subito primā horā mater avunculo dicit: 'Magna nubes ex Vesuvio surgit.'

Mox nubes mira montem cingit et tegit. Avunculus classem regit. Itaque navem flectit et ad montem iter dirigit.

Ego matrem non neglego. Mox cinerea oppidum tegunt et cingunt. Surgimus et fugam paramus. Vix pedes nostros regimus. Cineres densi vias tegunt. Capita nostra linteis stringimus et tegimus. Mater infelix vix pedes trahit. Matrem dextrā duco. Mihi autem dicit: 'Quo me dacis? Salutem tuam causā meā neglegis.' Nox terram tegit. Saepe surgimus et

pedes trahimus. Tandem periculo liberi sumus. Flammae non iam ex monte surgunt. Cineres densi non iam oppidum cingunt. Postridie nuntius nobis dicit: 'Avunculus tuus non iam vivit. Cineres corpus tegunt.' Iam satis intellegis. Gratias ago, quod ego et mater vivimus. Vale.

GRAMMAR

THIRD CONJUGATION

IMPERFECT TENSE (INDICATIVE ACTIVE)

<i>Sg.</i>	regē- ba-m
	regē- bā-s
	regē- ba-t
<i>Pl.</i>	regē- bā-mus
	regē- bā-tis
	regē- ba-nt

The endings of the second conjugation follow the first, with **ē** as the stem vowel.

GRAMMAR

THIRD CONJUGATION

FUTURE TENSE (INDICATIVE ACTIVE)

	1st	2nd	3rd
Sg.	am- ā-b-ō	mon- ē-b-ō	rega- m
	am- ā-bi-s	mon- ē-bi-s	regē- s
	am- ā-bi-t	mon- ē-bi-t	rege- t
Pl.	am- ā-bi-mus	mon- ē-bi-mus	regē- mus
	am- ā-bi-tis	mon- ē-bi-tis	regē- tis
	am- ā-bu-nt	mon- ē-bu-nt	rege- nt

There are two main types of future endings. The first and second conjugations, shown here for comparison, have a **-bi-** infix. The other conjugations have a vowel infix.

EXERCISE 38

The Persians Invade Greece

1. Dareus olim Persas imperio summo regebat.
2. Rex autem originem ex genere Medorum trahebat.
3. Tum Persae bellum omnibus Graeeis indieunt.
4. Persarum duces naves et copias ad Graeciam dirigebant.
5. Tum Athenienses ceteris Graeeis saepe dicebant:
6. 'Mox Persae omnibus Graeeis bellum indicent.'
7. 'Si milites e castris ducetis, cum hostibus confligemus.'
8. 'Graeciae periculum pro salute vestrā non neglegetis.'
9. 'Si castra iungemus, victoria nostra in memoriā hominum semper vivet.'

10. 'Libertatem et patriam armis tegetis, si periculum intel-
legetis.'

EXERCISE 39

Defeat of the Persians

1. 'Amicitia nostra et periculum nos iungent.'
2. 'Dum vivemus, vos magno amore semper diligemus.'
3. Omnes civitates verba Atheniensium neglegebant.
4. Interea Athenienses salutem suam non neglegebant.
5. Dux parvae civitatis paucos milites e castris ducebat.
6. Milites castra fossa et vallo cingebant.
7. Duces copias ex urbe ducebant et eastras aggeribus tege-
bant.
8. Mox hostes magnā fortitudine eonfligebant.
9. Graeci tamen Persas superant et fugiunt.
10. Mox Persae ad litus et naves iter dirigebant.

GRAMMAR

SECOND CONJUGATION

PERFECT SYSTEM (INDICATIVE ACTIVE)

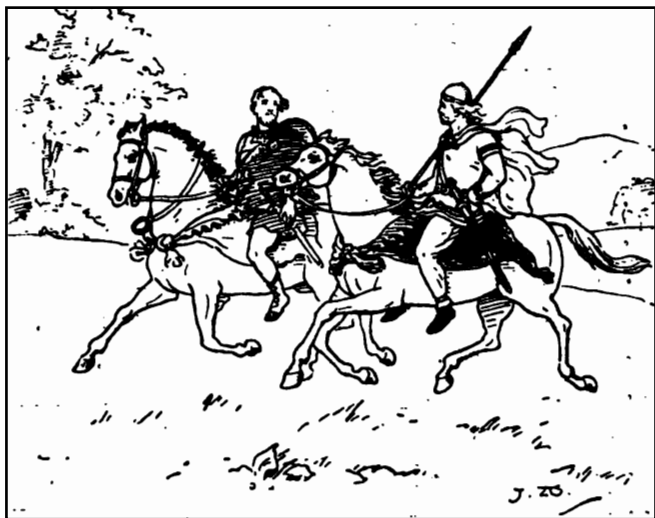
	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Future Perfect</i>
<i>Sg.</i>	<i>rēx-ī</i>	<i>rēx-eram</i>	<i>rēx-erō</i>
	<i>rēx-istī</i>	<i>rēx-erās</i>	<i>rēx-erīs</i>
	<i>rēx-it</i>	<i>rēx-erat</i>	<i>rēx-erit</i>
<i>Pl.</i>	<i>rēx-imus</i>	<i>rēx-erāmus</i>	<i>rēx-erīmus</i>
	<i>rēx-istis</i>	<i>rēx-erātis</i>	<i>rēx-eritis</i>
	<i>rēx-ērunt</i>	<i>rēx-erant</i>	<i>rēx-erint</i>

The perfect system is formed from the third principal part without the first person singular perfect indicative active ending (**rēx-**). The endings are, as always, entirely regular.

EXERCISE 40

Boadicea

1. Romani quondam bellimi in Britannia gerebant.
2. Nero, imperator crudelis, populum Romanum regebat.
3. Milites Romani magnam Britanniae partem iam rexerunt.
4. Forte Romaniis praetor copias suaia ad insulam Monam duxerat.
5. Statim Boadicea, Icenorum regina, milites suos ad proelium duxit.
6. Cives reginam magno cum amore dilexerunt.
7. Itaque multi et fortes viri reginam fortem cinxerant.
8. Equi albi reginam audacem in pugnam traxerant.
9. Ante pugnam regina militibus suis verba audacia dixit:
10. 'Dum ego vivam, nunquam Romani populum meum regent.'



BRITISH WARRIORS.

EXERCISE 41

The Death of Boadicea

1. 'Non sine magnā curā cives meos ad bellum traxi.'
2. 'Vos omnes mala mea iam intellexeritis.'
3. 'Pallium meum saevas plagas texit.'
4. 'In tergo meo hostes multa vulnera inflixerunt.'
5. 'Itaque magnam cladem Romanis struetis.'
6. Fortibus cum verbis regina milites ad pugnam duxerat.
7. Britanni iteruin iterumque Romanis insidias struxerant.
8. Sed tandem praetor Romanus prope Londinium Britannos superavit.
9. Boadicea mortem celerem veneno sibi struxit.

10. Postea Romani imperio saevo Britannos rexerunt.

EXERCISE 42

PUER 1: Cur non ludimus? Animus et tempus nos invitant.

PUER 2: Invitant omnia sed magister non invitat.

PUER 1: Puer audax veniam pro nobis postulabit.

PUER 2: Vere dicis. Sed eitiŭ e dextrā Hereulis clavam extorquebis quam a magistro veniam.

PUER 1: Olim nemo tam cupidus erat ludendi.

PUER 2: Sed non iam puer est. Memoriam bonam non habet.

PUER 1: Facilis est ad plagas, ad veniam difficilis.

PUER 2: Legatus tamen pro nobis dicet. Nuntius veniam postulabit.

PUER 1: Puerum audacem ad magistrum ducemus.

PUER 2: Ego non veniam postulabo. Magistri saeva verba me terrent.

PUER 1: Nemo aptior est quam Tullius. Magistrum non timet.

PUER 2: Nemo profecto. Tullius causam nostram dicet.

PUER 1: Eloquens est et orator facilis.

TULLIUS: Ego veniam postulabo. Sed si veniam non dabit, non ego culpā ero dignus.

PUER 2: Magnam gratiam habebimus. Fortuna te iuvabit.

PUER 1: Mercurius legatum nostrum diriget et ducet.

EXERCISE 43

Tullius Asks for a Holiday

TULLIUS: Salve, magister optime!

MAGISTER: Verba dulcia timeo. Quid optas?

TULLIUS: Omnes pueri veniam ludendi postulant.

MAGISTER: Nunquam studetis. Semper luditis.

TULLIUS: Ludendo ingenia nostra excitamus. Tu nos temperantiam semper docuisti.

MAGISTER: Vere dixisti. Si vehementer studetis, veniam ludendi semper do. Vos omnes segniter studetis et aeriter luditis.

TULLIUS: Nonne scholae nomen ludus est?

MAGISTER: Vere dicis, sed quia litteris ludimus.

TULLIUS: Si veniam dabis, postea magnā diligentiam studebimus.

MAGISTER: Quis erit sponsor?

TULLIUS: Ego capitis mei periculo sponsor ero.

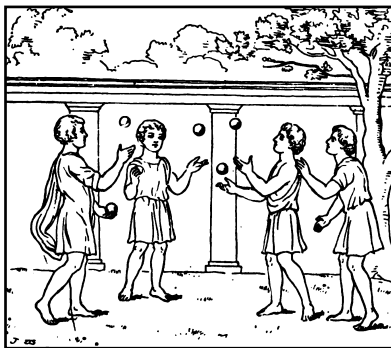
MAGISTER: Si sponsor eris, veniam dabo.

TULLIUS: Magnam gratiam habemus. Vale, optime magister!

[Tullius reports the answer.]

TULLIUS: Veniam dat, sed aegre.

OMNES: O carum caput! Omnes te amamus.



ROMAN BOYS PLAYING BALL.

GRAMMAR

THE FOURTH DECLENSION

Model: **portus portus m.**, *harbour*, 'port'.

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	portu- s
<i>Acc.</i>	portu- m
<i>Gen.</i>	portū- s
<i>Dat.</i>	portu- ī
<i>Abl.</i>	portū

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	portū- s
<i>Acc.</i>	portū- s
<i>Gen.</i>	portu- um
<i>Dat.</i>	port- ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	port- ibus

The endings of the fourth declension more closely resemble the third than the second.

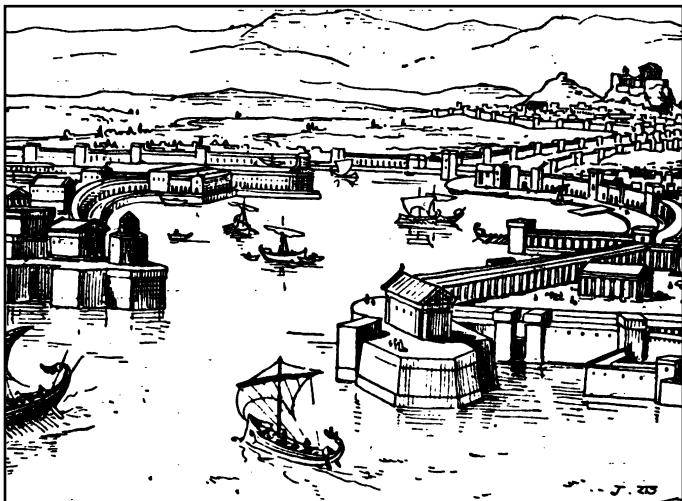
In the gen. and abl. sg., and in the nom. and acc. pl. (and sometimes, too, in the dat. sg.), the **-u** of the stem absorbs the vowel of the ending, and becomes long.

In the dat. and abl. pl., it is weakened to **-i** before the ending **-bus**, though a few substantives, mostly words of two syllables ending in **-cus** and **-tus**, have **-ubus** as dat. and abl. pl. ending; as — **arcus**, **arc-ubus**.

EXERCISE 44

Celebrated Harbours

1. In Graeciā magnus numerus portuum bonorum erat.
2. Italiae in litore pauci portus erant.
3. Inter portus Graecorum memoriā dignus est Piraeus.
4. Piraeus, portus Athenarum, Minervae sacer erat.
5. Inter urbem et portum muri longi erant.
6. In bello iter tutum ex urbe ad portum ducebat.
7. Corinthus, urbs Graeciae, magno portu erat ornata.
8. Graecos portus in arcum undae curvabant.
9. Romani autem magno cum labore portus aedificaverunt.
10. Natura enim paucos portus in litore Italiae struxerat.



THE HARBOUR OF THE PIRAEUS.

EXERCISE 45

Caesar in Gaul

1. Caesar quondam cum exercitu suo in Galliā pugnabat.
2. Inter Gallos magnus tumultus erat.
3. Situs autem oppidorum diffieiles erant.
4. In litore portus rari et magno aestu difficiles erant.
5. Galli naves ad magnitudinem fluctuum aptas aedifieaverant.
6. Romanorum naves fluctus et ventos vix tolerabant.
7. Barbari autem remorum usum ignorabant.
8. Galli igitur vento adverse e portu non navigabant.
9. Itaque Caesar exercitum magnum navibus suis transportat.
10. Primo adventu hostes impetum propulsaverunt.

EXERCISE 46

Caesar in Britain

1. Tum Caesar ad omnes casus equitatum et peditatum comparabat.
2. Mox in Britanniam cum exercitu suo mediā aestate navigavit.
3. Caesaris adventum Britanni magno metu expectabant.
4. Britanni ad portus currus multos collocaverant.
5. Milites barbari ex curribus saepe pugnabant.
6. Romani e navibus per fluctus ad litus properabant.
7. Britanni magno metu et tumultu in silvas fugam maturaverunt.
8. Equitatus Gallorum magnam victoriam reportavit.

9. Caesaris reditus in Galliam magno cum gaudio erat.
 10. Romanorum enim exercitus equitatum et peditatum barbarorum superaverat.

GRAMMAR

NEUTER SUBSTANTIVES

OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION

Model: **genū genūs n.**, *knee*.

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	genū
<i>Acc.</i>	genū
<i>Gen.</i>	genū- s
<i>Dat.</i>	genū
<i>Abl.</i>	genū

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	genu- a
<i>Acc.</i>	genu- a
<i>Gen.</i>	genu- um
<i>Dat.</i>	gen- ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	gen- ibus

Substantives of the fourth declension ending in **-u** are neuter. They are few in number and all the cases of the singular are alike in endings, except the genitive.

Both **genū** and **verū verūs n.**, *a spit, broach; a dart, javelin*, have **-ibus** or **-ubus** in dat. and abl. pl.

EXERCISE 47

The Horns of Animals

1. Cervorum genua parva sunt.
2. Cornua autem magna et ramis similia sunt.
3. Tauri et cervi cornibus pugnant.
4. Vulnera cornuum canibus periculosa sunt.
5. Venatores cornibus animalium tecta sua saepe ornant.
6. Homines multi cervorum cornua magni aestimant.
7. Venatores non solum cornua sed etiam caput cervi amant.
8. Venator cervi corpus in veru ante ignem figit.
9. In Germaniā canes verua volutant.
10. Non multi Britannorum verua parva habent.

GRAMMAR

THE FIFTH DECLENSION

Model: **rēs rei f.**, *a thing*.

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	rē- s
<i>Acc.</i>	re- m
<i>Gen.</i>	re- ī
<i>Dat.</i>	re- ī
<i>Abl.</i>	rē

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>rē-s</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rē-s</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rē-rum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rē-bus</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rē-bus</i>

GENDER. All substantives of the fifth declension are feminine except **diēs diēi c.**, *day*, which is generally masculine, but may be feminine in the singular if used of an appointed day.

NUMBER. Many fifth declension substantives have no plural, as **fides**, *faith*.

EXERCISE 48

A General Exhorts His Troops

1. Dux magnus ante aciem milites ita incitabat.
2. 'Res publica in magno periculo est.'
3. 'Rebus, non verbis, victoriam parabit.''
4. 'Magna spes victoriae me tenet.'
5. 'In fide militum fortium magnam spem habeo.'
6. 'Hostes autem sine re, sine fide, sine spe sunt.'
7. 'Deus est dominus omnium rerum.'
8. 'In rebus secundis res publica cives servavit.'
9. 'In rebus adversis cives rem publicam servabunt.'
10. 'Virtus res secundas ornat, res adversas firmat.'
11. 'Fidei vestrae rei publicae salutem mando.'
12. 'Rem publicam vestram in acie iam servabitis.'

EXERCISE 49

About Days

1. Sol diem, luna noctem illuminat.
2. Hieme dies breves, aestate longi sunt.
3. Romani primo anni die multa dona amicis suis dabant.
4. Pontifices dies festos praedicabant.
5. Diebus festis omnes cives theatrum et circos celebrabant.
6. Die festo sacerdotes res divinas agitabant.
7. Diebus nefastis indicia in foro non erant.
8. Media diei pars est meridies.
9. Romani dies natales semper celebrabant.
10. Cives diebus natalibus deis animalia multa mactabant.



HERCULES SLAYS THE NEMEAN LION.

GRAMMAR

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

PRESENT SYSTEM (INDICATIVE ACTIVE)

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Future</i>
<i>Sg.</i>	audi- ō	audiē- ba-m	audia- m
	audi- s	audiē- bā-s	audiē- s
	audi- t	audiē- ba-t	audie- t
<i>Pl.</i>	audi- mus	audiē- bā-mus	audiē- mus
	audi- tis	audiē- bā-tis	audiē- tis
	audiu- nt	audiē- ba-nt	audie- nt

The model for the fourth conjugation is **audiō audīre audīvī audītus**, *hear*. Verbs of the fourth conjugation have a long *ī* in the second principal part.

EXERCISE 50

Hercules

1. Multi pueri Herculis nomen iam sciunt.
2. Si vos verba mea audietis, mox omnem fabulam scietis.
3. Vos omnes Iovis et Iunonis nomina iam scitis.
4. Deorum pater et caeli regina olim magnam contentionem nutriebant.
5. Itaque miro modo Iuno Iovem puniebat.
6. Dea saeva Herculem, Iovis filium, pro patre punit.
7. Hercules multos annos tyranno crudeli serviebat.
8. Eurystheus, tyrannus saevus, multis laboribus Herculem impediēbat.
9. Hercules autem sine periculo labores finit.

10. Ex oraculo euim Apollinis sic audit.

EXERCISE 51

Hercules and Apollo

1. 'Si labores tuos finies, Eurystheus te expediet.'
2. 'Multos annos tyranno crudeli servies.'
3. 'Chiron, centaurus praeclarus, te omnibus artibus erudiet.'
4. 'Leonis pelle corpus vesties.'
5. 'Si labores finies, Iuno iram suam molliet.'
6. 'Tum dea saeva te expediet.'
7. 'Si verba mea audies, dolores tuos molliam.'
8. Hercules autem verba audit et mox labores finit.
9. Tum dea crudelis Herculem, Iovis filium, expedit.
10. Vir enim fortis deae iram molliit.

GRAMMAR

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

PERFECT SYSTEM (INDICATIVE ACTIVE)

	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Future Perfect</i>
<i>Sg.</i>	audīv- i	audīv- ero	audīv- eram
	audīv- isti	audīv- eris	audīv- erās
	audīv- it	audīv- erit	audīv- erāt
<i>Pl.</i>	audīv- imus	audīv- erimus	audīv- erāmus
	audīv- istis	audīv- eritis	audīv- erātis
	audīv- ērunt	audīv- erint	audīv- erant

EXERCISE 52

Tantalus

1. De poenis diris virorum multomm iam audivimus.
2. Tantalus, Iovia filius et Lydiae rex, semper esurit et sitit.
3. Sisyphus, primus Corinthi rex, labores suos nunquam finiverit.
4. Catenae durae Ixionis membra ad rotara vinxerunt.
5. Iuppiter quondam Tantalos, filio suo, deorum secreta expedivit.
6. Tantalus magno cum gaudio patris verba audiverat.
7. Tum deorum consilia hominibus aperiebat.
8. Dei igitur Tantalum horribili poenā puniverunt.
9. In mediā aquā stat, sed semper sitit.
10. Fruetus pulchros spectat sed semper esurit.
11. Dei enim Tantalum a cibo et a potu impediverunt.

EXERCISE 53

Sisyphus and Ixion

1. Sisyphus, primus Corinthi rex, oppidum suum muris muniverat.
2. Tum rex crudelis in omnes viatores saeviebat.
3. Viatorum membra catenis et vinctulis impedivit.
4. Itaque dei regem crudelem puniverunt.
5. In Tartaro vir miser saxum ingens ad summum montem semper volutat.
6. Nunquam dei Sisyphum a labore expediverint.
7. Ixion, rex infidus, nunquam dormiet.
8. Vincula saeva Ixionis manus impediunt.

9. Catenae manus et pedes ad rotam vinciunt.
10. Dei rotam semper volutant, et captivum plagis saevis puniunt.



THE TORTURE OF IXION.

English Exercises

*[The subjects of these Exercises are number for number
the same as in the Latin Exercises.]*

1.

Marcus

1. Many writers have related the history of the Romans.
2. Once the Gauls were conquerors and attacked Rome.
3. Many buildings were in flames and great fear reigned in the town.
4. The Roman people was filled with grief and terror.
5. The fierce words of the orators urge on the people.
6. 'Why does fear reign in our native-land?'
7. 'We will elect a general and drive away the Gauls from our land.'
8. 'You will soon be victors, if you will elect a good general.'
9. The Romans drive away their fear and elect Marius general.
10. The Roman people adorns Marius, the conqueror of the Gauls, with many honours.

2.

Sulla

1. The conquerors had driven away the barbarians from the town.
2. But soon fear and terror reigned in the land.

3. The forces elect a new general and prepare for war.
4. The praetor was soon hostile to Marius.
5. Again the town was filled with terror and fear.
6. The forces loved the new praetor with a great love.
7. The battle was destructive to Marius, the conqueror of the Gauls.
8. The grateful conquerors adorn the new general with many honours.
9. The town was free from fear and great was the joy of the conquerors.
10. Sulla, the conqueror of Marius, drives-away his enemies from the town.

3.

Ancient Customs

1. The Romans loved many and beautiful flowers in their gardens.
2. Many flowers have various colours.
3. A few flowers have scent; many have colour.
4. The orators and writers have related to us about the customs of the ancient Romans.
5. The Romans by an ancient custom adorned their conquerors with wreaths of flowers.
6. We have kept a few customs of the Romans; we have rejected many.
7. The famous orators blamed many customs of the Roman people.

8. The customs of the ancient Romans were severe and hard.
9. Then pride was destructive to the good customs.
10. We will praise the ancient customs and reject the new.

4.

The Capitol

1. The Romans for a long time had not a prison in their town.
2. Then by reason of the great boldness of the people they built a prison near the Forum.
3. In the prison they loaded with chains the wicked inhabitants.
4. Soon they surround the town with a rampart and a wall.
5. Once the Gauls were attacking the ramparts and walls of the town.
6. The fear and terror of the inhabitants were great [m.pl.].
7. The sacred geese saved the town from danger.
8. For the Gauls were already storming the ramparts.
9. Then the geese by loud cackling saved the ramparts and the Capitol.
10. The Romans soon drove away the Gauls and saved the town.

5.

Jupiter

1. Jupiter, the son of Saturn, was the father of the gods.

2. The Romans used to sacrifice many beasts to the father of heaven.
3. They praised the father of the gods in the temple.
4. Neptune and Pluto were brothers of the father of heaven.
5. The white colour was sacred to the great father.
6. The two brothers of Jupiter loved the black colour.
7. Jupiter was hostile firstly to his father, then to his brothers.
8. Jupiter governed heaven; Pluto, Tartarus; Neptune, the ocean.
9. Jupiter was always hostile to his mother and his brothers.
10. The Romans often sacrificed beasts in the temples of the brothers.

6.

A Dialogue

TULLIUS: Hail, O Marcus! Whence art thou?

MARCUS: I am hastening from school to the baths.

TULLIUS: Where are the baths?

MARCUS: They are near the river behind the temple of Neptune.

TULLIUS: How many boys are in the school?

MARCUS: Formerly there were a hundred. Now many, for the sake of business, have departed.

TULLIUS: How many years hast thou been in the school?

MARCUS: Nearly six years. Soon I shall sail for Greece.

TULLIUS: Why wilt thou depart from thy native-land?

MARCUS: If I shall have been in Greece, I shall soon be skilled in the Greek language.

TULLIUS: How many languages are known to thee?

MARCUS: I am tolerably skilled in the Latin language, but the master has only formed the Greek letters for me.

TULLIUS: When wilt thou depart?

MARCUS: I shall sail in autumn [abl.].

TULLIUS: Farewell!

7.

A Fight in an Amphitheatre

1. The Romans often used to fight with lions and wild beasts.
2. The battles of the wild beasts pleased the spectators.
3. Once the Romans had condemned a wretched captive.
4. The man was watching the great lion in the arena.
5. The lion however did not attack the captive.
6. Formerly the man had treated the lion well.
7. He had healed the pain of the sick lion.
8. The grateful lion therefore did not fight with the man.
9. The spectators demand pardon for the captive.
10. They give the lion to the man on account of the friendship.

8.

Juno and the Peacock

1. The peacock was sacred to the goddess Juno.

2. The beautiful tail of the peacock was the gift of Juno.
3. But the proud peacock was not content with his beauty.
4. He demands a new gift from Juno.
5. 'The nightingale surpasses me in singing [abl.]'
6. 'I shall be grateful to you, if I shall have surpassed the nightingale.'
7. But Juno refused the gift to the proud peacock.
8. 'The beautiful colour of thy feathers is a fitting gift.'
9. 'The nightingale surpasses the peacock in singing.'
10. 'The peacock surpasses the nightingale in beauty.'

9.

A Soldier's Weapons

1. A Roman soldier used to carry arms and weapons.
2. The arms of the soldier used to ward off hostile weapons.
3. With their weapons the soldiers attacked opponents.
4. Many infantrymen used to fight together with a few cavalrymen.
5. The horsemen carried spears and swords.
6. The weapons of the footmen were swords and javelins.
7. Firstly they threw their javelins, then they fought with swords.
8. The soldiers used to surround their camp with a ditch and rampart.
9. The arms of the infantrymen and cavalrymen were different.

10. The camp of the soldiers was often full of captives and hostages.

10.

Carthage

1. The Tyrians once built Carthage, a famous town in Africa.
2. Dido, a Tyrian maiden, sailed to Africa with [cum] a large band of comrades.
3. Carthage had [erat + dat.] a small and wonderful origin.
4. Soon a large multitude of men was living in the town.
5. After a few years Aeneas, the Trojan hero, sailed to the Tyrian town with a band of comrades.
6. Dido, unhappy maiden, loved the beauty and bravery of the Trojan soldier.
7. The great bravery of Aeneas inflamed the queen of the Carthaginians.
8. But the gods were preparing a great kingdom for Aeneas in Italy.
9. Mercury, the messenger of the gods, drives the small band of Trojans out of the town.
10. The flight of the band was fatal to the queen of the Carthaginians.

11.

Cicero

1. The Roman people used to love long speeches.
2. The speeches of Cicero were dear to the Roman people.

3. The orator delivered many speeches in the Forum.
4. Cicero by his speeches prepared many enemies.
5. The consul related to the Roman people about the conspiracy of Catiline.
6. A faithful slave had related to Cicero the great conspiracy.
7. The famous consul overcame the treachery of the faithless allies.
8. The swords of the Roman legions saved the people.
9. The legions of the consul killed Catiline in a great battle.
10. The Roman people loaded Cicero with great honours and congratulations.

12.

Cicero (Continued)

1. Soon an adverse change of fortune was the cause of the ruin of Cicero.
2. Treachery and conspiracy had been destructive [f.pl.] to Caesar and Pompeius.
3. The consul Antonius was the commander of the Roman legions.
4. Antonius desired the command of the Roman people.
5. Cicero condemned Antonius by many and famous speeches.
6. The speeches of Cicero prepared the ruin of the orator.
7. Cicero, filled with fear, was avoiding the swords of the legions in flight.

8. A few soldiers out of the legions of Antonius overcame Cicero on the road.
9. The famous orator had saved Rome from conspiracy and treachery.
10. But the swords of the legions were destructive to the life of the orator.

13.

Homer

1. Homer, a blind poet of Greece, used to wander through the land and recite his songs.
2. The Greek boy used to recite a poem of Homer in school.
3. The poems of the blind poet still delight boys and girls.
4. The ancient poet has related in his poems about the Trojan contest.
5. After the Trojan contest Ulysses was wandering over the ocean for ten years.
6. The cleverness of Ulysses is known to boys and girls from the poems of Homer.
7. The poems of Homer are filled with the names of famous Greeks and Trojans.
8. There were four rivers near the walls of Troy.
9. The Greeks and Trojans often fought on the banks of the rivers.
10. The Trojan rivers often carried the dead soldiers to the ocean.

14.

Ancient Customs

1. A Greek boy used to strengthen mind and body by severe rules of training.
2. The ancient Greeks desired healthy minds in healthy bodies.
3. The Greeks used to strengthen their bodies by labour, and their minds by study.
4. Work was not hurtful to the body of the healthy man.
5. The ancient Britons used to have naked and painted bodies.
6. Once the Romans sailed to our shores.
7. The Britons attacked the Roman soldiers on the shore.
8. The sharp weapons of the Romans wounded the naked bodies of the Britons.
9. The swords were dangerous to the bare breasts of the soldiers.
10. Honest hearts are always in honest breasts.

15.

Ancient Customs

1. Among the Latin race, crimes were formerly rare.
2. Their bodies were exposed to great labours and burdens.
3. Wounds in front delighted the soldiers of the Latin race.
4. Great burdens were dear to the ancient race.
5. Soon crimes and vices overcame the people.
6. Works and burdens did not delight the men.
7. The new race of Romans was different from the old race.

8. Burdens were troublesome to the new race, but dear to the old race.
9. Soon the barbarians attacked the wicked and idle race.
10. Crimes and vices were the cause of the ruin of the Roman people.

16.

A Letter from a Friend

1. If our friends are well, we are glad; we are well.
2. We have great sorrow, because you are not well.
3. I rejoice, if I have a letter daily.
4. Every day we sit for many hours [acc.] on the shore.
5. We grieve always because we have not you.
6. First we study, then we exercise our bodies.
7. The slaves always warn us; then we throw balls for a long time.
8. We are always well, if we exercise our bodies.
9. The beauty of the shore holds and possesses us.
10. I always keep you in memory [abl.]. Farewell!

17.

The Gymnasium

1. Many towns of the Greeks used to have schools and gymnasia.
2. A Greek boy used to exercise his body in the gymnasium, and his mind in the school
3. The soldiers of the Greeks were strong in body and mind [abl.].

4. The Roman boy used to feel [habeo] and owe thanks to the Greeks.
5. For the Greek instructor used to teach many kinds of games.
6. By strict rules the Greek used to train his body for [ad] battle.
7. The Roman boys were strong and flourishing owing to their games.
8. The fathers used to warn the boys: 'If you will exercise your bodies, you will be strong.'
9. The boys used to keep in memory the words of their fathers.
10. We shall always be strong, if we shall keep in memory the rules of strict training.

18.

Hercules

1. Hercules stands out among the ancient Greeks on account of his strong body.
2. A large snake did not frighten the boy in his cradle.
3. The son of Jupiter held the monster with his right hand.
4. The great danger did not frighten the strong boy.
5. Soon the snake lay dead in the cradle.
6. Afterwards the boy showed new signs of boldness.
7. He kept off the fierce wild beasts from [ab] the flocks of his father.
8. He did not fear the fierce lions and bears.
9. With his own right hand, the boy destroyed a fierce lion.

10. But he kept the booty as [pro] a sign of his victory.

19.

Hercules and Apollo

1. Hercules did not have a helmet and sword.
2. With his strong right-hand he held a large club.
3. The great hero did not fear dangers and contests.
4. The boldness of the fierce Greek was not pleasing to Juno [dat.].
5. And so the son of Jupiter for ten years obeyed a tyrant [dat.].
6. Apollo with kind words warned the angry hero.
7. 'Thou shalt complete a long life, if thou shalt have obeyed my words.'
8. 'Eurystheus, by reason of cruel Juno, will hold you.'
9. 'Thou shalt have great rewards, if thou shalt have completed the labours.'
10. 'Thou shalt not fear dangers, for my right-hand will have lent help.'

20.

A Dialogue

HORATIUS: What is frightening you, Marcus?

MARCUS: I have studied for a long time, and do not [neque] keep my lesson in my memory.

HORATIUS: Why are you afraid? Your master does not teach you today.

MARCUS: Who will teach us? Why do you laugh at me?

HORATIUS: I do not laugh at you. Your master is not well.

MARCUS: I am sorry because he is not well, but I dread the anger of the man.

HORATIUS: Cornelius will teach you today. Why do we not play ball?

MARCUS: I scarcely have time. I have not studied enough.

HORATIUS: I will prevent you from study. You shall now play at ball, then you shall exercise your mind.

MARCUS: If it is pleasing to you, I will obey.

HORATIUS: I owe thanks to you.

21.

The Druids

1. The Gauls and Romans used to have different customs.
2. Caesar, a great writer and famous general, has related about the customs of the Gauls.
3. The Druids educate the boys and have the care of the sacrifices.
4. The Gauls hold [have] the race of Druids or priests in great honour.
5. They used to hold the race of knights in honour after the Druids.
6. The knights used to love war, the Druids had the care of sacrifices.
7. The Druids used to teach the boys and were the masters of morals.
8. The morals of the people were an object of care [dat.] to the Druids.

9. They used to keep in memory many and sacred songs.
10. The Druids often recited songs about their customs to the Gauls.

22.

The Capitol

1. Romulus, the first king of Rome, marked out the city.
2. Tarquinius built a citadel and temple on a small hill near the Forum.
3. The temple of Jupiter adorned the highest part of the citadel.
4. In the middle part of the temple a figure of the great god used to sit.
5. A figure of Minerva adorned the left part of the temple.
6. The right part of the temple was sacred to Jimo.
7. The citadel of the city was under [in] the protection of Jupiter.
8. The goddess of victory used to dwell with Jupiter in the citadel.
9. Roman generals after a victory used to sacrifice to Jupiter.
10. The sacred citadel was an ornament and protection [dat.] to the city.

23.

The Capitol (Continued)

1. The Romans adorned the front of the citadel with beautiful ornaments.

2. Brazen gates and golden statues were in the front of the temple.
3. The majesty of the king of the gods was worthy of a beautiful citadel.
4. The forces of the Gauls were once attacking the ramparts of the city.
5. By chance the guardians of the citadel, full of sleep, were not watching.
6. The barbarians were already on the highest part of the citadel.
7. But the Romans used to keep the sacred geese of Juno in the citadel.
8. The geese, by loud cackling, saved the city from danger.
9. The cackling of the geese aroused the forces in the citadel.
10. Soon the soldiers had thrown down the barbarians from the walls.

24.

Roman Warships

1. The Roman people formerly had a small fleet of warships.
2. The Carthaginians surpassed the Romans in the size and number of their ships.
3. The sailors of the Carthaginians had captured many towns in Sicily.
4. And so the Romans built war-ships and sailed to Sicily.

5. The Roman sailors built their warships from [ex] the warships of the Carthaginians.
6. The workmen built a high prow in the new ships.
7. A sailor used to steer [govern] the ship from the high stem.
8. In the middle of the ships they built a strong tower.
9. Sailors used to throw weapons from the towers on [ad] the ships of the enemies.
10. A brazen beak adorned the prows of the ships.

25.

Roman Warships (Continued)

1. The sailors used to attack the ships of the enemy with the brazen beaks of their ships.
2. Often the beaks were destructive to the fleet of the enemy.
3. With adverse winds the sailors urged on their ships with oars.
4. But with favourable winds they fitted [orno] their fleet with sails.
5. Often they hastened their way with oars and sails.
6. A fierce storm had thrown a Carthaginian ship on the shore of Italy.
7. The Roman workmen built many ships from the Carthaginian ship.
8. Then the Romans sailed for Sicily with a large fleet.
9. The Roman ships routed the Carthaginian fleet.

10. Soon the Romans overcame their enemies and occupied the island of Sicily.

26.

Head-Dress of the Greeks

1. The ancient Greeks used to have long and beautiful hair [pl.].
2. The long hair used to protect the heads of the men from the sun.
3. Men often walked in the streets with bare head.
4. Travellers and hunters protected their heads from the heat of the sun.
5. They warded off the sun from their heads with beautiful skins.
6. The figure of Mercury never has a bare head.
7. Small wings adorn the covering of the head of Mercury.
8. Short [tonsus] hair was the sign of a boy, long hair the sign of a young man.
9. Greek women rarely had beautiful coverings on their heads.
10. For women in Greece seldom walked through the streets or market-places.

27.

Neptune

1. Neptune, brother of Jupiter, had the dominion of the sea.
2. The Roman writers used to tell few tales about the sea.

3. For the ancient race of Romans feared the angry seas.
4. But among [apud] the Greek writers we have many tales about the seas.
5. Near the coast of Greece Neptune dwelt in a palace under the sea.
6. Brazen feet and golden manes adorned the horses of the god of the sea.
7. The horses used to carry Neptune over the seas.
8. Around the god in the waves of the seas danced strange monsters.
9. Under the command of Neptune were the angry winds and the vast sea.
10. The god carried a large trident in his right hand.

28.

Neptune and the Walls of Troy

1. Neptune and Apollo had once roused the anger of Jupiter.
2. And so the father of the gods condemned his brothers to [ad] a severe punishment.
3. Apollo and Neptune administered the commands of the Trojan king.
4. Neptune built the walls of Troy, and Apollo kept the flocks of the king.
5. Then Laomedon refused the rewards of the labours.
6. And so a large animal hastened out of the sea.
7. The Trojans used to appease the animal by the sacrifice of a girl.

8. By chance a cruel lot had condemned the daughter of the king.
9. But Hercules with his club killed the terrible animal.
10. Soon afterwards the Greeks besieged the walls of Troy for ten years.

29.

Tartarus

1. Pluto used to govern the gloomy kingdom of Tartarus.
2. The spirits or shades of dead men dwelt in the mournful kingdom.
3. The Greek and Latin poets relate many tales about the terrible abode.
4. Mercury, the messenger of the gods, used to gather the sad shades to the gates of Tartarus.
5. The terrible waters of the river divided the abodes of the dead and living.
6. On the sad banks the mournful spirits await the terrible ferryman.
7. The mournful Charon carries the thin forms across the sad rivers.
8. Cerberus, a terrible dog, guards the gates of mournful Tartarus.
9. Serpents adorned the terrible heads of the cruel monster.
10. The immense dog wards off the sad spirits from the gloomy river.

30.

Tartarus (Continued)

1. The mournful crowd of shades sits on the gloomy bank.
2. All the spirits call Charon, the terrible ferryman.
3. Charon carries all the shades across the terrible river.
4. On the bank dwells Cerberus, the cruel dog.
5. Death is the common fate of all men.
6. The terrible sailor carries across the river the noble, the brave, the young, and the humble shades.
7. The threshold of Tartarus is the abode of the young and graceful shades.
8. The miserable and ugly old men dwell near the young.
9. The spirits of illustrious heroes dwell in the furthest part of the immense abode.
10. The fate of all the shades is sad and cruel.

31.

Elysium

1. Near the sad abode of the shades are the green fields of Elysium.
2. The shades of illustrious heroes dwell in the sweet fields.
3. The blessed spirits enter the gates of the sweet abode.
4. The shades of base men dwell in the mournful kingdom of Tartarus.
5. In Tartarus the spirits of cruel men suffer cruel punishments.
6. In Elysium sweet pleasures are the rewards of noble lives.

7. A few mortals have entered the gloomy kingdom of cruel Pluto.
8. The illustrious Orpheus desired his graceful wife.
9. Hercules snatched away Cerberus, the terrible
10. guardian of Tartarus. The gloomy way to Tartarus was through an ugly cave.

32.

Mercury

1. Jupiter had a celebrated son, Mercury.
2. The boy Mercury carried off the celebrated bulls of Apollo.
3. Mercury was the winged messenger of Jupiter and all the gods.
4. The quick messenger often used to hasten by a journey on land on behalf of the gods.
5. The poets relate celebrated tales about the journeys on foot.
6. The Greeks used to build many statues of the winged god on their roads.
7. The wisdom and eloquence of the fiery god were celebrated.
8. Mercury used to guard the spirits on their journeys on the earth.
9. Mercury was the god of roads and guardian of travellers.
10. Wings adorned the head and feet of the fiery messenger.

33.

The Chimera

1. Apollo, the lively god of the lyre, was the leader of the Muses.
2. The Greek poets used to praise the goddesses of poetry.
3. The Muses had a fiery and winged horse.
4. The name of the celebrated horse [dat.] was Pegasus.
5. By the aid of Minerva the fiery horseman seized the swift horse.
6. By the aid of the lively animal Bellerophon overcame the fiery Chimaera.
7. The Chimaera, a monster of the earth, was ravaging the fields of Lycia.
8. Bellerophon hastened against the fiery monster on the back of the winged horse.
9. With swift and winged darts he killed the monster.
10. The winged arrows were destructive to the fiery monster.

34.

1. Soon, however, the lively conqueror desired new dangers.
2. Journeys by land were not pleasing to the fiery mind.
3. Soon he aroused the terrible anger of the gods.
4. Then on the back of the fiery horse he desires a swift journey.
5. But the journey was destructive to the celebrated conqueror.

6. For the winged horse throws off the keen horseman from his back.
7. On the humble earth Bellerophon breathed out his spirit.
8. But the famous horse hastened his swift journey to the heaven.
9. The Greek poets used to reckon [have] the swift Pegasus in the number of the stars.
10. Writers today call Pegasus the winged horse of the Muses.

35.

Carthage

1. Dido, the unhappy queen, built the walls of Carthage.
2. After the Trojan war the bold Aeneas sailed to the kingdom of the simple queen.
3. But the fierce gods drove the bold sailor from the city.
4. Then the unhappy woman prepared a horrible death.
5. With her bold right hand she set free her unhappy spirit.
6. After the death of the unhappy queen the town was happy for many years.
7. The simple Carthaginians sailed to the fertile fields of Sicily.
8. Soon there was war between the warlike Romans and the bold Carthaginians.
9. At length, the happy Romans drove the unhappy Carthaginians out of the island.

10. After many and fierce battles the Romans captured and destroyed Carthage.

36.

Socrates

1. Among the wise men of Greece, Socrates was remarkable.
2. He had a prudent mind in a strong body.
3. He was capable of immense labours and sufferings.
4. Young men and old men loved the wise and prudent philosopher.
5. In the market-places and in the gymnasia he taught the diligent pupils.
6. The Greek poets attacked the patient master with fiery words.
7. Soon fierce enemies accused the remarkable philosopher.
8. The base judges condemned the patient and prudent citizen.
9. With constant heart the prudent philosopher awaited death.
10. The loving young men deplored the death of the wise master.

37.

Eruption of Vesuvius

Clouds rise from Vesuvius. Suddenly, flames surround the mountain. Thick ashes cover the town. The sailors turn the

ship towards the mountain. My uncle binds his head with a linen-cloth. Ashes surround the ship. The sailors say, 'Whither do you bend your way? Thick ashes are covering you.' Then my uncle rises. But the ashes cover his body. Soon, he no longer lives.

I lead my mother out of the town. We scarcely drag our feet. Darkness covers the land. At length, the flames no longer surround the mountain. We bend our way to the town. We give thanks, because we still live. Ruins surround us. Ashes cover all the streets. If you understand our danger, I give thanks to you. Farewell.

38.

The Persians invade Greece

1. Darius, king of the Persians, was ruling many soldiers.
2. Soon he was leading his forces against the Greeks.
3. The leader of the Persians was directing the fleet to Greece.
4. Darius was declaring war against the Greek citizens [dat.].
5. The Athenians were leading their forces out of the city.
6. The leader of the Athenians was saying to the other Greeks:
7. 'Darius will soon declare war against Greece.'
8. 'If you will join forces, you will live in the memory of men.'
9. 'We will lead our forces out of the city against the enemy.'

10. 'We will not neglect the safety of the small cities.'

39.

Defeat of the Persians

1. 'You will lead your forces to our city and we will contend with the Persians.'
2. 'You will surround your camp with ramparts and ditches.'
3. 'The mountains will surround and protect the camp.'
4. 'We will join our forces and declare war against the enemy.'
5. 'We will protect our cities with our arms and weapons.'
6. Few states were leading their soldiers to the aid of the Athenians [dat.].
7. But the leader of the Athenians was not neglecting the safety of Greece.
8. Soon the Persians and the Athenians were contending with arms.
9. The battle was destructive to the forces of the Persians.
10. Soon the barbarians were directing their course to their fleet.

40.

Boadicea

1. Once upon a time, Caesar led the Roman soldiers to Britain.
2. Then, for many years, the Romans ruled Britain.

3. By chance, the Roman general had led his forces to a neighbouring island.
4. Soon Boadicea, the unhappy queen of the Iceni, declared war against the Romans [dat.].
5. The brave queen led her soldiers to battle.
6. Before the camp the unhappy woman thus spoke to her citizens:
7. 'I have not led you to battle without a cause.'
8. 'You have all understood the wrongs of my daughters.'
9. 'My robe has covered many and fierce wounds.'
10. 'On my back they have inflicted many blows.'

41.

Death of Boadicea

1. 'And so I have declared war against the cruel enemy [pl.].'
2. 'I have always loved my citizens with a great love.'
3. 'The barbarians will never rule my people.'
4. 'I will lead my soldiers to battle and will direct the way.'
5. 'You will surround your queen and contend with the enemy.'
6. With fiery words the queen led her forces to battle.
7. At first the Iceni began to conquer [imperf.] the soldiers of the Romans.
8. But the Romans had not neglected the arts of war.
9. Soon the enemy had defeated the Britons with great disaster.
10. The wretched queen by a quick death avoided prison.

42.

BOY 1: We are always studying. We never have permission to play [gen.].

BOY 2: Why do we not demand permission?

BOY 3: Who will be ambassador? Who will attack the master?

BOY 1: He rules us with a severe command.

BOY 2: I will not be messenger. I am not an orator.

BOY 3: He is not fond of playing and will refuse permission.

BOY 1: Who will speak for [pro] us?

BOY 2: Tullius will fight for us. He is bold and eloquent.

TULLIUS: I am not afraid of the master. I will demand permission.

BOY 1: We have a good cause. Our soldiers have been conquerors.

TULLIUS: I will hasten and I will plead your cause. The fault will not be mine if I shall not have been conqueror.

43.

A Dialogue

TULLIUS: Good day, master!

MASTER: Why hastens Tullius to me?

TULLIUS: The time invites us to play. We ask your permission on account of the victory of our soldiers.

MASTER: The boys are always playing. They never study.

TULLIUS: But the soldiers are not always conquerors.

MASTER: I will give permission, if you will study earnestly afterwards.

TULLIUS: I will be surety. We will work with great care.

MASTER: You will play in the field; you will not wander in the streets.

TULLIUS: I give thanks to you on behalf of all the boys.

MASTER: Farewell. I shall rejoice if you will play earnestly and work afterwards with great diligence.

44.

Celebrated Harbours

1. The Greeks had many harbours, the Romans had few.
2. The writers often relate about the harbours of Athens and Corinth.
3. The Greeks surrounded the harbour of Athens with high walls.
4. Then they built long walls from the city to the harbour.
5. And so, in time of war, a safe road used to lead between the walls to the harbours.
6. The famous temple of Minerva adorned the entrance of the harbour.
7. The harbours of Corinth had difficult approaches.
8. Many ships used to sail from the harbours of Asia to the harbours of Corinth.
9. The citizens of Corinth built the first war-ships in their harbours.
10. The city of Corinth, by reason of the harbours, was once famous.

45.

Caesar in Gaul

1. Caesar was general of the Roman army in Gaul for many years.
2. In winter he used to keep [teneo] the infantry and cavalry in camp.
3. At the beginning of [primus] summer he used to lead the army out of winter-quarters.
4. Many towns of the Gauls had difficult approaches.
5. But the army of Caesar overcame the cavalry and infantry of the barbarians.
6. Then Caesar built a large fleet in the harbours of Gaul.
7. He transported great forces of cavalry and infantry to Britain.
8. From the harbours of Gaul he had easy approaches to the coast of Britain.
9. The sailors used to propel their ships by the use of oars and sails.
10. Caesar with his army sails across the sea to Britain.

46.

Caesar in Britain

1. The Britons in great fear hastened to the woods.
2. The camp of the barbarians had difficult approaches through the woods.
3. But the army of the barbarians did not await the arrival of the cavalry.

4. With great tumult they hastened their flight to their hiding-places.
5. Soon the enemy collect their chariots and await the attack of Caesar.
6. The attack of Caesar's army was destructive to the cavalry and infantry of the enemy.
7. Caesar leads the army to the harbour and hastens his return to Gaul.
8. The great waves of the sea overcome a few ships.
9. He transported the other ships without danger to the harbours of Gaul.
10. Then he led his army out of the ships and placed the soldiers in winter quarters.

47.

The Horns of Animals

1. Stags and bulls have large horns.
2. The shape and size of the horns are different.
3. The horns of bulls are sharp and strong.
4. Stags have slender and thin antlers.
5. The shape of the antler of a stag is often like to a branch.
6. A bull and a stag fight with their horns.
7. The hunter values highly the graceful antlers.
8. Elephants have large knees and strong tusks.
9. The hunters fix the body of the stag on spits.
10. Formerly we had many spits: now we have few.

48.

The Signal for Battle

1. The brave general had led his troops into line of battle.
2. Before the signal of battle, he said a few words to the line of battle.
3. 'I have great hope today in your fidelity.'
4. 'Base men have led the republic into danger.'
5. 'I demand deeds, not words, from the line of battle.'
6. 'The enemy have small hope of victory.'
7. 'God rules the fortune of all things.'
8. 'The fear of adversity will not frighten you.'
9. 'The safety of the republic is in your fidelity.'
10. Then the general gives the signal to the line of battle.

49.

About Days

1. In the city of Rome, they had long days in summer and short days in winter.
2. The light of the sun illuminates the day.
3. The first day of the year was sacred to Janus.
4. The Romans had a large number of sacred days.
5. The priest used to proclaim the festal days.
6. On festal days the theatres were filled with citizens.
7. On birthdays the Roman women used to give offerings to Juno.
8. A Roman on his birthday used to have many presents.
9. All animals love the light and heat of day.
10. We call the middle part of the day midday [acc.].

50.

Hercules

1. You all know many tales concerning the life of Hercules.
2. Hercules used to serve a cruel tyrant [dat.] for many years.
3. The cruel anger of Juno will never sleep.
4. Juno was punishing Hercules instead of [pro] the father of Hercules.
5. The queen of heaven punishes the son of Jupiter with many labours.
6. While the boy is sleeping in his cradle, he hears a great disturbance.
7. Huge serpents rage around the cradle.
8. Hercules without help frees himself from the danger.
9. The attendants sleep and do not [neque] guard the boy.
10. Why, O Juno, dost thou rage thus and nourish thy anger?

51.

Hercules and Apollo

1. Hercules hears the sweet words of Apollo.
2. 'Juno will set you free if you will serve the tyrant [dat].'
3. 'Chiron, the famous Centaur, knows all kinds of arts.'
4. 'He will guard you and set you free from many dangers.'
5. 'If you will hear my words you will soften the wrath of Juno.'
6. 'Hercules hears the words of the god and finishes his labours.'

7. Then the angry goddess sets free the son of Jupiter from the tyrant.
8. The fierce monsters no longer rage in the fields of Greece.
9. For Hercules sets free the inhabitants from danger.
10. Then Juno softens her wrath and sets free the hero.

52.

Tantalus, Sisyphus, and Ixion

1. You have already heard about the terrible kingdom of Pluto.
2. You will now hear about the terrible punishment of three mortals.
3. Tantalus, Sisyphus, Ixion never will have finished their labours.
4. Tantalus always stands in water and thirsts.
5. Cruel chains bound the hands and feet of Ixion to a swift wheel.
6. The gods punished Sisyphus on account of cruelty.
7. The cruel king of Corinth had fortified his town.
8. Then he used to rage against [in + acc.] the wretched travellers.
9. Jupiter heard the prayers and vows of the travellers.
10. Mars, the god of war, binds and guards the cruel king.

53.

Tantalus, Sisyphus, and Ixion (Continued)

1. Sisyphus in Tartarus never sleeps, never finishes his task.
2. The gods bound the hands and feet of Ixion to a wheel.
3. Tantalus will always be thirsty and will always be hungry.
4. Sisyphus had punished travellers with cruel blows.
5. Tantalus used to unfold the secrets of the gods to mortals.
6. Ixion had entangled the father of his wife in an ambush.
7. And so Mercury never will have freed the hands of Ixion from the chains.
8. The god turns the wheel in the sky.
9. So the gods will have punished cruelty and bad faith.
10. The three mortals never sleep, are always hungry and thirsty, never finish their labours.



Vocabularies to Exercises

The declension of a noun and the conjugation of a verb is determined by its principal parts.



Abbreviations

sg., singular	PREP., preposition
pl., plural	ADJ., adjective
nom., nominative	ADV., adverb
voc., vocative	CONJ., conjunction
acc., accusative	m., masculine
gen., genitive	f., feminine
dat., dative	n., neuter
abl., ablative	c., common (may be m. or f.)



1.	inter , PREP. + acc., <i>between, among.</i>
clāmor -ōris m. , <i>shout.</i>	liber -era -erum , ADJ. + abl., <i>free from.</i>
creō creāre creāvī creātum , <i>elect.</i>	Marius -i m. , <i>Marius (a Roman general).</i>
dolor -ōris m. , <i>grief.</i>	ōrātor -ōris m. , <i>an orator.</i>
enim , CONJ., <i>for.</i>	pastor -ōris m. , <i>a shepherd.</i>
honor -ōris m. , <i>honour.</i>	scriptor -ōris m. , <i>a writer.</i>
imperātor -ōris m. , <i>general.</i>	

terror -ōris m., *terror.*

timor -ōris m., *fear.*

uxor -ōris f., *wife.*

victor -ōris m., *a conqueror.*

vocō -āre -āvī -ātum, *call.*

2.

amor -ōris m., *love.*

cumulō -āre -āvī -ātum, *load.*

defensor -ōris m., *defender.*

dictātor -ōris m., *'dictator'*
(*chief magistrate*).

error -ōris m., *a mistake.*

inimicus -i m., *a (private)*
enemy.

praetor -ōris m., *'praetor',*
leader.

solum, *ADV., only.*

Sulla -ae m., *Sulla (a Roman)*
general).

3.

color -ōris m., *colour.*

flōs floris m., *flower.*

habēbant, *they had.*

habent, *they have.*

mōs moris m., *custom.*

odor -ōris m., *scent.*

repudiō repudiāre repudiāvī
repudiātum, *reject.*

sevērus -a -um, *ADJ., severe.*

varius -a -um, *ADJ., various.*

4.

agger -aria m., *a rampart.*

anser -ōris m., *a goose.*

carcer -eris m., *a prison.*

circumdō circumdare
circumdedī circumdatum,
surround.

clangor -ōris m., *cackling.*

improbis -a -um, *ADJ.,*
wicked.

Iuppiter m., *Jupiter (acc.*
Iovem, *gen. Iovis, dat.*
Iovī, *abl. Iove; Iuppiter is*
contracted for Iovispater.)

paene, *ADV., almost.*

propter, *PREP. + acc., by*
reason of.

quondam, *ADV., once.*

sub, *PREP. + abl., under.*

vīcīnus -a -um, *ADJ., near.*

vigilō -āre -āvī -ātum, *watch,*
be awake.

vinculum -i n., *a bond, chain.*

5.

albus -a -um, ADJ., *white*.
frāter frātris m., *brother*.
imperium -ii n., *rule*,
command.
māter mātris f., *mother*.
mortuus -a -um, *dead*; (as m.
 subst.) *a dead person*.
pater patris m., *father*.
Plūtō -ōnis m., *Pluto*.
postulō -āre -āvī -ātum, *ask*,
demand.
Rhea -ae f., *Rhea*.
sēparō -āre -āvī -ātum,
divide.
Tartarus -ī m., *Tartarus* (the
 lower regions of the
 underworld).
vindicō -āre -āvī -ātum,
claim.

6.

aegrōtō -āre -āvī -ātum, *be ill*.
ambulō -āre -āvī -ātum, *walk*.
centum, INDECL. NUM. ADJ.,
a hundred.
cēra cērae f., *wax*, (pl.) *waxen*
writing tablets.

commeō -āre -āvī -ātum,
come and go (frequently).

elementum -ī n., *element*, (pl.)
first principles, rudiments.

fōrmō -āre -āvī -ātum, *shape*,
fashion, form, build.

migrō -āre -āvī -ātum, *depart*.
nondum, ADV., *not yet*.

quam, CONJ., *how*.

quia, CONJ., *because*.

quo, ADV., *whither, to what*
place, whereto.

recitō -āre -āvī -ātum, *recite*,
read aloud.

satis, ADV., *enough, sufficiently*;
tolerably.

scriptum -i n., *something*
drawn, a written composition.

vīlla -ae f., *a country-house*,
'villa'.

7.

aeger -gra -grum, ADJ., *sick*.

amīcitia -ae f., *friendship*.

anteā, ADV., *previously*.

(h)arēna -ae f., *sand, the sand-*
covered arena (place of
 combat in amphitheatre).

ferōcia -ae f., wildness;

'ferocity', savageness.

leo -ōnis m., a lion.

posteā, ADV., after this,

afterwards.

sanō -āre -āvi -ātum, heal.

spectātor -ōris m., 'spectator'.

venia -ae f., pardon.

8.

cantandum -i n., singing (a

gerund, not used in nom.).

cauda -ae f., tail.

forma -ae f., shape, beauty.

Iuno -ōnis f., Juno.

luscinia -ae f., nightingale.

nego -āre -āvi -ātum, deny,

refuse.

pāvo -ōnis m., peacock.

penna -ae f., feather.

sermo -ōnis m., conversation.

soror -ōris f., sister.

superbus -a -um, ADJ., proud.

9.

adversārius -a -um, hostile,

(as c. subst.) an opponent.

bracchium -iī n., the arm (of
the body).

eques -itis m., cavalryman,

horseman, horse-soldier.

mīles -itis m., soldier.

obses -idis m., hostage.

pedes -itis m., infantryman,

footsoldier.

prōpulsō -āre -āvi -ātum,

ward off, beat off.

sinister -tra -trum, ADJ., left.

10.

Carthāgō -ginis f., Carthage.

comes -itis c., comrade.

fortitūdō -dinis f., bravery.

homō -minis c., human being,

a man, a person.

īnfīdus -a -um, ADJ., faithless.

lētum lētī n., death, ruin.

multitūdō -dinis f., band,

multitude.

orīgō -ginis f., commencement,

origin.

pulchritūdō -dinis f., beauty.

Tyrius -a -um, ADJ., Tyrian, of

Tyre (a city in Phoenicia,

north of Palestine).

virgō -ginis f., a maiden.

11.

Catilina -ae m., *Catiline* (esp. the conspirator).

Cicerō -ōnis m., *Cicero* (esp. of the orator).

coniūrātiō -ōnis f., *conspiracy*.

cōsul -ulis m., *a consul*

(Roman magistrate).

contrā, PREP. + acc., *against*.

grātulātiō -ōnis f.,

congratulation.

Latīnus -a -um, ADJ., *Latin* (of

Latium, the country of

which Rome was the

capital), (as n. subst.) *the*

Latin language.

legiō -ōnis f., *legion*.

nātiō -ōnis f., *nation*.

ōrātiō -ōnis f., *speech*, 'oration'.

pro, PREP. + abl., *for*, *on behalf*
of, *as*.

proditio -ōnis f., *treachery*.

12.

Antōnius -īi m., 'Antonius' (the Roman triumvir).

Caesar -aris m., 'Caesar'.

contentiō -ōnis f., *dispute*.

dicio -ōnis m., *sway*, *power*.

fortūna -ae f., *fortune*.

mūtātiō -ōnis f., *change*.

Pompēius -i m., *Pompey*.

13.

Achillēs -is m., *Achilles*.

caecus -a -um, ADJ., *blind*.

carmen -minis n., *poem*, *song*.

certāmen -minis n., *contest*.

flūmen -minis n., *river*.

Hector -oris m., 'Hector' (son of Priam, king of Troy).

Helena -ae f., *Helen*.

Homērus -ī m., *Homer* (an early Greek poet).

ingenium -īi n., *cleverness*.

labor -ōris m., *labour*.

nōmen -minis n., *name*.

14.

corpus -poris n., *body*.

disciplīna -ae f., *training*.

fīrmō -āre -āvī -ātum,
strengthen.

frīgus -goris n., *cold*.

honestus -a -um, ADJ., *honest*.

itaque (ita + -que), CONJ., *and*
so.

lītus -toris n., *shore*.

metallum -ī n., *metal*.

neque or nec, CONJ., *and not*,
nor.

nūdus -a -um, ADJ., *naked*,
bare.

pectus -toris n., *breast*.

philosophus -i m.,
philosopher.

pictus -a -um, ADJ., *painted*.

sānus -a -um, ADJ., *healthy*.

15.

adversus -a -um, ADJ., *turned*
toward, in front.

genus -eris n., *a kind, race*.

obnoxius -a -um, ADJ.,
exposed to (+ dat.).

onus -eris n., *burden*.

opus -eris n., *work, labour*.

rārus -a -um, ADJ., *rare*.

scelus -eris n., *crime*.

sīgnum -ī n., *sign*.

tempus -oris n., *time*.

vitium -iī n., *vice*.

vulnus -eris n., *wound*.

16.

ārdeō -ēre ārsī ārsum, *be on*
fire, burn.

doceō -ēre -uī doctum, *teach*.

doleō dolēre doluī dolutum,
grieve.

exerceō -ēre -uī -itum,
exercise, train.

experientia -ae f., *experience*.

gaudeō -ēre — gāvīsum,
rejoice, be glad.

habeō -ēre -uī -itum, *have*.

moneō -ēre -uī -itum, *warn*,
advise.

moveō -ēre mōvī mōtum,
move, throw.

pīla -ae f., *ball (pilam*
movēre, to play ball).

possideō -ēre possēdī
possessum, *possess*.

quod, CONJ., *because*.

quotidie, ADV., *every day*,
daily.

sedeō sedēre sēdī sessum, *sit*.

sōl sōlis m., *sun*.

studeō studēre studuī, *study*.

teneō -ēre -uī, *hold, keep*
(+ abl. **memoriā**, *in*
memory).

valeō -ēre -uī -itum, *be well, be*
strong.

vehementer, ADV., *vigorously*.

17.

dēbeō -ēre -uī -itum, owe.**flōreō -ēre -uī**, flourish.**gymnasium -iī n.**,
gymnasium.**lūdus -ī m.**, *games*.**praeceptor -ōris m.**,
instructor.**propter**, PREP. + acc., on
account of.**schola -ae f.**, *school, place of
learning*.**sē** (acc. sg. and pl.), REFLEX.
PRON. (gen. **suī**, dat. **sibi**,
abl. **sē**), *himself, herself,
themselves*.

18.

armenta -ōrum n.pl., *flocks*.**cunae -ārum f.pl.**, *cradle*.**dēleō -ēre -ēvī dēlētum**,
destroy.**dum**, CONJ., *while*.**ēmineō ēminēre ēminuī**,
stand out.**Herculēs -is m.**, *'Hercules'*.**iaceō -ēre -uī**, *lie, lie dead*.**infāns -ntis m.**, *'infant'*.**lateō -ēre -uī**, *lie hidden*.**multum**, ADV., *much, very*.**praebeō -ēre -uī -itum**, *show;
lend*.**prohibeō -ēre -uī -itum**, *keep
off*.**serpēns serpentis c.**, *snake*,
'serpent'.**sīgnum -ī n.**, *sign*.**timeō -ēre -uī**, *fear*.**terreō -ēre -uī -itum**, *frighten*.**ursus -ī m.**, *a bear*.**validus -a -um**, ADJ., *strong*.

19.

Apollō -inis m., *Apollo (god of
the sun)*.**benīgnus -a -um**, ADJ., *kind*.**clāva -ae f.**, *club*.**compleō -ēre -ēvī -ētum**, *fill
up, complete*.**Eurystheus Eurystheī m.**,
*Eurystheus (king of
Mycenae)*.**iubeō iubēre iussī iūssum**,
order.**Mycēnae -ārum f.pl.**, *Mycenae
(ancient town in Greece)*.**pāreō -ēre -uī**, *obey (+ dat.)*.

placeō -ēre -uī -itum, *please*
(+ dat.).

20.

adsum adesse adfuī, *be*
present, be at hand.

domi, ADV., *at home.**

horreō -ēre -uī, *dread.*

maneō manēre mānsī
mānsūm, *remain.*

modus -ī m., *limit.*

praescriptum -ī n., *task,*
lesson.

rīdeō rīdēre rīsī rīsum, *laugh,*
laugh at.

studium -iī n., *study.*

tardus -a -um, ADJ., *slow.*

tinnūbulum -i n., *a bell,*
signal bell, call-bell.

vix, ADV., *scarcely, barely.*

21.

apud, PREP. + acc., *among.*

cūra -ae f., *care (pred. dat.*
curae, an object of care).

etiam, ADV., *also.*

mandō -āre -āvī -ātum,
entrust, commit.

mōs mōris m., *custom; (pl.)*
morals, customs.

prīvātus -a -um, ADJ., *private.*

pūblicus -a -um, ADJ., *public.*

sacerdōs -ōtis m., *priest.*

sacrificium -iī n., *a sacrifice.*

secundus -a -um, ADJ.,
second.

vel, CONJ., *or.*

22.

aeternus -a -um, ADJ., *eternal.*

ars artis f., *practical skill; art.*

arx arcis f., *citadel.*

dēsīgnō -āre -āvī -ātum, *mark*
out.

dexter -tra -terum, ADJ.,
right.

gēns gentia f., *race, people.*

medius -a -um, ADJ., *middle.*

mōns montis m., *a hill,*
mountain.

pars partis f., *part.*

rēx rēgis m., *king.*

* Adverbial use of the locative singular of the fourth declension noun **domus**
domūs f., *house.*

Romulus -i m., 'Romulus'.

summus -a -um, ADJ.,

uppermost, highest; (as n. subst.) the top.

Tarquinius -ii m., *Tarquinius*.

urbs urbis f., *city*.

23.

aëneus -a -um, ADJ., *of copper, of bronze*.

aureus -a -um, ADJ., *golden*.

dēturbō -āre -āvī -ātum,
throw down.

frōns frontis f., *front*.

māiestās -ātis f., 'majesty'.

nox noctis f., *night*.

somnus -ī m., *sleep*.

24.

altus -a -um, ADJ., *high*.

cīvis -is c., *citizen*.

classis -is f., *fleet*.

hostis -is c., *enemy* (usually pl.).

iactō -āre -āvī -ātum, *throw*.

māgnitūdō -inis f., *size*.

nāvis -is f., *a ship* (**nāvis longa**, *war-ship*).

prōra -ae f., *pro*.

Pūnicus -a -um, ADJ.,

Carthaginian.

puppis -is f., *stern* (rearmost part of a ship).

turris -is f., *tower*.

25.

adversus -a -um, ADJ.,

adverse, contrary.

mātūrō -āre -āvī -ātum,
hasten.

medius -a -um, ADJ., *middle*
(**media navis**, *the middle of the ship*).

rēmus -ī m., *oar*.

rōstrum -ī n., *beak of a ship*
(projection used to pierce the hulls of enemy ships).

secundus -a -um, ADJ.,
second, (of winds or currents) *favourable*.

trānstrum -ī n., *a cross-bench*
(for rowers).

trirēmis -is f., 'trireme' (ship with three banks of oars).

vēlum -i n., *sail*.

26.

aestivus -a -um, ADJ., of
summer.

arceō arcēre arcuī, ward off
(+ **ab**, from).

caput -itis n., head.

Charōn -ontis m., Charon
(underworld ferryman).

crīnis -is m., the hair
(generally used in plural).

fēmīna -ae f., woman.

iuvenis -is c., a young person
(gen. pl. **iuvenum**).

pellis -is f., a skin.

rārō, ADV., rarely.

tegumentum -ī n., a covering.

tonsus -a -um, ADJ., cropped,
short.

venātor -ōris m., hunter.

viātor -ōris m., traveller (cf.
viātrīx -īcis f.).

27.

aqua -ae f., water.

fābula -ae f., tale, story.

iuba -ae f., mane.

mare maris n., the sea.

palātium -iī n., palace.

pēs pedis m., a foot.

saltō -āre -āvī -ātum, dance.

tridens -entis m., trident
(three-pronged spear).

vāstus -a -um, ADJ., vast.

28.

administrō -āre -āvī -ātum,
'administer'.

animal -alis n., animal.

dīrus -a -um, ADJ., dreadful,
terrible.

fātum -ī n., fate.

Lāomedon -ontis m.,
Laomedon.

moenia moenium n.pl., walls
(of a town).

ōrāculum -ī n., oracle.

plācō -āre -āvī -ātum,
appease.

sors sortis f., lot.

29.

anima -ae f., spirit.

brevis -e, ADJ., short.

canis -is c., dog (gen. pl.
canum).

congregō -āre -āvī -ātum,
gather, collect.

crudēlis -e, ADJ., cruel.

hinc, ADV., *hence, from here.*
immānis -e, ADJ., *immense.*
iter itineris n., *journey.*
līmen -inis n., *threshold.*
lūgubris -e, ADJ., *mournful.*
mānes -ium m.pl., *shades (of the dead).*
portitor -oris m., *ferryman.*
sēdes sēdis f., *abode.*
tenuis -e, ADJ., *thin.*
terribilis -e, ADJ., *terrible.*
trīstis -e, ADJ., *sad, gloomy.*
turpis -e, ADJ., *base, ugly.*
Styx Stygis f., 'Styx' (one of the nine rivers of the underworld).
vīvus -a -um, ADJ., *living.*

30.

appellō -āre -āvī -ātum, *call.*
commūnis -e, ADJ., *common.*
dēfōrmis -e, ADJ., *shapeless.*
dulcis -e, ADJ., *sweet, pleasant.*
fortis -e, ADJ., *brave.*
gracilis -e, ADJ., *graceful.*
hostilis -e, ADJ., *hostile.*
humilis -e, ADJ., *humble.*
illūstris -e, ADJ., *illustrious.*

iuvenis -is, *young (gen. pl. iuvenum).*
miserābilis -e, ADJ., *miserable.*
mors mortis f., *death.*
nōbilis -e, ADJ., *noble.*
omnis -e, ADJ., *all, whole.*
ripa -ae f., *bank.*
senex -is m., *old man (gen. pl. senum).*
turba -ae f., *crowd.*
ūltimus -a -um, ADJ., *furthest.*

31.

arvum -i n., *field.*
beātus -a -um, ADJ., *blessed, happy.*
custōs -odis m., *guardian.*
damnātus -a -um, ADJ., *condemned.*
dō dare dedī datum, *give (dant poenas, they suffer/endure punishment).*
Elysium -ii n., *Elysium, the Elysian fields (the abode of the blessed).*
horribilis -e, ADJ., *horrible.*
interdum, ADV., *sometimes.*
intrō -āre -āvī -ātum, *enter.*

mortalis -is c., *a mortal.*

ob, PREP. + acc., *on account of.*

Orphēus -i m., *Orpheus* (the famous singer).

viridis -e, ADJ., *green.*

voluptās -ātis f., *pleasure.*

32.

ācer ācris ācre, ADJ., *sharp, fiery, fierce.*

celeber -bris -bre, ADJ., *celebrated.*

celer -is -e, ADJ., *quick.*

pedester -tris -tre, ADJ., *on foot (pedestria itinera, journeys on foot).*

terrestris -tre, ADJ., *of the earth or land.*

volucer -cris -cre, ADJ., *winged.*

33.

alacer -cris -cre, ADJ., *lively.*

Bellerophōn -ontis m., *Bellerophon* (heroic horseman).

Chimaera -ae f., *the Chimaera* (a fire-breathing monster).

dē, PREP. + abl., *from, down from; concerning.*

dux ducis c., *a leader.*

equester -tris -tre, ADJ., *of a horseman, equestrian.*

Lycia -ae f., *'Lycia'* (a country in Asia Minor).

lyra -ae f., *'lyre'.*

Pēgusus -ī m., *'Pegasus'* (a winged horse).

tergum -ī n., *the back, the rear.*

34.

efflō -āre -āvī -ātum, *breathe out.*

immortālis -e, ADJ., *immortal.*

sidus -eris n., *a star, constellation.*

35.

ātrox -ōcis, ADJ., *horrible.*

audax -ācis, ADJ., *bold.*

Carthāginiēnsis -e, ADJ., *Carthaginian.*

fēlix -īcis, ADJ., *happy, fortunate, prosperous.*

ferāx -ācis, ADJ., *fertile.*

ferōx -ōcis, ADJ., *fierce, warlike.*

infēlix -īcis, ADJ., *unhappy*.
invidus -a -um, ADJ., *jealous*.
potentia -ae f., *power*.
rapāx -ācis, ADJ., *rapacious*,
greedy.
simplex -icis, ADJ., *simple*.
vēlōx -ōcis, ADJ., *swift*.

36.

accūsō -āre -āvī -ātum, *attack*,
accuse.
amans -antis, ADJ., *loving*
 (pres. part. of **amō**).
Athēniensis -e, ADJ.,
Athenian.
calor -ōris m., *heat*.
constans -antis, ADJ.,
constant, firm.
damnō -āre -āvī -ātum,
condemn (capitis, to death;
lit., of the head).
diligens -entis, ADJ., *diligent*.
discipulus -ī m., *pupil*.
ingēns -ēntis, ADJ., *immense*.
invidia -ae f., *ill-will, jealousy*.
iūdex -icis m., *judge*.
levō -āre -āvī -ātum, *lighten*,
alleviate.
mēns mentis f., *mind*.

neglegens -entis, ADJ.,
careless of (+ gen.).
patiēns -entis, ADJ., *patient;*
capable of (+ gen.).
plōrō -āre -āvī -ātum, *deplore*.
praestāns -antis, ADJ.,
remarkable.
prūdēns -entis, ADJ., *prudent*.
sapiēns -entis, ADJ., *wise*.
Sōcratēs -is m., *Socrates*.
vērītās -ātis f., *truth*.

37.

agō agere ēgī āctum, *do, lead*,
drive (ago gratias, I give
thanks).
avunculus -ī m., *(maternal)*
uncle.
cingō cingere cinxī cīnctum,
surround.
cinis -eris m., *ashes*.
dēnsus -a -um, ADJ., *thick*.
dīcō dīcere dīxī dictum, *say*,
speak.
dērigō dērigere dērēxī
dērēctum, *direct*.
dūcō dūcere dūxī ductum,
lead.

flectō -ere flēxī flexum, *bend*,
turn (→ inflection).

intelligō -ere intelligēxī
intellēctum, *understand*.

lintheum -ī n., *linen cloth, sail*.

neglegō neglegere neglēxī
neglēctum, *'neglect'*.

non iam, *no longer*.

nūbēs -is f., *cloud*.

postrīdiē, ADV., *on the next*
day.

regō regere rēxī rēctum, *rule*,
guide.

salūs -ūtis f., *safety*.

stringō stringere strinxī
strictum, *bind*.

surgō surgere surrēxī, *rise*.

tegō tegere tēxī tēctum, *cover*,
protect.

trahō trahere trāxī tractum,
drag, draw.

vīvō vīvere vīxī vīctum, *live*.

38.

cōnflīgō -flīgere -flīxī
-flīctum, *contend* (+ **cum**
+ abl.).

Dārēus -ii m., *Darius*.

indīcō -dīcere -dīxī -dictum,
declare (+ dat. of person;
bellum Romaniis indico,
to declare war against the
Romans).

iungō iungere iūnxī
iūnctum, *join*.

libertās -ātis f., *freedom*,
'liberty'.

Medi -ōrum m.pl., *the Medes*.

Persae -ārum m.pl., *the*
Persians.

39.

cīvitās -ātis f., *state*.

dīligō dīligere dīlēxī
dīlēctum, *cherish, love*.

intereā, ADV., *meanwhile*.

40.

gerō gerere gessī gestum,
wage.

īnflīgō īnflīgere īnflīxī
īnflīctum, *inflict*.

Mona -ae f., *the Isle of Man*.

Nero -ōnis m., *Nero* (a
Roman).

41.

ars artis f., *art.***clādēs -is f.**, *disaster, defeat.***Londīnium -iī n.**, *London.***malus -i m.**, *misfortune, wrong.***pallium -iī n.**, *cloak, robe.***struō struere strūxī****strūctum**, *build, prepare.***venēnum -i n.**, *poison.*

42.

aptus -a -um, *fitted (comp.***aptior).****causa -ae f.**, *cause (causam***dico**, *I plead a cause).***citus -a -um**, *quick (COMP.***ADV. citius**, *more quickly).***culpa -ae f.**, *blame, fault.***difficilis -e**, *difficult,**inaccessible; slow.***ēloquēns -entis**, **ADJ.**,*eloquent.***extorqueō -ēre extorsī****extortum**, *twist out, wrench.***facilis -e**, **ADJ.**, *easy, inclined;**quick.***invītō -āre -āvī -ātum**, *'invite'.***lēgātus -ī m.**, *ambassador,**'legate'.***lūdō lūdere lūsī lūsum**, *play,***(ludendum -i n.**, *play,**playing; a gerund, not used
in nom.).***nēmō c.**, **acc. nēminem**, **dat.****nēminī**, *nobody (other
cases not used).***omnia**, **n.pl. of omnis -e**, *all
things.***profectō**, **ADV.**, *without doubt,*
*surely.***quam**, **CONJ.**, *than.***tam**, **CONJ.**, *so.***venia -ae f.**, *permission, leave.***vērē**, **ADV.**, *truly.*

43.

ācriter, **ADV.**, *keenly, sharply.***aegrē**, **ADV.**, *with difficulty.***lūdus -i m.**, *a place for exercise
or practice, a school.***necessārius -a -um**, *necessary.***optimus -a -um**, **ADJ.**, *best,*
*excellent.***optō -āre -āvī -ātum**, *desire.***sēgniter**, **ADV.**, *lazily.***sponsor -ōris m.**, *a surety
(someone who takes*

responsibility for another's undertaking).

temperantia -ae f.,
moderation.

44.

aditus -ūs m., *entrance,*
approach.

altus -a -um, ADJ., *high.*

arcus -ūs m., *a bow* (dat. and
abl. pl. **-ubus**).

Corinthus -i f., *Corinth.*

curvō -āre -āvī -ātum, *curve,*
bend.

fluctus -ūs m., *wave, flood.*

nātūra -ae f., *nature.*

ōrnātus -a -um, ADJ., *adorned,*
having been adorned.

Piraeus -i m., *the Piraeus* (one
of the three harbours of
Athens).

portus -ūs m., *harbour.*

45.

adventus -ūs m., *arrival.*

aestās -ātis f., *summer.*

aestus -ūs m., *tide* (**magno**
aestu, *at high tide*).

equitātus -ūs m., *cavalry.*

exercitus -ūs m., *army.*

exspectō -āre -āvī -ātum,
await.

hiems -emis f., *winter.*

hiberna -ōrum n.pl., *winter-*
quarters.

impetus -ūs m., *an attack.*

peditātus -ūs m., *infantry.*

situs -ūs m., *site, position.*

tolero -āre -āvī -ātum, *bear,*
endure.

tumultus -ūs m., *tumult,*
disturbance.

ūsus -ūs m., *use, practice.*

46.

cāsus -ūs m., *chance, accident.*

collocō -āre -āvī -ātum, *place,*
assemble, relocate.

comparō -āre -āvī -ātum,
make ready, collect.

currus -ūs m., *chariot.*

mātūro, *hasten* (+ an acc. like
iter, **fugam**, etc.).

metus -ūs m., *fear.*

reditus -ūs m., *return.*

reportō -āre -āvī -ātum, *gain.*

47.

aestimō -āre -āvī -ātum, *value*
(+ gen. of price; **magni**

aestimo, *I value highly*).

cornū -ūs n., *horn, antler, tusk*.

elephantus -i m., *'elephant'*.

figō figere fixī fixum, *fix*.

genū -ūs n., *knee*.

īgnis -is m., *fire*.

rāmus -i m., *branch*.

similis -e, ADJ., *like, similar to*
(+ dat.; + gen. of persons).

verū -ūs n., *spit (for roasting)*.

volūtō -āre -āvī -ātum, *roll*,
turn.

48.

aciēs aciēī f., *line of battle*,
battle array.

fidēs -eī f., *faith, fidelity*.

rēs reī f., *a thing, matter*,
property, deed.

res publica f., *the republic*,
state, commonwealth;

res adversae f.pl., *adversity*.

res secundae f.pl., *prosperity*.

salūs -ūtis f., *safety*.

spēs speī f., *hope*.

virtūs -ūtis f., *virtue, courage*.

49.

agitō -āre -āvī -ātum, *drive; be*
employed in.

celebrō -āre -āvī -ātum,
celebrate; go in great numbers
to a celebration, crowd.

circus -i m., *'circus'*.

diēs diēī c., *day*.

dīvīnus -a -um, ADJ., *'divine'*.

fēstus -a -um, adj., *festal*.

illūminō -āre -āvī -ātum, *light*
up.

lūx lūcis f., *light*.

meridies -iēī m., *midday*,
noon.

nātālis -e, ADJ., *natal, of birth*.
(as m. subst.) *birthday*.

nefastus -a -um, ADJ., *unholy*
(days on which no trials or
assemblies were held).

pontifex -ficis m., *a high*
priest.

praedicō -āre -āvī -ātum,
proclaim.

50.

audiō audīre audīvī audītum,
hear, listen to.

custodiō -īre -īvī -ītum,
guard.

dormiō -īre -īvī -ītum, *sleep.*

finiō -īre -īvī -ītum, *finish.*

impediō -īre -īvī -ītum,
hinder, entangle, burden.

modus -i m., *manner.*

nūtriō -īre -īvī -ītum, *nurse,*
nourish.

pūniō -īre -īvī -ītum, *punish.*

saeviō -īre -īvī -ītum, *rage*
(± *in*, *against*, + *acc.*).

sciō -īre -īvī -ītum, *know.*

serviō -īre -īvī -ītum, *serve, be*
enslaved to (+ *dat.*).

51.

centaurus -i m., *'centaur'*
(*mythical beast, half man,*
half horse).

Chiron -ōnis m., *Chiron.*

crūdēlitās -ātis f., *cruelty.*

erudiō -īre -īvī -ītum, *train.*

expediō -īre -īvī -ītum, *set free*
(+ *a(b)*, *from*); *disclose.*

manus -ūs f., *hand.*

molliō -īre -īvī -ītum, *soften.*

mūniō -īre -īvī -ītum, *fortify,*
defend.

vestiō -īre -īvī -ītum, *clothe,*
dress.

52.

aperiō -īre aperuī apertum,
open, unfold.

catēna -ae f., *chain.*

cibus -i m., *food.*

esuriō -īre ēsurīvī ēsurītum,
desire to eat, suffer hunger, be
hungry, hunger.

fructus -ūs m., *fruit.*

Ixīon -onis m., *Ixion* (*king of*
the Lapithae).

Lýdia -ae f., *Lydia* (*district in*
West of Asia Minor).

potus -ūs m., *drink.*

prex precis f., *a prayer.*

rota -ae f., *a wheel.*

sēcrētum -i n., *a secret.*

Sīsypus -ī m., *Sisyphus* (*king*
of Corinth).

sitiō -īre -īvī, *thirst.*

stō stāre stetī statum, *stand,*
remain.

Tantalus -i m., *Tantalus* (*son*
of Jupiter).

trēs, NUM. ADJ., *three* (*gen.*
pl. trium).

vinciō -īre vinxī vinctum, *bind, surround.*



LIST OF IRREGULAR PRINCIPAL PARTS

1.

REGULAR: **-ō -āre -āvī -ātum****circumdō -dare -dedī -datum**, *surround*.**creō creāre creāvī creātum**, *elect*.**dō dare dedī datum**, *give*.**stō stāre stetī statum**, *stand, remain*.

2.

REGULAR: **-eo -ēre -uī -itum****ārdeō -ēre ārsī ārsum**, *be on fire, burn*.**compleō -ēre -ēvī -ētum**, *fill up, complete*.**dēleō -ēre -ēvī dēlētum**, *destroy*.**doceō -ēre -uī doctum**, *teach*.**extorqueō -ēre extorsī extortum**, *twist out, wrench*.**gaudeō -ēre — gāvīsum**, *rejoice, be glad*.**iubeō iubēre iussī iūssum**, *I order*.**maneō manēre mānsī mānsum**, *remain*.**moveō -ēre mōvī mōtum**, *move, throw*.**possideō -ēre possēdī possessum**, *possess*.**rīdeō rīdēre rīsī rīsum**, *laugh, laugh at*.**sedeō sedēre sēdī sessum**, *sit*.

3.

agō agere ēgī āctum, *do, lead, drive*.**cingō cingere cīnxī cīnctum**, *surround*.**cōnflīgō -flīgere -flīxī -flīctum**, *contend*.**dīcō dīcere dīxī dictum**, *say, speak*.**dīlīgō dīlīgere dīlēxī dīlēctum**, *cherish, love*.**dērigō dērigere dērēxī dērēctum**, *direct*.

dūcō dūcere dūxī ductum, lead.

figō figere fixī fixum, fix.

flectō -ere flēxī flexum, bend, turn.

gerō gerere gessī gestum, wage.

indīcō -dīcere -dīxī -dictum, declare.

īnflīgō īnfligere īnflīxī īnflīctum, inflict.

intelligō -ere intellēxī intellēctum, understand.

iungō iungere iūnxī iūnctum, join.

lūdō lūdere lūsī lūsum, play.

neglegō neglegere neglēxī neglēctum, 'neglect'.

regō regere rēxī rēctum, rule, guide.

stringō stringere strinxī strictum, bind.

struō struere strūxī strūctum, build, prepare.

surgō surgere surrēxī, rise.

tegō tegere tēxī tēctum, cover, protect.

trahō trahere trāxī tractum, drag, draw.

vīvō vivere vīxī vīctum, live.

4.

REGULAR: -iō -īre -īvī -ītum

aperiō -īre aperuī apertum, open, unfold.

esuriō ēsurīre — ēsurītum, desire to eat, be hungry.

vinciō -īre vinxī vinctum, bind, surround.

Irregular

adsum adesse adfuī, be present, be at hand.

possum posse potuī, be able.

sum esse fuī, be.



Bell's Modified

LATIN COURSE — BOOK 3





THE HOUSE OF VETTIUS, POMPEII.

Summary of Grammar

DECLENSIONS

DECLENSIONS are groups of nouns which are categorised based on how they inflect to show case, number, and gender.

The key to knowing the declension to which a noun belongs is knowing its nominative singular and genitive singular forms, as given in dictionary entries.

FIRST DECLENSION

Model: **aquila aquilae f.**, *eagle*.

<i>Sg.</i>	<i>N.V.</i>	aquil- a
	<i>Acc.</i>	aquil- am
	<i>Gen.</i>	aquil- ae
	<i>Dat.</i>	aquil- ae
	<i>Abl.</i>	aquil- ā
<i>Pl.</i>	<i>N.V.</i>	aquil- ae
	<i>Acc.</i>	aquil- ās
	<i>Gen.</i>	aquil- ārum
	<i>D.A.</i>	aquil- īs

Notes

Most substantives of the first declension are feminine, except those denoting males; as — **agricola**; **nauta**. Remember to memorise the gender as well as the nom. and gen. sg. forms.

A few feminine substantives have **-ābus** in the dat. and abl. pl. to distinguish them from the corresponding cases of mas-

culine substantives in the second declension; as — **deābus**, **filiābus**.

SECOND DECLENSION (-US)

Model: **dominus dominī m.**, *lord*.

<i>Sg.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	domin- us
	<i>Voc.</i>	domin- e
	<i>Acc.</i>	domin- um
	<i>Gen.</i>	domin- ī
	<i>D.A.</i>	domin- ō
<i>Pl.</i>	<i>N.V.</i>	domin- ī
	<i>Acc.</i>	domin- ōs
	<i>Gen.</i>	domin- ōrum
	<i>D.A.</i>	domin- īs

Notes

VOCATIVE CASE. A few substantives ending in **-us** in the nom. have a vocative form in **-e**, which is used in addressing an object. In all other substantives, the forms of the nom. and voc. cases are the same.

SECOND DECLENSION (-ER)

Model: **puer pueri m.**, *boy*.

<i>Sg.</i>	<i>N.V.</i>	puer
	<i>Acc.</i>	puer- um
	<i>Gen.</i>	puer- ī
	<i>D.A.</i>	puer- ō

<i>Pl.</i>	<i>N.V.</i>	puer- ī
	<i>Acc.</i>	puer- ōs
	<i>Gen.</i>	puer- ōrum
	<i>D.A.</i>	puer- īs

Notes

Most substantives in **-er**, however, drop the **e** in all other cases, as **magister magistrī m.** (acc. **magistrum**). Remember that the stem is always derived from the genitive singular form.

SECOND DECLENSION (**-UM**)

Model: **bellum bellī n.**, war.

<i>Sg.</i>	<i>N.V.A.</i>	bell- um
	<i>Gen.</i>	bell- ī
	<i>D.A.</i>	bell- ō
<i>Pl.</i>	<i>N.V.A.</i>	bell- a
	<i>Gen.</i>	bell- ōrum
	<i>D.A.</i>	bell- īs

Notes

Substantives ending in **-us** and **-er** are masculine; those in **-um** are neuter.

Substantives ending in **-ius** have the voc. sg. in **-i**; as — **filī**, O son; **Claudī**, O Claudius. In the gen. sg., **-ii** is often contracted into **-ī**, as **Claudī**, of Claudius.

Deus, god, usually has a contracted form **dī** in nom. pl.; **dīs**, in the dat. and abl. pl.; and sometimes **deum** in the gen. pl.

THIRD DECLENSION COMMON

IMPARISYLLABIC (CONSONANT-STEM)

Model: **leo leōnis m.**, *lion*.

<i>Sg.</i>	<i>N.V.</i>	leo
	<i>Acc.</i>	leōn- em
	<i>Gen.</i>	leōn- is
	<i>Dat.</i>	leōn- i
	<i>Abl.</i>	leōn- e
<i>Pl.</i>	<i>N.V.A.</i>	leōn- ēs
	<i>Gen.</i>	leōn- um
	<i>D.A.</i>	leōn- ibus

Model: **corpus corporis n.**, *body*.

<i>Sg.</i>	<i>N.V.A.</i>	corpus
	<i>Gen.</i>	corpor- is
	<i>Dat.</i>	corpor- i
	<i>Abl.</i>	corpor- e
<i>Pl.</i>	<i>N.V.A.</i>	corpor- a
	<i>Gen.</i>	corpor- um
	<i>D.A.</i>	corpor- ibus

THIRD DECLENSION

PARISYLLABIC (**i**-STEM)

Model: **imber imbris m.**, *shower*.

Like **imber** is declined nouns with a monosyllabic nominative singular and a stem ending in two consonants; as — **arx arcis**; **ars artis**; **as assis**; **dens dentis**; **fons fontis**; **frons frontis**;

mons montis; os ossi; stirps stirpis; pons pontis; urbs urbis.

These parisyllabic nouns have undergone sound changes that give them the appearance of being imparisyllabic.

Sg. N.V.A. imber

Gen. imbr-**is**

Dat. imbr-**ī**

Abl. imbr-**e**

Pl. N.V.A. imbr-**ēs**

Gen. imbr-**ium**

D.A. imbr-**ibus**

Model: **mare maris n.**, *sea*.

Like **mare** is declined neuters in **-al** such as **animal animalis** (the nom. sg. originally ended in **-ale**).

Sg. N.V.A. mare

G. mar-**is**

D.A. mar-**i**

Pl. N.V.A. mar-**ia**

G. mar-**ium**

D.A. mar-**ibus**

FOURTH DECLENSION

Model: **portus portūs m.**, *harbour*.

A few disyllabic words in **-cus** and **-tus** usually have **-ubus** in the D. and Ab. pl.; as — **arcus, arcu-bus**.

The Ab. sg. of **domus domus f.**, *house, home* is **domo**. The Ac. pl. is often **domos**, but may also be fourth declension **domus**.

<i>Sg.</i>	<i>N.V.</i>	portu- s
	<i>Acc.</i>	portu- m
	<i>Gen.</i>	portū- s
	<i>Dat.</i>	portu- ī
	<i>Abl.</i>	portū
<i>Pl.</i>	<i>N.V.A.</i>	portū- s
	<i>Gen.</i>	portu- um
	<i>D.A.</i>	port- ibus

Model: **genū genūs n.**, *knee*.

<i>Sg.</i>	<i>N.V.A.</i>	genū
	<i>Gen.</i>	genū- s
	<i>D.A.</i>	genū
<i>Pl.</i>	<i>N.V.A.</i>	genu- a
	<i>Gen.</i>	genu- um
	<i>D.A.</i>	gen- ibus

FIFTH DECLENSION

Model: **rēs reī f.**, *thing*.

<i>Sg.</i>	<i>N.V.</i>	rē- s
	<i>Acc.</i>	re- m
	<i>Gen.</i>	re- ī
	<i>Dat.</i>	re- ī
	<i>Abl.</i>	rē

<i>Pl.</i>	<i>N.V.A.</i>	<i>rē-s</i>
	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rē-rum</i>
	<i>D.A.</i>	<i>rē-bus</i>

All substantives of the fifth declension are feminine except **diēs diēi c.**, *day*, which is generally masculine, but may be feminine in the singular if used of an appointed day.

ADJECTIVES IN -US -A -UM

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>Sg. Nom.</i>	<i>bon-us</i>	<i>bon-a</i>	<i>bon-um</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>bon-e</i>	<i>bon-a</i>	<i>bon-um</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>bon-um</i>	<i>bon-am</i>	<i>bon-um</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>bon-ī</i>	<i>bon-ae</i>	<i>bon-ī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>bon-ō</i>	<i>bon-ae</i>	<i>bon-ō</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>bon-ō</i>	<i>bon-ā</i>	<i>bon-ō</i>
<i>Pl. N.V.</i>	<i>bon-ī</i>	<i>bon-ae</i>	<i>bon-a</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>bon-ōs</i>	<i>bon-as</i>	<i>bon-a</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>bon-ōrum</i>	<i>bon-ārum</i>	<i>bon-ōrum</i>
<i>D.A.</i>	<i>bon-īs</i>	<i>bon-īs</i>	<i>bon-īs</i>

ADJECTIVES IN -ER -ERA -ERUM

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>Sg. N.V.</i>	<i>tener</i>	<i>tener-a</i>	<i>tener-um</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>tener-um</i>	<i>tener-am</i>	<i>tener-um</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>tener-ī</i>	<i>tener-ae</i>	<i>tener-ī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>tener-ō</i>	<i>tener-ae</i>	<i>tener-ō</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>tener-ō</i>	<i>tener-ā</i>	<i>tener-ō</i>

The plural endings are as in **bonus**. Many adjectives in **-er** drop the **e**; as — **niger nigra nigrum**, *black*.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

Model: **acer acris acre**, *sharp, keen* (three terminations in nominative singular).

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Sg.</i> N.V.	ācer	ācr- is	ācr- e
Acc.	ācr- em	ācr- em	ācr- e
Gen.	ācr- is	ācr- is	ācr- is
D.A.	ācr- ī	ācr- ī	ācr- ī
<i>Pl.</i> N.V.	ācr- ēs	ācr- ēs	ācr- ia
Acc.	ācr- ēs (- īs)	ācr- ēs (- īs)	ācr- ēs (- īs)
Gen.	ācr- ium	ācr- ium	ācr- ium
D.A.	ācr- ibus	ācr- ibus	ācr- ibus

Model: **tristis tristis triste**, *sad, gloomy* (two terminations in nominative singular).

	M.F.	N.
<i>Sg.</i> Nom.	trist- is	trist- e
Acc.	trist- em	trist- e
Gen.	trist- is	trist- is
D.A.	trist- ī	trist- ī
<i>Pl.</i> N.V.A.	trist- ēs	trist- ia
Gen.	trist- ium	trist- ium
D.A.	trist- ibus	trist- ibus

Model: **fēlix fēlix fēlix** (gen. sg. **fēlicis**), *lucky, prosperous* (one termination in nominative singular).

	M.F.	N.
<i>Sg.</i> N.V.	fēlix	fēlix
Acc.	fēlic- em	fēlix
Gen.	fēlic- is	fēlic- is
Dat.	fēlic- ī	fēlic- ī
Abl.	fēlic- ī (-e)	fēlic- ī (-e)
<i>Pl.</i> N.V.A.	fēlic- ēs	fēlic- ia
Gen.	fēlic- ium	fēlic- ium
D.A.	fēlic- ibus	fēlic- ibus

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

First person **ego**, *I*; second person **tu**, *you*.

<i>Sg.</i> Nom.	ego	tū
Acc.	mē	tē
Gen.	meī	tuī
Dat.	mihi	tibi
Abl.	mē	tē
<i>Pl.</i> Nom.	nōs	vōs
Acc.	nōs	vōs
Gen.	nostrī, nostrum	vestrī, vestrum
Dat.	nōbīs	vōbīs
Abl.	nōbīs	vōbīs

NOTE ON GENITIVE CASE. The genitives **mei**, **tui**, **nostrī**, and **vestri** are only used as OBJECTIVE GENITIVES after adjectives

like **memor**, *mindful*, and **cupidus**, *fond*, or substantives like **timor**, *fear*, **accusator**, *an accuser*; as — **accusator mei**, *an accuser of me*.

The genitives **nostrum** and **vestrum** are only used as PARTITIVE GENITIVES; as, **multi nostrum**, *many of us*; **unus vestrum**, *one of you*.

CONJUGATIONS

CONJUGATIONS are groups of verbs which are categorised based on how they inflect to show person, number, tense, mood, and voice.

The key to knowing the declension to which a noun belongs is knowing its principal parts, as given in dictionary entries.

FIRST CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE ACTIVE

Model: **amō amāre amāvī amātum**, *love*. Verbs of the first conjugation have a long **ā** in the second principal part.

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Future</i>
<i>Sg.</i> 1.	am- ō	am-ā- ba-m	am-ā- b-ō
2.	am-ā- s	am-ā- bā-s	am-ā- bi-s
3.	am-a- t	am-ā- ba-t	am-ā- bi-t
<i>Pl.</i> 1.	am-ā- mus	am-ā- bā-mus	am-ā- bi-mus
2.	am-ā- tis	am-ā- bā-tis	am-ā- bi-tis
3.	am-a- nt	am-ā- ba-nt	am-ā- bu-nt

	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Future Perfect</i>
<i>Sg.</i> 1.	amā-v-ī	amā-v-era-m	amā-v-er-ō
2.	amā-v-istī	amā-v-erā-s	amā-v-erī-s
3.	amā-v-it	amā-v-era-t	amā-v-erī-t
<i>Pl.</i> 1.	amā-v-imus	amā-v-erā-mus	amā-v-erī-mus
2.	amā-v-istis	amā-v-erā-tis	amā-v-erī-tis
3.	amā-v-ērunt	amā-v-era-nt	amā-v-erī-nt

IMPERATIVE MOOD

*Present**Sg.* 2. **amā**, *love thou**Pl.* 2. **amā-te**, *love ye*

The verb **do dare dedi datum**, *give* belongs to this conjugation, but has a short **a** in its present stem **da-** in all persons of the indicative except in the second person singular of the present tense.

PRESENT: **do, dās, dāt, dāmus, dātis, dant**; FUTURE: **dābo**; Imperfect: **dābam**. PERFECT SYSTEM endings (suffixed to the third principal part, **dedi**) are entirely regular.

SECOND CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE ACTIVE

Model: **moneō monēre monuī monitum**, *advise*. Verbs of the second conjugation have a long **ē** in the second principal part.

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Future</i>
<i>Sg.</i> 1.	mone- ō	monē- ba-m	monē- b-ō
2.	monē- s	monē- bā-s	monē- bi-s
3.	mone- t	monē- ba-t	monē- bi-t
<i>Pl.</i> 1.	monē- mus	monē- bā-mus	monē- bi-mus
2.	monē- tis	monē- bā-tis	monē- bi-tis
3.	mone- nt	monē- ba-nt	monē- bu-nt
	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Future Perfect</i>
<i>Sg.</i> 1.	mon- u-ī	mon- u-era-m	mon- u-er-ō
2.	mon- u-istī	mon- u-erā-s	mon- u-erī-s
3.	mon- u-it	mon- u-era-t	mon- u-eri-t
<i>Pl.</i> 1.	mon- u-imus	mon- u-erā-mus	mon- u-erī-mus
2.	mon- u-istis	mon- u-erā-tis	mon- u-erī-tis
3.	mon- u-ērunt	mon- u-era-nt	mon- u-eri-nt

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Present

Sg. 2. monē, *warn thou*

Pl. 2. monē-**te**, *warn ye*

THIRD CONJUGATION

Model: **regō regere rēxī rēctus**, *rule*. Verbs of the third conjugation have a short **ĕ** in the second principal part. (In the case of the third conjugation, the added vowel, **-i-**, is not technically part of the stem.)

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Future</i>
<i>Sg.</i> 1.	reg- ō	regē- ba-m	rega- m
2.	regi- s	regē- bā-s	regē- s
3.	regi- t	regē- ba-t	regē- t
<i>Pl.</i> 1.	regi- mus	regē- bā-mus	regē- mus
2.	regi- tis	regē- bā-tis	regē- tis
3.	regu- nt	regē- ba-nt	rege- nt
	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Future Perfect</i>
<i>Sg.</i> 1.	rēx- ī	rēx- era-m	rēx- er-ō
2.	rēx- istī	rēx- erā-s	rēx- erī-s
3.	rēx- it	rēx- era-t	rēx- erī-t
<i>Pl.</i> 1.	rēx- imus	rēx- erā-mus	rēx- erī-mus
2.	rēx- istis	rēx- erā-tis	rēx- erī-tis
3.	rēx- ērunt	rēx- era-nt	rēx- erī-nt

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Present

- Sg.* 2. rege, *rule thou*
Pl. 2. regi-**te**, *rule ye*

FOURTH CONJUGATION

The model for the fourth conjugation is **audiō audīre audīvī audītus**, *hear*. Verbs of the fourth conjugation have a long *ī* in the second principal part.

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Future</i>
<i>Sg.</i> 1.	audi- ō	audiē- ba-m	audia- m
2.	audi- s	audiē- bā-s	audiē- s
3.	audi- t	audiē- ba-t	audie- t
<i>Pl.</i> 1.	audi- mus	audiē- bā-mus	audiē- mus
2.	audi- tis	audiē- bā-tis	audiē- tis
3.	audiu- nt	audiē- ba-nt	audiē- nt
	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Future Perfect</i>
<i>Sg.</i> 1.	audi- v-ī	audi- v-erā-m	audi- v-er-ō
2.	audi- v-istī	audi- v-erā-s	audi- v-erī-s
3.	audi- v-it	audi- v-erā-tis	audi- v-eri-t
<i>Pl.</i> 1.	audi- v-imus	audi- v-erā-mus	audi- v-erī-mus
2.	audi- v-istis	audi- v-erā-tis	audi- v-erī-tis
3.	audi- v-ērunt	audi- v-erā-nt	audi- v-eri-nt

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Present

- Sg.* 2. audi, *hear thou*
Pl. 2. audi-**te**, *hear ye*

THE VERB **SUM ESSE FUĪ**, BE

INDICATIVE MOOD

		<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Future</i>
<i>Sg.</i>	1.	sum	eram	erō
	2.	es	erās	eris
	3.	est	erat	erit
<i>Pl.</i>	1.	sumus	erāmus	erimus
	2.	estis	erātis	eritis
	3.	sunt	erant	erunt
		<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Future Perfect</i>
<i>Sg.</i>	1.	fuī	fueram	fuerō
	2.	fuistī	fuerās	fuerīs
	3.	fuit	fuerat	fuerit
<i>Pl.</i>	1.	fuerimus	fuerāmus	fuerīmus
	2.	fuistis	fuerātis	fuerītis
	3.	fuērunt	fuerant	fuerint

IMPERATIVE MOOD

*Present**Sg.* 2. es, *be thou**Pl.* 2. es-te, *be ye*

The compounds of **sum esse fuī** (except **possum** and **prōsum**) are inflected like **sum**; as — **absum**, *I am absent*; **adsum**, *I am present, I am at hand*. PERFECT SYSTEM endings (suffixed to the third principal part, **fuī**) are entirely regular.

Summary of Syntax

NOUNS

Nominative

- Expressing Subject
- Expressing Complement

Vocative

- Expressing Object Addressed

Accusative

- Expressing Direct Object
- Depending on Prepositions
- Expressing Goal of Motion ($\pm$ **ad**)
- Expressing Extent or Duration
- Expressing Logical Subject of the Infinitive

Genitive

- Expressing Possession
- Expressing the Divided Whole ('Partitive Genitive')
- Expressing Object of Activity ('Objective Genitive')
- Depending on Adverbs or Adjectives of Quantity

Dative

- Expressing Indirect Object
- Expressing Advantage or Disadvantage
- Expressing Possession (+ **sum**)
- Expressing Purpose or Result ('Predicative Dative', + **sum**)
- Depending on Adjectives

Ablative

- Expressing Instrument
- Expressing Manner
- Expressing Description or Quality (+ ADJ.)
- Depending on Prepositions
- Expressing Means or Cause
- Expressing Position in Time ('Locative Ablative')
- Expressing Starting Point (± **ex**, **ab**)
- Expressing Accompaniment (+ **cum**)
- Depending on Adjectives
- Expressing Position in Space
- Expressing Agent (+ **ab**)
- Expressing Comparison

Locative

- Expressing Position in Space

VERBAL NOUNS

Infinitive

- As Subject of a Finite Verb
- As Object of a Finite Verb ('Prolicative Infinitive')
- In Accusative/Infinitive Construction



GIVING A SOP TO CERBERUS. (FROM THE VERGILIUS VATICANUS.)

Latin Course

GRAMMAR

CARDINAL NUMBERS

The first three numbers are declined; the others are indeclinable. Between numbers, *of* is generally translated by **e** or **ex**; as — **unus ex septem**, *one of seven*.

1. ūnus -a -um.

	M.	F.	N.
N.V.	ūn- us	ūn- a	ūn- um
Acc.	ūn- um	ūn- am	ūn- um
Gen.	ūn- īus	ūn- īus	ūn- īus
Dat.	ūn- ī	ūn- ī	ūn- ī
Abl.	ūn- ō	ūn- ā	ūn- ō

<i>N.V.</i>	ūn- ī	ūn- ae	ūn- a
<i>Acc.</i>	ūn- ōs	ūn- ās	ūn- a
<i>Gen.</i>	ūn- ōrum	ūn- ārum	ūn- ōrum
<i>D.A.</i>	ūn- īs	ūn- īs	ūn- īs

2. duo duae duo.*

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.V.</i>	du- o	du- ae	du- o
<i>Acc.</i>	du- ōs , du- o	du- ās	du- o
<i>Gen.</i>	du- ōrum	du- ārum	du- ōrum
<i>D.A.</i>	du- ōbus	du- ābus	du- ōbus

3. trēs tria.

	<i>M.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.V.A.</i>	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	tri- um	tri- um
<i>D.A.</i>	tri- bus	tri- bus

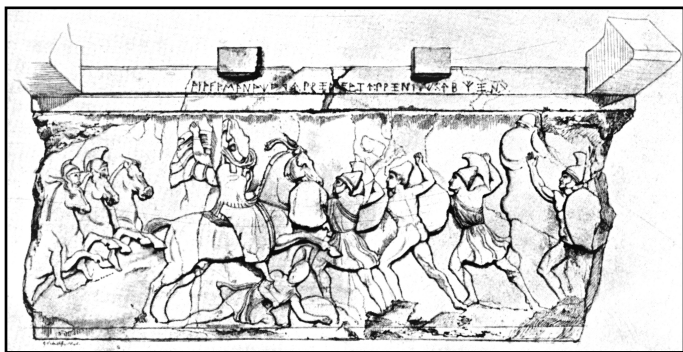
4. quattuor.	7. septem.	10. decem.
5. quinque.	8. octō.	11. undecim.
6. sex.	9. novem.	12. duodecim.

EXERCISE 1

- Unus deus mundum creavit et gubernat.
- Homini uni oculi duo, aures duae, braccia duo sunt.

* Like **duo**, *two* is declined **ambo**, *both*. The **-o** endings of these two nouns are normal second declension endings for the early Latin DUAL NUMBER, which refers to exactly two persons or things (as distinct from the singular and the plural).

3. Tu caput unum habes, sed Cerberus, saevus Tartari custos, capita tria et tres linguas habebat.
4. Tres erant Gratiae vel deae pulchritudinis et formae.
5. Forma et pulchritudo trium Gratiarum omnibus Graecis notae erant.
6. Unius anni quattuor sunt tempora, ver, aestas, auctumnus, hiems.
7. Olympias erat spatium quattuor annorum, Graeci enim ludos Olympios post spatium quattuor annorum celebrabant.
8. Omne animal quinque corporis sensus habet.
9. Ex septem diebus sex sunt dies operarii.
10. Graeci praeclaros viros septem sapientes nominaverunt.



A ROMAN ASSAULT. (TOMB OF PAYAVA.)

EXERCISE 2

1. Ex septem sapientibus Graecis maxime praeclari sunt Bias, Solon, Thales.

2. Septem erant mira aedificia vel miracula mundi.
3. Septem erant reges, septem montes Romae.
4. Novem erant Musae vel deae Carminum et Artium.
5. Novem erant libri Sibyllini, sed femina vetula sex ex novem libria cremavit.
6. Romani initio annum unum in decem modo menses dividebant.
7. Decem viri Romani leges Romanas quondam scribebant.
8. Decem viri agros publicos in cives dividebant.
9. Graeci milites annos decem Troiam oppugnabant.
10. Hercules duodecim opera finivit.



ONE OF THE PROPHETESSES CALLED A SIBYL.

GRAMMAR

ORDINAL NUMBERS

Declined like **bonus**:

1st, primus.	5th, quintus.	9th, nōnus.
2nd, secundus.	6th, sextus.	10th, decimus.
3rd, tertius.	7th, septimus.	11th, undecimus.
4th, quartus.	8th, octāvus.	12th, duodecimus.

ADVERBS

prīmō, <i>firstly</i> .	secundō, <i>secondly</i> .	tertiō, <i>thirdly</i> .
-------------------------	----------------------------	--------------------------

MONTHS OF THE YEAR

Ianuārius — Februārius — Martius — Aprīlis — Maius —
Iūnius — Quintīlis/Iūlius — Sextīlis/Augustus — September —
Octōber — November — December.

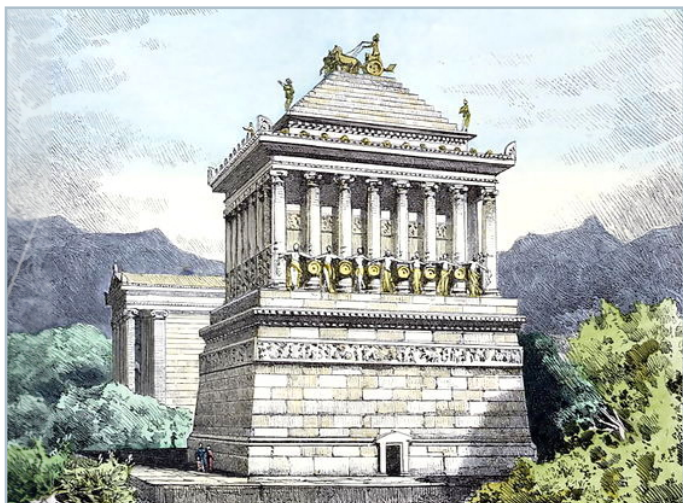
The names of the months are adjectives agreeing with **mensis**, understood.

EXERCISE 3

Seven Kings of Rome, 753–509 BC

1. Romulus, primus rex Romanorum, urbem Romam designavit.
2. Numa Pompilius, secundus rex, Iani templum aedificavit.
3. Tullus Hostilius, tertius rex, Albanos et Sabinos superavit.
4. Ancus Marcius, quartus rex, Latinos socios in urbem Romam vocavit.

5. Tarquinius Priscus, quintus rex, in urbem Romam ex Etruriā migravit.
6. Quinti regis opera, in bello et in pace, magna fuerunt.
7. Servius Tullius, sextus rex, urbem muro cinxit.
8. Tarquinius Superbus erat septimus et ultimus rex.
9. Primo reges, secundo consules, tertio imperatores Romam regebant.
10. Tertia imperii species Romae perniciosa fuit.



THE TOMB OF MAUSOLUS.

GRAMMAR

CARDINAL NUMBERS

20. vīginti

30. trīginta

40. quādraginta

50. quinquāginta

60. sexāginta	400. quadrigent-i -ae -a.
70. seutuāginta	500. quingent-i -ae -a.
80. octōginta	600. sexcent-i -ae -a.
90. nonāginta.	700. septigent-i -ae -a.
100. centum.	800. octigent-i -ae -a.
200. ducent-i -ae -a.	900. nongent-i -ae -a.
300. trecent-i -ae -a.	1000. mille.

In compound numbers between twenty and one hundred, the smaller with **et** comes first, or the larger without **et**; as — **duo et viginti** or **viginti duo**. Above a hundred, the larger comes first, with or without **et**; as — **centum et unus** or **centum viginti**.

In the singular, **mille** is an indeclinable adjective; as — **mille milites**, *a thousand soldiers*. In the plural, it is declined like a neuter substantive: N.A. **mīl-ia**, G. **mīl-ium**, D.A. **mīl-ibus**; as — **duo milia militum**, *two thousand [of] soldiers*. But if other numerals come between, it is not followed by a genitive; as — **duo milia ducenti milites**, *two thousand two hundred soldiers*.

ACCUSATIVE OF SPACE. In answer to the questions *how high?*, *how long?*, *how broad?*, *how deep?*, *how far?*, the accusative is used; as — **muris ducentos pedes altus**, *a wall two hundred feet high*.

EXERCISE 4

The Seven Wonders of the World

1. Graeci antiqui septem ingentia monumenta orbis miracula appellabant.

2. Primo reges Aegyptii tria magna sepulcra in ripis Nili designaverunt.
3. Centum milia servorum unum et viginti annos monumenta ingentia aedificabant.
4. Primum sepulcrum quingentos pedes altum et octingentos pedes latum erat.
5. Secundum miraculum erat sepulcrum Mausoli, regis Cariae.
6. Artemisia, Mausoli uxor et regina, monumentum ingena marito suo atruxit.
7. Sepulcrum autem centum quadraginta quinque pedes altum erat.
8. In auniino monumento unae quadrigae quinquaginta duo pedes altae stabant.
9. Templum Dianae Ephesiae tertium locum in numero miraculorum habebat.

EXERCISE 5

The Seven Wonders of the World (Continued)

1. Semiramis, Babylonia regina, quartum miraculum aedificavit.
2. Ex columnis, ducentos pedes altis, hortus ingens pendebat.
3. In urbe Babylonae centum aeneae portae et ducentae quinquaginta turres in moenibus erant.
4. Ingens Apollinis figura locum quintum habebat.
5. Aenea statua centum viginti unum pedes alta erat et inter pedes magnae figurae naves navigabant.

6. Signum Iovis Olympii sextum locum in numero miraculorum habet.
7. Iovia signum, praeclarum Phidiae opus, templum Olympium ornabat.
8. Septimum et ultimum miraculum erat Pharos Alexandrina.
9. Pharos, turris alta in insulā, nomen ab insulā habebat.
10. Ex septem miraculis sepulcra regum Aegyptiorum hodie supersunt.



PHAROS OF ALEXANDRIA.

GRAMMAR

THE PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE

The infinitive is an abstract verbal noun that forms the second principal part of every verb. It can be the subject of a sentence,

the object of another verb, or part of a complementary construction. It is often translated in English as *to* [verb].

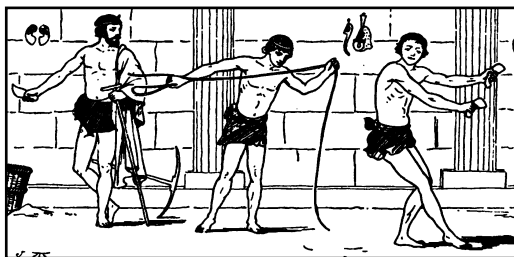
	<i>Present</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>
<i>First Conjugation</i>	am- o	am- āre , to love.
<i>Second Conjugation</i>	mon- eo	mon- ēre , to advise.
<i>Third Conjugation</i>	reg- o	reg- ere , to rule.
<i>Fourth Conjugation</i>	aud- io	aud- īre , to hear.

GRAMMAR

THE VERB **possum**, to be able

The verb **possum posse potuī**, *be able* (from **pot-**, *able* + **sum**) is irregular in the present.

PRESENT TENSE: **possum**, **potes**, **potest**; **possumus**, **potestis**, **possunt**. FUTURE: **pot-ero**. IMPERFECT: **pot-eram**. (PERFECT SYSTEM, stem **potu-** is regular as always.)



IN THE GYMNASIUM.

EXERCISE 6

Dialogue on the Choice of a Game

PUER 1: Tempus est ludere. De genere lusus iam consultare possumus.

PUER 2: Ego vestras sententias audire opto.

PUER 3: Ego pilā ludere studeo. Ita enim omnes corporis partes exercere poterimus.

PUER 4: Iucundum est certare cursu. Difficile est omnibus placere.

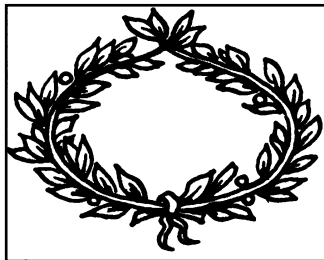
PUER 5: Omnes contendere saltu possumus, sed media aestate currere non potestis.

PUER 6: Non possumus te audire. Tu si consilio vincere non potueris, fraude superare poteris.

PUER 1: Sententiam tuam rogare necesse non est. Semper monere, nunquam parere, potes.

PUER MULTI: Nos omnes cursu eertare optamus. Necesse erit properare aut certamen finire non poterimus.

PUER 2: Cursu certare paene omnes studemus. Necesse est stadium designare.



LAUREL CROWN.

GRAMMAR

A genitive is sometimes used with the verb **sum** and followed by an infinitive where in English it is necessary to supply a word like *nature, mark, part, etc.*; as — **puellarum est ludere**, *it is the nature of girls to play.*

EXERCISE 7

Dialogue (Continued)

PUER 1: Properare necesse est, si lusum ante tenebras finire studemus.

PUER 2: Necesse est praemia victori dare.

PUER 3: Nonne sine praemiis contendere poteritis?

PUER 4: Stulti est pro pecunia certare.

PUER 5: Sapientis est pro gloriā modo contendere.

PUER 6: Satis erit victorem coronā, honoris causa, ornare.

PUER 7: Ego virtute, non fraude, superare studeo.

PUER 1: Humanum est errare. Stulti est ante proelium gaudere.

PUER 2: Virtutem habere non satis est, sed exercere necesse est.

PUER 3: Necesse erit a me victoriam reportare.

PUER 4: Facile est te arte superare.

PUER 5: Tempus est ad urbem properare. Necesse erit eras certamen finire.

MAGISTER: Puerorum est tempus contentione consumere.

MAGISTRA: Facile est pueros monere, difficile regere.



A ROMAN GARDEN.

GRAMMAR

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
trist- is , <i>sad.</i>	trist- ior , <i>sadder</i> , <i>more sad.</i>	trist- issim-us -a -um , <i>saddest, most sad.</i>

M.F.

N.

<i>Sg.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	tristior	tristius
	<i>Acc.</i>	tristiōr- em	tristius
	<i>Gen.</i>	tristiōr- is	tristiōr- is
	<i>Dat.</i>	tristiōr- i	tristiōr- i
	<i>Abl.</i>	tristiōr- e	tristiōr- e

Pl.	N.A.	tristiōr- ēs	tristiōr- a
	Gen.	tristiōr- um	tristiōr- um
	D.A.	tristiōr- ibus	tristiōr- ibus

THE COMPARATIVE is formed by adding **-ior** and the superlative by adding **-issimus** to the last consonant of the stem of the positive; as — positive, long-**us**; comparative, long-**ior**; superlative, long-**issimus**.

COMPARISON. If two substantives are compared with a comparative and the conjunction **quam**, *than*, both substantives are in the same case. **Dies longiores quam noctes sunt.**

ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON. The thing compared may be put in the ablative case when the nom. or acc. would have been used with *quam*. **Dies longiores sunt noctibus.**

EXERCISE 7

On Friendship

1. Nihil dulcius est in vitā quam amicitia firmissima.
2. Et secundas res splendidiore reddit amicitia coniunctissima et adversas leviores.
3. Res adversae sine amicis oneri gravissimo sunt.
4. Nihil praestantius, nihil firmitus est quam cum viris honestissimis amicitia.
5. Nihil est amabilius aut praestantius virtute: vitam enim tutiorem et opulentiorem reddit.
6. Vitam sine amicis semper gravissimam et tristissimam puto.
7. Patriae iura sola sunt sanctiora quam amicitiae.

8. Rarissimae, sed praeclarissimae sunt coniunctissimae amicitiae.
9. Stultissimum est amicos, iucundissima vitae ornamenta, non parare.
10. Cicero, scriptor praeclarissimus, nihil amicitia praesantius aut utilius putavit.

GRAMMAR

PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
sum esse fui	es, <i>be thou.</i>	este, <i>be ye.</i>
<i>First Conjugation</i>	am- ā , <i>love thou.</i>	am- āte , <i>love ye.</i>
<i>Second Conjugation</i>	mon- ē , <i>advise thou.</i>	mon- ēte , <i>advise ye.</i>
<i>Third Conjugation</i>	reg- e , <i>rule thou.</i>	reg- ite , <i>rule ye.</i>
<i>Fourth Conjugation</i>	aud- io , <i>hear thou.</i>	aud- īte , <i>hear ye.</i>

A few verbs of the third conjugation drop the final **-e** in the second person singular present imperative active. The most common are **dīc**, *say thou*; **dīcite**, *say ye*; **dūc**, *lead thou*; **dūcite**, *lead ye*; **fac**, *make thou*; **facite**, *make ye*.

In all four conjugations, the present imperative singular can be formed from the present infinitive by taking away the final syllable **-re**.

EXERCISE 9

ANTE CENAM

echīni, *sea urchins.*

ostreaea, *oysters.*

turdi, *thrushes.*

asparagi, *asparagus.*

balani, *mussels.*

gallina altilis, *a large fowl.*

IN CENA

sinciput aprugnum, boar's*head.***anates**, ducks.**mulli**, mullets.**lepores**, hares.**muraenae**, salt-water eels.**panes Picentes**, bread from*Picenum.*

SECUNDA MENSA

pira, pears.**pōma**, apples.**olivae**, olives.**castaneae**, chestnuts.

RECLINING AT DINNER.

Dialogue at a Banquet

HOSPES 1: Huc ades, puer! Monstra viam ad Caesaris hortos!

PUER: Hinc flectite ad dextram, tum cursum ad sinistram dirigite!

HOSPES 1: Properate, comites! Este bono animo!

HOSPES 2: Manete, paulisper! Cavete! E via erramus!

HOSPES 3: Tace, stulte! Ecce ostium! Pulsate!

MAGISTER: Salvete, amici! Date puero in manum tegumenta vestra!

HOSPES 1: Salve, optime amice! Da veniam, si sero adsumus.

MAGISTER: Ad tempus adestis. Puer, duo nos ad triclinium!

HOSPES 2: Es tu prior, si libet!

MAGISTER: Removete moram! Heus, adeste huc!

HOSPES 3: Spectate tabulas! Quam pulchrum est atrium!

MAGISTER: Heus, puer, ministra aquam!

HOSPES 1: Lava tu prior!

HOSPES 2: Sta rectus, puer! Da mihi linteum!

MAGISTER: Lavate et accumbite! Designate lectos! Ego in summo lecto accumbam. Tu prope me lectum delige! Tu infra accumbe!

HOSPES 3: Move te, si libet! Non est locus mihi.

HOSPES 4: Da veniam! Accumbe prior!

MAGISTER: Heus, pueri, ministrate cenam! Demite soleas! Praebete vos hilares, amici.

EXERCISE 10

Dialogue at a Banquet (Continued)

HOSPES 1: Narra, si libet, fabulam tuam!

HOSPES 2: Mane promisso tuo!

MAGISTER: Serva fabulaa et recita apud secundam mensam! Funde vinum et bibe!

HOSPES 3: Mihi aquam modo da!

MAGISTER: Date panem, pueri! Satis est ostrearum! Apponite anates! Discerpite gallinam!

HOSPES 4: Tibi serva muraenam! Scinde mihi alam gallinae!

HOSPES 1: Ecce poculuin pulchrum! Lege titulum, si libet!

HOSPES 2: (*legit*) 'Me vino imple! Misce, amice! Tum bibe et reple!'

HOSPES 3: Funde mihi aquam ad dimidium poculum! Tum vino imple more antiquo!

MAGISTER: Properate, pueri! Quam tardi estis! Tollite muraenam et anates! Tum date secundam mensam!

HOSPES 1: Ecce poma! Da, puer, olivas!

HOSPES 2: Iam satis. Remove fructus! Age nunc magistro gratias!

HOSPES 3: Age tu prior!

MAGISTER: Surgite, amici, a mensā! Portate, pueri, soleas! Iam ludite vel cantate, amici, si libet!

GRAMMAR

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
bonus, <i>good</i> .	melior, <i>better</i> .	optimus, <i>best</i> .
magnus, <i>great</i> .	māior, <i>greater</i> .	maximus, <i>greatest</i> .
malus, <i>bad</i> .	pēior, <i>worse</i> .	pessimus, <i>worst</i> .
multus, <i>much</i> .	plūs, <i>more</i> (n.).	plūrimus, <i>most</i> .
parvus, <i>small</i> .	minor, <i>smaller, less</i> .	minimus, <i>least</i> .

Adjectives ending in **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus**, as **celer**, **celer-ior**, **celer-rimus**; **niger**, **nigrior**, **niger-rimus** (adjectives like **niger** drop the **e** in the comparative).

Six adjectives in **-lis** form the superlative by adding **-limus** to the stem: as **facil-is -e**, *easy*; **facil-ior**, **facil-limus**. Likewise **difficil-is -e**, *difficult*; **simil-is -e**, *similar, like*; **dissimil-is -e**, *unlike*; **gracil-is -e**, *slender*; **humil-is -e**, *humble*.

In the singular, **plūs** is neuter only (G. **plūris**, D.A. **plūri**). Plural c. N.A. **plūres**, n. N.A. **plūra**, G. **plūrium**, D.A. **plūribus**.

With comparatives, an adverbial ablative is often used to measure the difference between two objects. **Quo plus habent, eo plus optant**. *The more they have, the more they desire.*

EXERCISE 11

Alexander the Great

1. Nunquam vir maior aut melior Alexandro, rege Macedonum, fuit.
2. Romani antiqui Iovem Optimum Maximum appellabant.
3. Macedones quoque Alexandrum virum optimum et maximum putabant.
4. Plurimas et maximas in Asia civitates superavit Alexander; quo plures superavit, eo plures oppugnavit.
5. Babylonem, urbem maximam et optimam, expugnavit: maximum auri pondus raptavit.
6. Rex autem minus, quam speraverat, ex urbe servavit.
7. Graeci Persas, numero plures, virtute minore, in plurimis proeliis superaverunt.

8. Alexander virtutem Persarum non pluris, fortasse etiam minoria quam Medorum aestimavit.
9. Rex minimam partem imperii in Graeciā, maximam in Asiā egit; quo enim plura habuit, eo plura optavit.
10. Inter duces fortissimos nemo maior aut fortior Alexandro erat.
11. Itaque facillimas victorias in rebus difficillimis saepe reportabat.
12. Celerimus enim consiliis tenerrimos animos barbarorum terruit et superavit.



ALEXANDER THE GREAT.

(LOUVRE.)

GRAMMAR

ADVERBS

The positive adverb usually ends in **-ē**, but those formed from adjectives of the third declension often end in **-ter**, and a few are irregular.

The comparative adverb ends in **-us**, and is the same as the neuter of the comparative adjective. The superlative adverb ends in **-ē**. Thus —

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
bone, <i>well</i> .	melius	optimē
magnopere, <i>greatly</i> .	magis	maximē
longē, <i>far</i> .	longius	longissimē
fortiter, <i>bravely</i> .	fortius	fortissimē

GRAMMAR

PASSIVE VOICE

(PRESENT SYSTEM, 1ST CONJUGATION)

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
<i>Sg.</i> 1.	amo- r	am-ā- ba-r	am-ā- bor
2.	am-ā- ris	am-ā- bā-ris	am-ā- be-ris
3.	am-ā- tur	am-ā- bā-tur	am-ā- bi-tur
<i>Pl.</i> 1.	am-ā- mur	am-ā- bā-mur	am-ā- bi-mur
2.	am-ā- minī	am-ā- bā-minī	am-ā- bi-mini
3.	am-a- ntur	am-ā- bā-ntur	am-ā- bu-ntur
	<i>I am loved</i>	<i>I was being loved</i>	<i>I shall be loved</i>

In the passive voice, the agent or person by whom the action is performed is put in the ablative case with the preposition **ā** or **ab**. The subject of the active verb becomes the agent after the passive verb.

Dux concilium convocat. *The general calls a council.*

Concilium a duce convocatur. *A council is called by the general.*

(Do not confuse the ABLATIVE OF AGENT, which employs **ā** or **ab** with the name of a person, with the INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE, on account of their similar translations. **Dux hastā vulneratur.** *The general is wounded by a spear.*)

EXERCISE 12

A General Exhorts his Troops

1. Postero die militum concilium a duce convocatur.
2. Milites fessi verbis multis et acribus ad proelium incitantur.
3. 'Milites, incommode nostro nimis perturbamini.'
4. 'Neque virtute neque in acie nos a Romanis superamur.'
5. 'Cur vos, viri fortes et strenui, adeo metu sollicitamini?'
6. 'Non sic victoria a vobis reportabitur: non sic hostium arces expugnabuntur.'
7. 'Ego tamen propter vestram ignaviam maximis doloribus crucior.'
8. 'Victoria mox reportabitur, si fortuna mutabitur.'
9. 'In bello proelia secunda a me non semper exspectantur.'
10. 'Si vulnerabimini aut superabimini, vos in magno honore cives semper habebunt.'
11. 'Si tamen mors honesta turpi fugā vitabitur, a fortibus semper culpabimur et vituperabimur.'
12. 'Virtus igitur et fortitudo iam postulatur et exspectabuntur.'

EXERCISE 13

Frugality in Ancient Rome

1. Apud Romanos antiquos integritas vitae laudabatur et frugalitas pluris quam argentum aestimabatur.
2. Paupertas magni, divitiae parvi aestimabantur.
3. Luxuria privata a bonis civibus damnabatur; simplicitas praedieabatur.
4. Virtus et fortitudo et sapientia postulabantur et amabantur.
5. Si bonis exemplis incitabimur, multa vitia a nobis vitabuntur.
6. Exempla bona Romanorum paulisper a nobis explorabuntur et spectabuntur.
7. Optima morum regulae servabantur et amabantur.
8. Vita rustica et humilis laudabatur: vita luxuriosa culpabatur et repudiabatur.
9. Non pecunia sed potestas a civibus optabatur.
10. Multa et praeclara exempla nobis ab honestis viris mandabantur.

GRAMMAR

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN **is ea id**, *that*

Demonstrative are words that point but do not describe. The pronoun **is ea id** is a weak demonstrative meaning *this* or *that* and may also serve as a rough equivalent of the English third person pronoun (*he, she, it, they*). It can be used as either a pronoun or a pronominal adjective.

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Sg. Nom.</i>	is	ea	id
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id
<i>Gen.</i>	ēius	ēius	ēius
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	eī	eae	ea
<i>Acc.</i>	eos	eās	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
<i>Abl.</i>	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

Hitherto the possessive pronouns *his*, *her*, *its*, *their* have always been reflexive (referring back to the subject of their clause), and have been translated by the reflexive pronoun *suus*.

But if these pronouns *his*, *her*, *its*, *their* refer to a substantive other than the subject, they must be translated by the genitives of the pronoun **is ea id** (**ēius** in the singular; **eōrum/eārum** in the plural).

Alexander milites suos incitat. *Alexander urges on his [his own (Alexander's)] soldiers.*

Alexander bellum Persis indicit et eorum agros vastat. *Alexander declares war on the Persians and lays waste to their [the Persians'] fields.*

EXERCISE 14

Alexander in Asia

1. Ubi ea res nuntiata est, Alexander milites suos convocavit.
2. Multae res eum ad pugnam incitabant.
3. Itaque signum pugnae ab eo statim datur.
4. Sed ea pugna regi et comitibus eius paene exitio erat.
5. Contra eum Dareus fortissimos e militibus suis instruxerat.
6. Subito in eius currum Persae impetum suum dabant.
7. Nec defuit ei perpetua in dubiis rebus felicitas.
8. Amici eius ad auxilium undique propemnt.
9. Tandem rex id perieulum feliciter vitavit.
10. Post eas res milites suos in urbem Babylonem duxit.

GRAMMAR

PASSIVE VOICE

(PERFECT SYSTEM, 1ST CONJUGATION)

	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
<i>Sg.</i>			
1.	amātus sum	amātus eram	amātus ero
2.	amātus es	amātus erās	amātus eris
3.	amātus est	amātus erat	amātus erit
<i>Pl.</i>			
1.	amāti sumus	amātus erāmus	amāti erimus
2.	amāti estis	amātus erātis	amāti eritis
3.	amāti sunt	amātus erant	amāti erunt
	<i>I was loved, I have been loved</i>	<i>I had been loved</i>	<i>I shall have been loved</i>

The passive voice of the perfect system is formed from the perfect participle and the present system of the verb *sum*. The perfect participle must always agree in gender and number with the subject.

The perfect participle is made by changing the final **-m** of the fourth principal part into **-s**; as — **amātum** → **amātus**.

GRAMMAR

PRINCIPAL PARTS

The fourth principal part is called the supine. (The supine is a verbal noun, like the infinitive, and will be studied later.) We are now using all principal parts of the Latin verb.

<i>Present</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Supine</i>
amo	amare	amavi	amatum
moneo	monere	monui	monitum
rego	regere	rexī	rectum
audio	audire	audivi	auditum

EXERCISE 15

Frugality at Rome: Cincinnatus, Curius, and Fabricius.

1. Praeclarum exemplum a Cincinnato memoriae mandatum est.
2. Roma olim ab Aequis oppugnata erat; milites Romani superabantur; agri vastabantur.
3. Tum Cincinnatus, agricola humilis, ab aratro ad dictat-
uram vocatus est.
4. Consuli Romano auxilium ab eo datum est; Roma timore liberata est; hostes superati et fugati sunt.

5. Tum omnia praemia a Cincinnato repudiata sunt; omnis praeda militibus data est.
6. Curius et Fabricius non minus laudabuntur, si eorum exempla diligenter considerata erunt.
7. Ei enim a Samnitibus pecuniā tentati et sollicitati erant: ab eis munera repudiata sunt.
8. Luxuria a Fabricio culpata et vituperata est; frugalitas laudata et praedicata est.
9. Pecunia a Curio minimi aestimata est; imperium amatum et optatum est.
10. Si praeclara exempla eorum civium a nobis servata erunt, fortuna nostra non mutabitur.

GRAMMAR

THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE

WITH ADVERBS OR NEUTER ADJECTIVES

A genitive is often used after adverbs or neuter adjectives of quantity, such as **multum**, **plus**, **plurimum**, **parum**, **minus**, **minimum**, **nihil**, **satis**, **nimis**, etc.; as — **multum pecuniae**, *much money*; **nihil honestatis**, *no honour*.

EXERCISE 16

Decline of Roman Morals

1. Romanis antiquis non minus animi quam fidei erat.
2. Id enim temporis duces multum auctoritatis apud cives habebant.
3. Praeclarum Curi responsum parum eloquentiae, satis sapientiae habet.

4. 'Non ego plus pecuniae sed plus auctoritatis habere opto.'
5. Id exemplum gravitatis et ponderis plurimum habet.
6. Sed post bellum Punicum minimum gravitatis minimumque honestatis apud Romanos erat.
7. Unde plurimum periculi Latino generi erat.
8. Nihil potestatis penes populum, nimis penes senatum erat.
9. Sapientia minus auctoritatis quam pecunia habebat.
10. Itaque Romani in multis bellis civilibus satis poenarum dabant.

GRAMMAR

INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES

The interrogative particle **nonne** expects a positive answer, while **num** expects a negative answer.

Q1: **Nonne amicum amas?** *Do you not love your friend? You love your friend, don't you?* A1: **Amo.** *I do.*

Q2: **Num inimicum amas?** *You do not love an enemy, do you?* A2: **Non amo.** *I do not.*

EXERCISE 17

ACTIVE AND PASSIVE TENSES

*Dialogue between the Ghosts of Xerxes and Leonidas**

XERXES: Amplissimis honoribus et praemiis, Leonida, a me decoratus es!

LEONIDAS: Neque gloriam neque honores, Rex Magne, ego optavi.

XERXES: Tu autem, honoris causā, minister et satelles Regis Magni nominatus es!

LEONIDAS: Eheu! Frustra te vitare studui. Valde ego delectatus eram quod tu apud mortuos vitatus eras.

XERXES: Quid! Nonne ego ab omnibus hominibus honoribus cumulatus sum? Num a te, treeentorum latronum duce, probris vexabor et onerabor?

LEONIDAS: Nos trecenti a barbaris tuis necati neque superati sumus! Numero, non virtute, debellatus sum.

XERXES: Quid! Num copiae tuae cum meis comparabuntur?

LEONIDAS: Triginta milia Persarum a trecentis morti data sunt. Nonne Manes militum tuorum hie in ripā spectas?

XERXES: Res stulta a te tentata est.

LEONIDAS: Valde errasti! Vos exemplo nostro exanimati et defatigati estis, Graeci autem ad maiorem spem incitati sunt.

XERXES: Attica a me vastata erat. Dolo crucior quod agri tui non vexati sunt.

* Xerxes, king of Persia (485–465 BC), invaded Greece with an enormous army in 480 BC. Leonidas, the king of Sparta, and 300 of his subjects perished in defending the Pass of Thermopylae against the Persians.

LEONIDAS: Neque iniuriis tuis olim incitatus sum, neque laudibus tuis nunc incitor. Non iam Rex Magnus appellaberis. Ecce! Minos, index severus, te vocat. Vale!

GRAMMAR

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

hic haec hoc, *this &* **ille illa illud**, *that*

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Sg. Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hōc
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hōc
<i>Gen.</i>	hūius	hūius	hūius
<i>Dat.</i>	hūic	hūic	hūic
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	hī	hae	haec
<i>Acc.</i>	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Abl.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Sg. Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud
<i>Gen.</i>	illīus	illīus	illīus
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō

Pl. Nom.	illī	illae	illa
Acc.	illōs	illās	illōs
Gen.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illīs	illīs	illīs
Abl.	illīs	illīs	illīs

The pronouns **hic** and **ille** may be used like adjectives in agreement with substantives or alone as demonstrative pronouns. They can be used in contrast with each other, in which case **hic** means *this near me* and **ille**, *that over there*.

Ille, when used with a proper name or a substantive in apposition to a proper name, often means *the famous*. **Cicero, orator ille**, *Cicero, the famous orator*; **Magnus ille Alexander**, *the Great Alexander*.

EXERCISE 18

The Stoics and the Epicureans

1. Cicero, orator ille Romanus, haec verba olim dixit:
2. 'Ex illis philosophis multi huic civitati salutis fuerunt.'
3. Inter illos philosophos praeclari erant Zeno et Epicurus, sed hic ab illo longe diversus.
4. Huius scholae discipuli Epicurei, illius Stoici nominantur.
5. Epicurei felicitatem huius vitae voluptate terminant.
6. Ab hac diversa fuit illorum sententia; illi enim maximum vitae bonum in honestate, hi in vitā beatā ponunt.
7. Magno illi Diogeni dissimillimus erat Epicurus.
8. Illi enim frugalitas, huic luxuria curae erat.

9. Cynicus autem ille illam luxuriam non virtutem sed animi mollitiam putavit.
10. Digna sunt memoriā ista verba illius Cynici, 'Nunc paululum a sole.'
11. Istis enim verbis Diogenes unam suam voluntatem Alexandro significavit.

GRAMMAR

PASSIVE VOICE

(PRESENT SYSTEM, 2ND CONJUGATION)

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
<i>Sg.</i> 1.	mon-e- o-r	mon-ē- ba-r	mon-ē- bo-r
2.	mon-ē- ris	mon-ē- bā-ris	mon-ē- be-ris
3.	mon-ē- tur	mon-ē- bā-tur	mon-ē- bi-tur
<i>Pl.</i> 1.	mon-ē- mur	mon-ē- bā-mur	mon-ē- bi-mur
2.	mon-ē- minī	mon-ē- bā-minī	mon-ē- bi-minī
3.	mon-e- ntur	mon-ē- bā-ntur	mon-ē- bu-ntur
	<i>I am advised</i>	<i>I was being advised</i>	<i>I shall be advised</i>

(Same as first conjugation save for different theme vowel.)

EXERCISE 19

Dialogue between the Ghosts of Achilles and Homer

ACHILLES: Gaudio compleor, praeclarissime poeta, quod fama tua mihi debetur.

HOMER: Nempe fabula satis digna a te praebebatur. Ulixi autem magis quam tibi gratia debetur et habebitur.

ACHILLES: Quid! Fama tua magis dolo quam virtute augetur!
 Gratia omnis Ulixi habetur! Num ego a societate laudis
 prohibebor?

HOMER: Irā tuā non ego terrebor. Vano furore compleris.
 Nonne exemplo horum Manium moneberis et doceberis?

ACHILLES: Decem annos Troia obsidebatur. Ego a Troianis
 maxime timebar. Fama carminis tui factis meis debetur.

HOMER: Verbis tuis moveor, praeclare miles, sed sentiā tuā
 non deterrebor.

ACHILLES: Eheu! Mors mea defletur! Memoria deletur!

HOMER: Naturā docemur et monemur. Memoria factorum
 tuorum mox delebitur nisi carminibus meis augebitur et
 ornabitur.

ACHILLES: Verba tua memoriā tenebuntur, sed de sentiā
 meā non deterrebor.

GRAMMAR

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN **quis quid**, *who? what?*

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Sg. Nom.</i>	quis	quis	quid
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quid
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius
<i>Dat.</i>	cūi	cūi	cūi
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō

<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	qui	quae	quae
<i>Acc.</i>	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Abl.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus

The interrogative pronoun **quis quid** is used alone. When used as interrogative adjectives agreeing with a substantive, the nom. forms are instead m. **qui**, f. **quae**, n. N.A. **quod**. (Compare closely the relative pronoun, below.)

Quis es? *Who are you?* **Qui homo es?** *What man are you?*

Quid portas? *What do you bring?* **Quod donum portas?** *What gifts do you bring?*



THE DEATH OF ACHILLES.

GRAMMAR

COMBINING FORM **-cum**

When the preposition **cum**, *with* follows the pronouns **mē**, **tē**, **sē**, **nōbis**, **vōbis**, and the relative **quis quid**, it is suffixed to them; as — **nōbiscum**, *with us*; **quibuscum**, *with whom*?

EXERCISE 20

Dialogue between Alexander the Great and a Scythian Chief

SCYTHIAN: Quis es? Quāa de causā in regnum nostrum intra visti?

ALEXANDER: Quid dicis? Quo in oppido habitas? Qui homo in toto orbe terrarum Alexandrum ignorat?

SCYTHIAN: Quis autem est Alexander? Quid optas? Quam ob causam ades?

ALEXANDER: Quae verba audio? Qua audacia incitaris?

SCYTHIAN: E quibus regionibus exercitium duxisti?

ALEXANDER: Quae litora ego non spectavi? Quis clarior Alexandro? Cui ego non notus sum?

SCYTHIAN: Si praedae causā in patriam nostram intravisti, quibus donis contentus ens? Quā praedā sitim tuam satiare poterimus?

ALEXANDER: Quibus condicionibus amicitiam et foedus nobiscum iunges?

SCYTHIAN: Quo modo amicitia inter servum et dominum esse potest?

ALEXANDER: Cui non ego leges aequas dedi? Cuius iniuriae memor es?

SCYTHIAN: Qui peior latro in toto orbe terrarum est?

ALEXANDER: Quid pluribus verbis opus est? Bellum parate! Quorum auxilium iam postulabis?

SCYTHIAN: Quam ob rem nos tibi servire debemus? Fortes fortima iuvat. Ad bellum parati sumus.



ALEXANDER THE GREAT.

GRAMMAR

PASSIVE VOICE

(PERFECT SYSTEM, 2ND CONJUGATION)

PERFECT: **monitus sum**, *I have been advised, I was advised.*PLUPERFECT: **monitus eram**, *I had been advised.*FUTURE PERFECT: **monitus ero**, *I shall have been advised.*

EXERCISE 21

1. In pugnā Cannensi exercitua Romanus deletus erat.
2. Tum Hannibal a duce forti sic monitus est.
3. 'Urbs rainimo praesidio tenetur: cives meta territi sunt.'
4. 'Delectus undique habentur, sed adventus noster time-
tur.'
5. 'Si verbis meis doctus eris, urbs Roma mox delebitur.'
6. 'Gives fuga prohibebuntur, si urbs statim obsessa erit.'

7. 'Si exemplo meo doceberis, Roma delebitur, gloria tua augebitur.'
8. Hannibal sic monitus est, sed a bonis consiliis deterri-
tus est.
9. Roma non est obsessa: urbs non est deleta.
10. Militum Romanorum virtus aucta est: multos post an-
nos Carthago a Romanis deleta est.

GRAMMAR

RELATIVE PRONOUN **qui quae quod**

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Sg. Nom.</i>	qui	quae	quod
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius
<i>Dat.</i>	cūi	cūi	cūi
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	qui	quae	quae
<i>Acc.</i>	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Abl.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus

AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVE. The relative pronoun agrees in gender, number, and person with its antecedent (the substantive to which it refers), but its case depends on the position in its own clause.

Nom. **Vir quo rebus suis contentus est beatus est.**

The man who is content with his own things is happy.

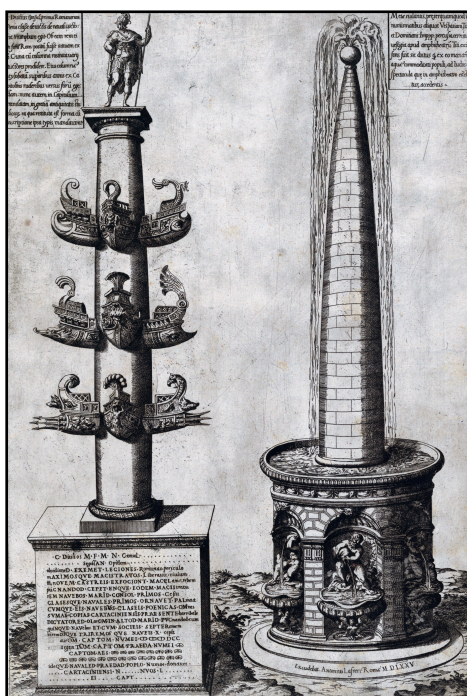
- Acc.* **Liber quem habes mihi est.**
The book which you have is mine.
- Gen.* **Vir cuius exemplum laudas adest.**
The man whose example you are praising is present.
- Dat.* **Ille vir est cui patriae salus dulcis est.**
He is a man to whom the safety of his country is sweet.
- Abl.* **Urbs in quā habito Roma vocatur.**
The city in which I live is called Rome.

EXERCISE 22

*The Story of Carthage**The First Punic War (264–224 BC)*

1. Erat in Africā urbs Carthago, cuius incolae Poeni vocabantur.
2. Mox Poeni, quibus multae naves erant, in Siciliam navigabant.
3. Turn Romani, quorum in tutelā erant multa oppida in Siciliā, bellum cum Poenis commoverunt.
4. In Siciliā victoria penes Romanos stetit, quos tamen Poeni graviter vexabant.
5. Poeni enim rebus maritimis, quarum Romani imperiti fuerant, superiores erant.
6. Quinto autem anno Romani classem paraverunt, quā Poenos oppugnaverunt.
7. Magnam victoriam, quae Romanis gratissima fuit, reportavit consul Duilius.
8. Deinde Claudius, quem Romani consulem loco Duili creaverunt, ad Siciliam navigavit.

9. Verba stultissima, quibus Claudius consules priores culpavit, memoriae mandata sunt.
10. 'Illo die, quo hostium classem videbo, bello finem imponam.'
11. Dei, qui Romanis propitii fuerant, eum ob superbiam, quā irritati erant, crudeliter puniverunt.
12. Poeni enim, quos spes iam destituebat, magnam victoriam reportaverunt.



ROSTRAL COLUMN OF C. DULIUS AND
OBELISQUE FOUNTAIN.



THE RUINS OF CARTHAGE.

EXERCISE 23

*The Story of Carthage (Continued)**The Second Punic War (218–201 BC)*

1. Deinde Regulus, cui bellum mandatum erat, cum exercitu Romano in Africam navigavit.
2. Poeni autem, quibus Graeci auxilio erant, Romanos magna clade fugaverunt.
3. Pax, quam Foeni postulaverant, a Romanis est repudiata.
4. Tum Regulus, quem barbari omnibus suppliciis cruciaverant, crudeliter necatus est.
5. Pax, quam Poeni impetraverunt, duodeviginti annos servata est.
6. Erat autem in Hispaniā Saguntum oppidum cuius cives Poenorum potestatem timebant.
7. Mox Poeni, quorum dux Hannibal magnum exercitum comparaverat, hoc oppidum oppugnavit.

8. Quod ubi audiverunt Romani, bellum Poenis indixerunt.
9. Hannibal autem milites, quos in Hispaniā habebat, in Italiam per Alpes statim duxit.
10. Multis in proeliis, e quibus clades Cannensis Romanis gravissima fuit, Poeni victores fuerunt.

EXERCISE 24

The Story of Carthage (Concluded)

The Third Punic War (149–146 BC)

1. Anno belli quarto decimo Scipio, qui multa in Hispaniā bene gesserat, consul creatus est.
2. Is, cui Romani magnam fidem habebant, Poenorum exercitum profligavit.
3. Quā de clade ubi senatus Carthaginensis audivit, Hannibal ex Italiā revocatus est.
4. Scipio autem, cuius exercitus equitibus maxime valebat, iterum exercitum hostium in Africa fugavit.
5. Poeni pacem, quam postulaverant, duris condicionibus impetraverunt.
6. Paucos post annos Romani, quorum duces adhuc Poenos timebant, tertium bellum commoverunt.
7. Deinde Carthago, quae tres annos obsessa erat, expugnata est.
8. Aedificia et moenia quae decori et praesidio urbi fuerant deleta sunt.
9. Triumphum egit Scipio, cui etiam cognomen Africani datum est, quod eius avus antea habuerat.

10. Itaque Carthago, cuius potestate Romani territi erant, deleta et solo aequata est.

EXERCISE 25

INDICATIVE PASSIVE

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

Dialogue between a Greek and a Roman

ROMANUS: Si mihi de moribus Graecis narrabis, maxime delectabor. Ego quoque in studiis versor. Itaque erit mihi gratum, si disciplina puerorum Graecorum explicata erit.

GRAECUS: Roga: omnia explicabuntur.

ROMANUS: Quomodo autem tu educatus es?

GRAECUS: In Graeciā pueri et puellae ad septimum annum a matribus suis simul curantur.

ROMANUS: Ego quoque hoc modo educatus sum. Multi enim mores ex Graeciā in Italiam importati sunt.

GRAECUS: Tum pueri a puellis separantur. Servus fidus pueris praesidio et exemplo datur. Hic autem servus, qui paedagogus appellatur, pueros moribus bonis instituit.

ROMANUS: Ego quoque a servo severo curabar et docebar. Nunquam facta mea laudabantur sed semper culpabantur. Saepe a me ferula vix vitata est.

GRAECUS: Ad sextum decimum annum sic educatus et curatus sum. Tum mores mei satis emendati erant. Paedagogi igitur curā liberatus sum.

ROMANUS: Postquam prima elementa in ludo litterario memoriae mandata sunt, Vergili et Horati carmina recitabantur.

GRAECUS: Nos quoque Homeri carminibus ad patriae amorem incitamus, et fidibus cantare docemur.

ROMANUS: Quot horas in studiis quotidie versabar?

GRAECUS: Mane scripta antiqua recitabantur et explicabantur. Tum praescripta duas horas retractabantur.

ROMANUS: Nonne corpus etiam exercebatur?

GRAECUS: Primo in palaestrā, deinde in gymnasio corpus exercetur et firmatur. Sic enim mens sana in corpore sano paratur.

ROMANUS: Verbis tuis valde delector. Bene vale!

GRAMMAR

PASSIVE VOICE

(PRESENT SYSTEM, 3RD CONJUGATION)

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
<i>Sg.</i> 1.	reg- o-r	regē- ba-r	rega- r
2.	rege- ris	regē- bā-ris	regē- ris
3.	regi- tur	regē- bā-tur	regē- tur
<i>Pl.</i> 1.	regi- mur	regē- bā-mur	regē- mur
2.	regi- minī	regē- bā-minī	regē- minī
3.	regu- ntur	regē- bā-ntur	regē- ntur
	<i>I am ruled</i>	<i>I was being ruled</i>	<i>I shall be ruled</i>

EXERCISE 26

An Invitation to a Country House

- Curā et sollicitudine tuā ad amorem tui maiorem adducor.

2. Tu in urbe omnibus periculis cingeris et angeris.
3. Nos in villā nostrā ab omnibus negotiis abstrahimur.
4. Neque animus neque corpus neglegetur, si huc cursus dirigitur.
5. Undique montibus cingimur a ventis frigidis tegimur.
6. Currus saepe equis iungitur et per agros celeriter vehimur.
7. Fundus a servo meo antea male regebatur.
8. Nunc oranes res a me reguntur et administrantur.
9. Hic ab amicis veria defendēris et tegēris: in urbe ab inimicia cingeris.
10. Mora igitur non interponetur, si amore nostri adducēris.

GRAMMAR

THE DEFINITIVE PRONOUNS

īdem eadem idem, *the same*.

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Sg. Nom.</i>	īdem	eadem	idem
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem
<i>Gen.</i>	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

Pl. Nom.	īdem, eidem	eaedem	eadem
Acc.	eōsdem	easdem	eadem
Gen.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	isdem, eīsdem	isdem, eīsdem	isdem, eīsdem
Abl.	isdem, eīsdem	isdem, eīsdem	isdem, eīsdem

ipse ipsa ipsum, *himself, herself, itself*.

	M.	F.	N.
Sg. Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Gen.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō
Pl. Nom.	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Acc.	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsōs
Gen.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Abl.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

The definitive pronoun **ipse** is declined like **ille** except in the n. N.A. sg., which ends in **-um**.

The definitive pronoun **ipse ipsa ipsum**, *himself, herself, itself* must be distinguished from reflexive **sē**. The REFLEXIVE **sē**, which refers back to the subject of its clause, has no nominative. The DEFINITIVE (= emphatic) **ipse** may be used alone or with another noun or pronoun in all cases.

Se amat. *He loves himself.* **Ipse amat.** *He himself loves.*

Ipse se amat. *He himself loves himself.*

EXERCISE 27

Tribute to a Friend

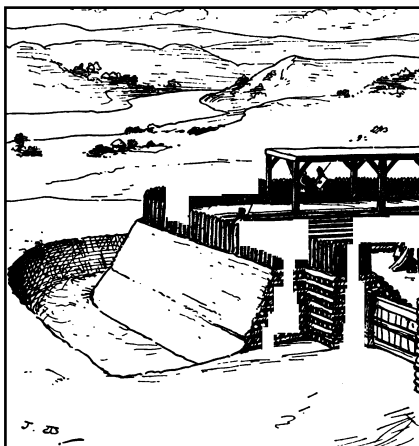
1. Una domus nobis erat, idem victus, isque communis.
2. Eadem studia erant nobis; eosdem libros legebamus.
3. Ego enim ipse cum eodem isto non invitus erravi.
4. Non omnes eadem sentimus, sed nihil audivi ex eo quod mihi ipsi molestum erat.
5. Eadem voluntates mihi erant quae illi ipsi fuerunt.
6. Idem vultus eademque frons in hac memoriā vivunt et semper vivent.
7. Ex omnibus istis rebus, quas natura ipsa mihi dedit, nihil cum amicitia eiusdem illius viri comparo.
8. Earundem rerum semper cupidi fuimus: unum et idem semper sentiebamus.
9. Nunquam ipse se laudabat, semper amicos suos honoribus cumulabat.
10. Mors omnibus hominibus una et eadem est. Quid autem amico fido carius esse potest?

GRAMMAR

PASSIVE VOICE

(PERFECT SYSTEM, 3RD CONJUGATION)

PERFECT: **rectus sum**, *I have been advised, I was advised.*PLUPERFECT: **rectus eram**, *I had been advised.*FUTURE PERFECT: **rectus ero**, *I shall have been advised.*



VALLUM AND FOSSA OF A FORTIFIED CAMP.
(FROM TRAJAN'S COLUMN.)

EXERCISE 28

Marius defeats the Teutons

1. Bellum a Teutonis populo Romano indictum erat.
2. Multa verba a Mario dicta, neque a Ronuuiis neglecta sunt.
3. 'Si imperium mihi traditum erit, bellum ad finem brevi perducetur.'
4. Tum Marius imperator electus est et copiae ex urbe ductae sunt.
5. Copiae in castris suis vallo et fossa tectae erant.
6. Tandem impetus saevus a barbaris in castra directus est.
7. Sed insidiae a Romanis post tergum barbarorum structae erant.

8. Itaque barbarorum acies iaculis et telis undique adflcta est.
9. Gens tota clade terribili destructa est.
10. Barbari enim a Romanis cincti et deleti sunt.
11. Dux Teutonorum in pugnā curru vectus erat.
12. Sed mox omnia neglecta sunt et rex ipse in fuga exstinctus est.

GRAMMAR

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

alter altera alterum, *one of two; the one, the other*. (The plural endings of **alter** are like those of **bonus**.)

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Sg. Nom.</i>	alter	alter- a	alter- um
<i>Acc.</i>	alter- um	alter- am	alter- um
<i>Gen.</i>	alter- ius	alter- ius	alter- ius
<i>Dat.</i>	alter- ī	alter- ī	alter- ī
<i>Abl.</i>	alter- o	alter- ā	alter- o

alius alia aliud, *one, another, (pl.) some, others*.

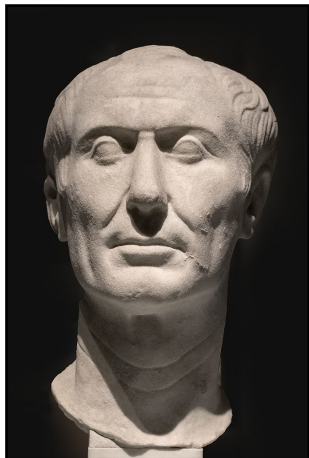
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Sg. Nom.</i>	ali- us	ali- a	ali- ud
<i>Acc.</i>	ali- um	ali- am	ali- ud
<i>Gen.</i>	ali- ius	ali- ius	ali- ius
<i>Dat.</i>	ali- ī	ali- ī	ali- ī
<i>Abl.</i>	ali- ō	ali- ā	ali- ō

Pl. Nom.	ali-ī	ali-ae	ali-a
Acc.	ali-ōs	ali-ās	ali-a
Gen.	ali-ōrum	ali-ārum	ali-ōrum
D.A.	ali-īs	ali-īs	ali-īs

alter can only refer to two people or parties, as **alter . . . alter**, *the one . . . the other*.

alius refers to any number of people. As — **Alii fosals, alii vallo, alii turribus castra muniebant**. *Some fortified the camp with ditches, others with a rampart, others with towers.*

alius repeated with a different case means *one another*: *some one . . . some another*. As — **Alius alio more vivit**. *Some men live in one way, some in another.*



CAESAR.



POMPEY.

EXERCISE 29

Caesar and Pompey

1. Erant Romanā in civitate duae factiones, quarum altera Caesaris causam, altera Pompei agebat.
2. Neque alter ex his ducibus alteri cedebat.
3. Romanonim alii alterum, alterum alii adiuvabant.
4. Alios divitiae, alios gloriae cupido ad arma incitabant.
5. Alterius ducis natura semper magna, alterius saepe turpissima erat.
6. In pugnā ad Pharsalum (id vico nomen fuit), legiones aliae in alia parte pugnabant.
7. Alius alii auxilium praebet: alius alio more pugnat.
8. In hac pugnā res aliae secundae, aliae adversae Caesari fuerunt.
9. Tandem Pompeius cum paucis aliis in navem properavit.
10. Mox duces, alter a sicariis in Aegypto, alter a civibus in urbe Romā, trucidati sunt.

GRAMMAR

PASSIVE VOICE

(PRESENT SYSTEM, 4TH CONJUGATION)

Like the third conjugation, the fourth conjugation future is again formed with by vowel change, not infixation.

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
<i>Sg.</i> 1.	audi- o-r	audiē- bā-r	audia- r
2.	audī- ris	audiē- bā-ris	audiē- ris
3.	audī- tur	audiē- bā-tur	audiē- tur
<i>Pl.</i> 1.	audī- mur	audiē- bā-mur	audiē- mur
2.	audī- minī	audiē- bā-minī	audiē- minī
3.	audi- u-ntur	audiē- bā-ntur	audiē- ntur
	<i>I am heard</i>	<i>I was being heard</i>	<i>I shall be heard</i>

EXERCISE 30

A Letter from a Roman in Britain, 54 BC

1. Bellum in hac terrā horridā et barbarā mox finietur.
2. Ego quotidie multis et magnis laboribus a scribendo impediōr.
3. Quomodo autem tu a promissis tuis impedis?
4. Hodie omne opus expeditur et mala mea finiuntur.
5. Nihil argenti in insulā reperitur.
6. Multi servi in castris custodiuntur, litteris autem Britannī male erudiuntur.
7. Nos semper lino aut lanis vestimur, sed barbari pellibus vestiuntur.
8. Nos frumento nutrimur: illi carne et lacte nutriuntur.
9. Aditus insulae magnis molibus muniebantur.
10. Insula his operibus ab incursionibus custodiebatur.
11. Ira mea tempore lenitur et mollitur.
12. Pax autem tecum non expeditur, nisi epistola mittetur.

GRAMMAR

PASSIVE VOICE

(PERFECT SYSTEM, 4TH CONJUGATION)

PERFECT: **auditus sum**, *I have been heard.*PLUPERFECT: **auditus eram**, *I had been heard.*FUTURE PERFECT: **auditus ero**, *I shall have been heard.*

EXERCISE 31

Defeat of Cassivellaunus, a British Chief

1. Cassivellauni oppidum silvis et paludibus monitum est.
2. Itaque Caesaris agmen undique impeditum erat.
3. Iter magno cum labore a Caesare expeditum est.
4. Locos naturā et opere munitus et impeditus est.
5. Militum labores victoriā magnā sunt finiti.
6. Caesaris ira hostium doloribus mollita et lenita est.
7. 'Nisi fraude impeditus ero, non puniemini.'
8. 'Si castra iterum munita erunt, poenas gravissimas dabit.'is.'
9. Strepitus feminarum et liberorum auditus est.
10. Sed bellum finitum, et res expedita est.

EXERCISE 32

Visit to a Roman House

AUGUSTUS: Cuius est haec domus?

CLAUDIUS: Quā de causā id rogas?

AUGUSTUS: Hāc nunquam domum splendidiorem vidi.

CLAUDIUS: Unus ex amicis meis hanc domum custodit. Pulsa!
Eam visemus.

CUSTOS: Quis adest?

CLAUDIUS: Claudius sum. Salve!

CUSTOS: Salve multum! Quam ob causam ades?

CLAUDIUS: Nonne huic meo comiti hanc domum aperies?

CUSTOS: Nonne eam iam saepe spectavisti?

CLAUDIUS: Ego iam eandem spectavi, sed hic meus amicus advena est.

CUSTOS: Morem ei libenter geram. Primum hoc est vestibulum. Spectate hanc portam splendidam!

CLAUDIUS: Quam bene figura canis in isto limine est picta!

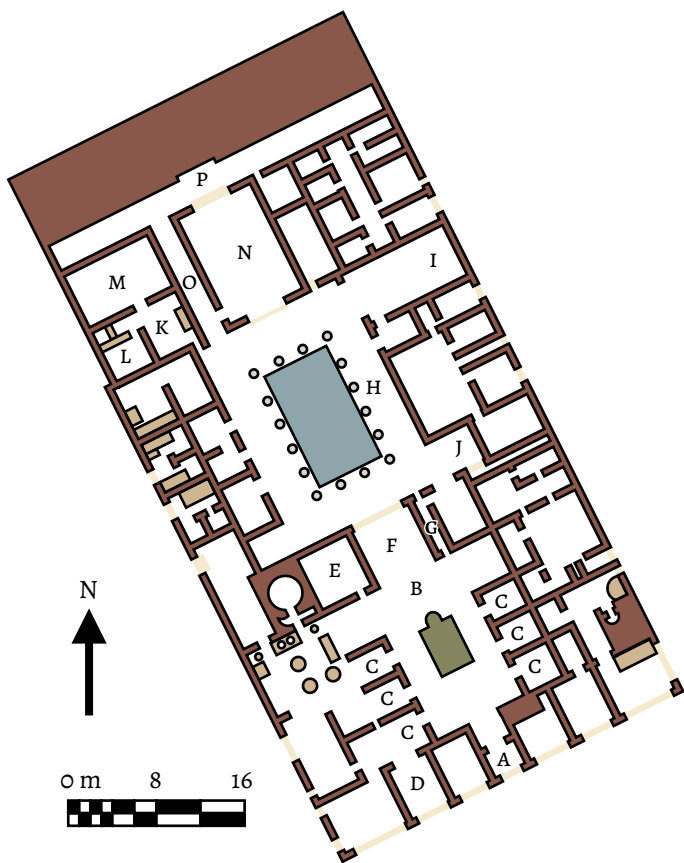
AUGUSTUS: Specta quoque haec verba, quibus mendici terrentur. — 'Cave canem!'

CUSTOS: Huic proximum est atrii ostium, quod servus ille semper custodit.

AUGUSTUS: Quam splendidum est illud atrium! Quam pulchris tabulis est ornatum!

CLAUDIUS: Quae autem sunt fabulae in his tabulis?

CUSTOS: In hāc tabulā Ulixes Polyphemum caecat, in iliā Aeneas in Italiam navigat.



GROUND PLAN OF THE HOUSE OF PANSA, POMPEII.

A. Fauces; B. Atrium, with a central Impluvium; C. Cubiculae; D. Shop; E. Oecus; F. Tablinum; G. Andron; H. Peristyle; I. Triclinium; J. Oecus; K. Kitchen; L. Second Service Area; M. Paved Yard; N. Exedra; O. Corridor; Q. Veranda; P. Garden.

EXERCISE 33

PRONOUNS

Visit to a Roman House (Continued)

CUSTOS: Hoc spatium apertum in medio atrio est impluvium.

CLAUDIUS: Quam bene signis et columnis cinctum et oratum est!

CUSTOS: Hoc cubiculum in dextrā est domino proprium. Illud est tabulinum, ubi negotium a domino administratur.

CLAUDIUS: Quid pulchrius esse potest illo solo marmoreo?

CUSTOS: Per has fauces in peristylum intrabimus, quod columnis marmoreis est cinctum. In medio est piscina; in dextā est triclinium.

CLAUDIUS: Quae fenestrae splendidae! Qui colores! Quae signa! Quid uarrat caecos ille?

CUSTOS: Ille est Homerus, qui Helenae dicit, 'Quae male tu egisti, ego bene cantavi.'

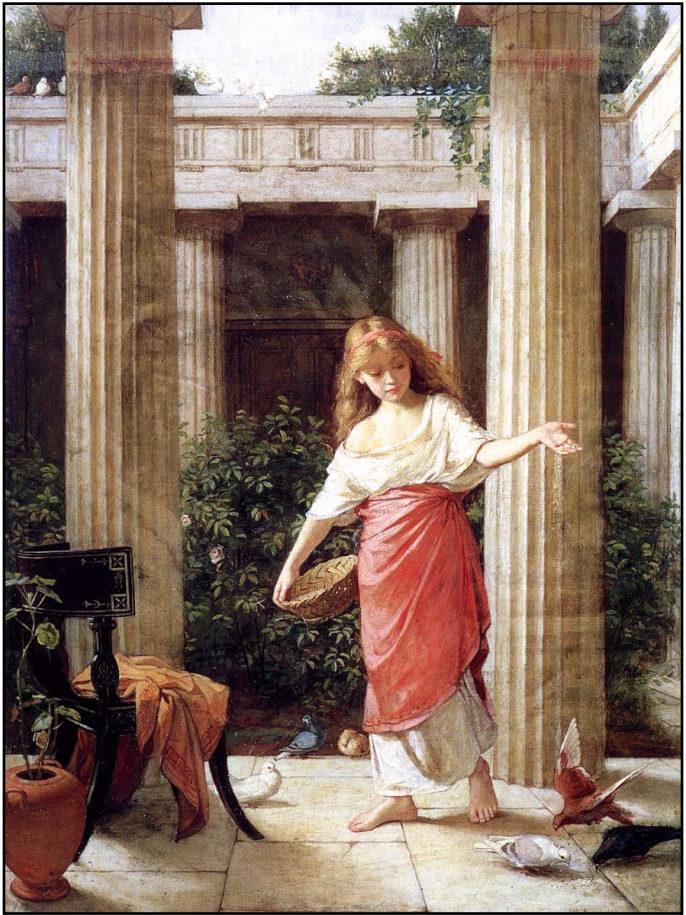
AUGUSTUS: Ecce color harum fenestrarum! Quo spectant illae fenestrae?

CUSTOS: Hae in hortum, illae in viam. Iam omnia vidisti. Hoc est posticum.

AUGUSTUS: Tibi maximas gratias ago. Vale.

CUSTOS: Bene valete et vivite!

CLAUDIUS: Quod huic par est spectaculum?



IN THE PERISTYLE.

GRAMMAR

IRREGULAR VERBS **volō**, **nolō**, AND **malo**

INDICATIVE PRESENT

<i>Sg.</i>	1.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	2.	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	3.	vult	nōn vult	māvult
<i>Pl.</i>	1.	volumus	nolumus	mālumus
	2.	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	3.	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt

IMPERFECT

volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam, etc.
---------	---------	---------------

FUTURE

volam	nōlam	mālam
volēs	nōlēs	mālēs, etc.

PERFECT

voluī	nōluī	māluī, etc.
-------	-------	-------------

The three verbs **uolō uelle uolui**, *be willing, want*; **nolō nolle nolui**, *be unwilling, not want*; and **malo malle malui**, *wish rather, prefer* are very common. **Nolō** is a compound of **ne** and **volō**; **malo** of **magis**, *more* and **volō**. Only **nolō** has an imperative.

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

Present

<i>Sg.</i>	2.	nōlī
<i>Pl.</i>	2.	nōlīte

PROLATIVE INFINITIVE. These three verbs, like other verbs of wishing, are often followed by an infinitive to carry on the sense and complete the sentence; as — **Volo ire**, *I wish to go*.

PROHIBITION. The imperative **noli** followed by a present infinitive is the usual way of expressing a prohibition; as — **Noli putare**, *Do not think*.

EXERCISE 34

Inauguration of the Australian Commonwealth, AD 1901

BRITANNUS 1: In Australiam navigare volumus. Nonne tu nobiscum venire vis?

BRITANNUS 2: Eadem, quae tu vis, ego volo; sed frustra.

BRITANNUS 1: Si fortuna volet, et ipse voles, cur venire noles?

BRITANNUS 2: Eas regiones videre semper volui, sed uxor mea nonvult.

BRITANNUS 1: Nonne iudicio tuo quam aliorum stare mavis? Nolent, ubi voles; ubi noles, volent.

BRITANNUS 2: Noli hoc putare; Australiam enim uxor non visere noluit, sed Canadam videre vult.

BRITANNUS 1: Sed vir et uxor, si in amicitia manere volent, semper idem volent et idem nolent.

BRITANNUS 2: Ego tamen servire quam pugnare malo. Non iam eadem senex vult quae puer voluit.

BRITANNUS 1: Rem seriam tecum agere volo. Si proximo anno in Canadam navigare volueris, nonne hoc anno uxor tua Australiam visere volet?

BRITANNUS 2: Cur autem Australiam hoc anno quam proximo videre mavis?

BRITANNUS 1: Quia hoc anno cives omnium civitatum in Australiā foedus et societatem iungunt. Exordium reipublicae videre volumus.

BRITANNUS 2: Ego quoque adesse volam. Adero, si potero.

BRITANNUS 1: Si volueris, gratias tibi agam. Si nolueris veniam nunquam impetrabis. Noli spem destituere!

GRAMMAR

THE VERB **eō ire ii itum**, *go* AND ITS COMPOUNDS

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
<i>Sg.</i> 1.	eō	ī-ba-m	ī-bo
2.	īs	ī-ba-s	ī-bis
3.	it	ī-ba-t	ī-bit
<i>Pl.</i> 1.	īmus	ī-ba-mus	ī-bimus
2.	ītis	ī-ba-tis	ī-bitis
3.	eunt	ī-ba-nt	ī-bunt

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

Sg. 2. ī

Pl. 2. īte

The perfect stem **ii** is conjugated regularly, but in the simple verb a longer form, **īvi**, is sometimes found.

GRAMMAR

THE LOCATIVE CASE

RULES OF PLACE. With names of towns or small islands, *From where? To where?* and *Where?* is expressed by case, not preposition.

To *where?* is expressed by the accusative of goal; as — **Romam**, to Rome; **Baias**, to *Baiae*; **Brundisium**, to *Brundisium*; **Puteolos**, to *Puteoli*; **Neapolim**, to *Naples*; **Gades**, to *Gades*.

From *where?* is expressed by the ablative of starting point; as — **Romā**, from *Rome*; **Baiis**, from *Baiae*; **Carthagine**, from *Carthage*; **Puteolis**, from *Puteoli*.

Where? is expressed by a third, almost extinct, LOCATIVE CASE, which exhibits the following inflections.

<i>Declension</i>	<i>Dictionary Entry</i>	<i>Locative Form</i>
<i>First</i>	Rōma -ae f.sg.	Rōm- ae
	Athēnae -ārum f.pl.	Athēn- īs
<i>Second</i>	Ephesus -ī f.sg.	Ephes- ī
	Philippī -ōrum m.pl.	Philipp- īs
	Nōricum -ī n.sg.	Nōric- ī
	Leuctra -ōrum n.pl.	Leuctr- īs
<i>Third</i>	Carthāgō -ginis f.sg.	Carthāgin- ī
	Sardīs Sardium f.pl.	Sard- ibus

The loc. pl. was already identical to the dat./abl. pl. even in Old Latin. In Classical Latin, changes to the Old Latin diphthongs caused the originally-distinctive ending of the locative singular to become indistinguishable from the endings of the genitive (in the first and second declensions).

<i>Declension</i>	<i>Old Latin</i>	<i>Classical Latin</i>	<i>Merger</i>
<i>First</i>	-āi	-ae	gen./dat.
<i>Second</i>	-ei	-ī	gen.
<i>Third</i>	-ei, -e	-ī, -e	dat., later, abl.

There are a handful of common nouns that may be used adverbially in the same cases.

Acc.	Abl.	Loc.
domum , <i>homewards</i>	domo , <i>from home</i>	domi , <i>at home</i>
rus , <i>to the country</i>	rure , <i>from the country</i>	ruri , <i>in the country</i>

Note also **humī**, **bellī**, and **mīlitiae**, and the combinations **domī mīlitiaeque**, **bellī domīque**, *in peace and in war, at home and in the field*; **rūrī**, *in the country*.



THE BAY OF NAPLES, SEEN THROUGH A GROTTO.

EXERCISE 35

A Journey from Brundisium to Rome

MARCUS: Salve! Quando Brundisio Romam rediisti?

QUINTUS: Abhinc tres dies. Totum annum Brundisi fui.

MARCUS: Ego Romae totam aestatem fui. Quid narras de itinere tuo?

QUINTUS: Brundisio Neapolim equo vectus sum. Deinde Neapoli Romam feliciter navigavi.

MARCUS: Quando Brundisium Romam redibis?

QUINTUS: Ubi frater meus Carthagine redierit, statim iter inibimus.

MARCUS: Quo autem ibis? Num illuc redibis, unde abiisti?

QUINTUS: Non statim Brundisium redibimus. Paulisper Baiis manebimus.

MARCUS: Multos abhinc amios Neapoli habitabam. Quomodo res ibi et Puteolis nunc se habent?

QUINTUS: Nunquam Neapolim ivimus. Locus turbulentus est et Graecis plenus. Baiis autem et Puteolis est vita semper iucunda et tranquilla.

MARCUS: Nihil de itinere tuo narravisti.

QUINTUS: Necesse est domum redire. Cras, si in thermas adibis, omnia tibi narrabo.

MARCUS: Domi ad sextam horam ero. Tum in thermas prodibo. I domum et vale!

EXERCISE 36

A Journey from Brundisium to Rome (Continued)

MARCUS: Salve! Ad tempus venisti.

QUINTUS: Quot homines ineunt et exeunt! Qui strepitus est!

MARCUS: Multi domum mox redibunt. Locus iam nobis est.

QUINTUS: Magnopere gaudeo quod rure redii. Quomodo res domi se habent?

MARCUS: Bene se habent. Quid autem ruri agebas?

QUINTUS: Brundisi (id quod tibi iam notum est) diu fueram.

Domī erat Caesar, amicus meus, quocum habitabam.

Necesse erat negoti causā Romam adire.

MARCUS: Nonne Brundisio cum Gaio exiisti?

QUINTUS: Unā cum Gaio Beneventum properavi. Imber in itinere toto semper gravis et molestus erat.

MARCUS: Ego Beneventi diu habitabam. Panis ater est et durus semper.

QUINTUS: Benevento Capuam pedibus iimus. Capuae caupo noster, dum cenam parat, tectum paene incendit.

MARCUS: Abi, ludis me. Tu, qui Romā severus abiisti, iocosus domum redis.

QUINTUS: Melius est incendium quam cena frigida.

MARCUS: Quomodo Neapolim Capua adiisti?

QUINTUS: Tres dies Pompeiis egi. Hinc viā pulcherrimā Baias adii. Amicus meus Puteolis manet. Ego Baiis navem conscendi et feliciter Bomam redii.

GRAMMAR

THE MIXED CONJUGATION

Model: **capiō capere cēpī captum**, *take, seize*.

PRESENT

	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
<i>Sg.</i> 1.	capi- ō	capi- o-r
2.	capi- s	cape- ris
3.	capi- t	capi- tur
<i>Pl.</i> 1.	capi- mus	capi- mur
2.	capi- tis	capi- mini
3.	capiu- nt	capi- u-tur

IMPERFECT

capiē-**ba-m**, etc. capiē-**ba-r**, etc.

FUTURE

capi- am	capia- r
capi- ēs , etc.	capiē- ris

PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

<i>Sg.</i>	2.	cap- e , <i>take thou</i>
<i>Pl.</i>	2.	capi- te , <i>take ye</i>

The mixed conjugation stem ending **-ie-** is weakened to **i** before **m**, **s**, and **t** in all tenses of the present system except the future. Otherwise, the mixed conjugation follows the inflection of **rego**.

EXERCISE 37

The Carthaginians Invade Italy

1. Dum Poeni in Italiam iter faciunt, magnus terror Romanos capiebat.
2. Tandem Hannibal exercitum suum Alpes traicit et locum castris aptum capit.
3. Mox multae et magnae clades a Romanis accipiuntur; cives omni spe salutis deiciuntur.
4. Hannibal Romam iter non faciebat sed apud vicum Cannas locum castris aptum rapiebat.
5. Subito Romani in castra Poenorum impetum faciunt.
6. Romani autem maximam cladem accipiunt et undique fugiunt.
7. Consul a militibus in fugā rapitur; frustra verba facit:
8. 'Quo fugitis, milites? Quo me rapietis?'

9. 'Nisi arma capietis et impetum in hostes facietis, magna clades accipietur.'
10. Poeni quattuor milia Romanorum capiunt, magnam praedam faciunt.



ELEPHANTI HANNIBALIS.

GRAMMAR

DEPONENT VERBS

Deponent verbs are passive in form (that is, they are conjugated like passives), but are active in meaning, and most of them are transitive.

Deponent verbs only have three principal parts: the present indicative (formed like a passive), the present infinitive (formed like a passive), and the perfect participle.

First Conjugation **imitor imitārī imitātus**, *imitate*

Second Conjugation **mereor merērī meritus**, *deserve*

Third Conjugation **ūtor ūtī ūsus**, *use*

Mixed Conjugation **patior patī passus**, *suffer*

Fourth Conjugation **largior largīrī largītus**, *bestow*

Examples:

1. **imitor**, *I imitate* (but **amor**, *I am loved*);
2. **merebamur**, *we were deserving* (but **monebamur**, *we were being warned*);
3. **usus es**, *you used* (but **rectus es**, *you were ruled*);
4. **largientur**, *they will bestow* (but **audientur**, *they will be heard*).

EXERCISE 37

The Death of Queen Victoria (January 22, 1901)

Regina nostra, postquam sexaginta tres annos imperium maximum optime moderata est, plena annis, plena honoribus mortua est.

O triste funus! Sed, quamquam unus dies tot spes, tot gaudia frustratus est, nos eius exemplum imitari conabimur. Nam si Deus non tam precibus quam probitate et virtute laetatur, nonne regina his rebus summos honores merita est?

Semper ilium triumphum recordabimur, ubi tot reges principesque reginam nostram ad templum Dei comitati sunt. Gloria autem virtutem sequitur: gloria probitatem comitatur et semper comitabitur. Omnes igitur boni reginae probitatem aemulabuntur; omnes virtutem non solum admirabuntur sed etiam imitabuntur. Non enim pro se sed pro populo semper nitebatur domina nostra, et cum civibus suis omnes dolores, gaudia omnia partiebiatur.

Ab his initiis amor noster proficiscitur; has ob causas reginam beatam veneramur. Nos etiam, quia illius praeclarum praeceptum sequi et imitari semper studebimus, diem, quo mortua est, summā religione venerabimur.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES

EXERCISE 39

Cyclops complains to his father Neptune about Ulysses

CYCLOPS: Pater, da mihi auxilium! Magno dolore compleor, quia ab hospite improbo male tractatus sum.

NEPTUNE: Quomodo autem hoc scelus paratum est?

CYCLOPS: Vinum validum mihi datum erat. Tum somno gravi oppressus, a barbaro superatus et caecatus sum.

NEPTUNE: Si alios contempseris, ab aliis contemnēris. Nonne te ipsum defendere potuisti?

CYCLOPS: Dolus a barbaro adhibitus est. Consilia callida callidis verbis tecta erant. Omnia a me sunt neglecta.

NEPTUNE: Multa semper ignorabis, nisi exemplo meo doceberis. Dic mihi! A quo hoc facinus commissum est?

CYCLOPS: Navis barbara ad insulam meam ventis adversis pulsa est cuius magistro nomen erat Nemo. Postea autem, dum ex portu exit. Nemo ab amicis suis Ulixes appellabatur.

NEPTUNE: Iste Graecus mihi notus est. Multos annos circa moenia Troiana pugnavit. Idem iam multos annos oceanum pererrat. Delectabor si de consilio callido me certiores faceris.

EXERCISE 40

Complaint of Cyclops (Continued)

CYCLOPS: Postquam oves meae ex agris in speluncam reductae sunt, ignis a me accendebatur. Tum barbari in ultimā speluncā conspecti sunt. Alii aliā in parte se celare conabantur. Statim duo Graeci a me raptati et devorati sunt.

NEPTUNE: Ut rexeris, ita regēris. Quomodo autem ceteri Graeci e spelunca fugerunt?

CYCLOPS: Ubi Nemo vinum dulce mihi dedit, somno gravi statim oppressus sum. Dum somno vincior, oculus mihi ereptus est.

NEPTUNE: Eheu! Quam graviter somno oppressus es, fili! Mirum est quod e somno non excitatus es. Cur autem comites tui subsidio non venerunt?

CYCLOPS: Nempe clamoribus meis excitati sunt. Tum me rogaverunt: 'A quo oppugnaris?' 'Nemo me oppugnat,' ego responsum dedi. Sic a comitibus furore plenis desertus sum.

NEPTUNE: Bono animo es, fili! Antequam Ulixes in Graeciam venerit, maximas poenas tibi dabit.

English Exercises

*[The subjects of these Exercises are number for number
the same as in the Latin Exercises.]*

1.

CARDINAL NUMBERS

1. The Romans used to have many gods, we have one God.
2. The world is the work of one God, not of many.
3. Nature gives to one man two feet, two hands, and two knees.
4. To one man there is one head, but to Cerberus there were three heads.
5. The three Graces or goddesses of beauty were dear to the Greek poets.
6. Spring, summer, autumn, and winter are the four seasons of one year.
7. A man has five senses of the body.
8. Six days out of seven are sacred to work.
9. Out of seven days, one day is sacred to God.
10. Rome had seven kings and seven hills.

2.

1. One year has twelve months and four seasons.
2. The Roman year used to have ten months.
3. After the seven kings, consuls ruled Rome.
4. An old woman brought nine books to [ad] the king.
5. The woman burned six books out of the nine.

6. Then the king saved three books at a great price [abl.].
7. The sailors of one ship overcame twelve ships of the enemy.
8. Ten legions of Caesar's army put to flight the Gauls.
9. Solon was one out of the seven wise men of Greece.
10. The Greek army fought against the Trojans for ten years.

3.

ORDINAL NUMBERS

The Months of the Year

1. The first month of the year has its name (ā) from the god Janus.
2. On the first day of the first month of the year, the Romans used to sacrifice to Janus.
3. Among the Romans, February was formerly the last month of the year; now it is the second month.
4. March was formerly the first month; now, it is the third month.
5. Mars, the father of the Roman people, gives his name to the third month.
6. Julius Caesar called the seventh month by his own name.
7. Augustus, the first emperor of the Romans, changed the name of the eighth month.
8. When [ubi] March was the first month of the year, then September was the seventh.
9. October was the eighth month, November the ninth [month], December the tenth of the Roman year.

10. December, the twelfth month, no longer has a suitable name.

4.

CARDINAL AND ORDINAL NUMBERS

Seven Wonders of the World

1. The tomb of the Egyptian king was four hundred feet high and seven hundred feet broad.
2. One hundred thousand slaves prepared the tomb.
3. The tomb of Mausolus was one hundred and forty feet high.
4. A chariot, fifty-two feet high, adorned the monument.
5. One hundred and thirty columns adorned the temple of Diana.
6. The temple was one hundred and twenty feet high.
7. A statue of Apollo, one hundred and twenty-one feet high, adorned the entrance of the harbour.
8. An immense statue of Jupiter used to stand in the Olympian temple.
9. The famous statue was the work of Phidias.
10. The tombs of Egypt alone remain out of the seven wonders.

5.

1. The Roman people were under kings during two hundred and forty-four years.
2. In the battle of Cannae [adj.] the Carthaginians killed fifteen thousand Romans.

3. In the Persian war Xerxes sailed to Greece with twelve hundred ships.
4. The land forces were seven hundred thousand infantrymen and forty thousand cavalrymen.
5. Nine thousand Athenians defeated a hundred thousand infantrymen and ten thousand cavalrymen in the battle of Marathon [adj.].
6. The plain of Marathon is distant ten thousand paces from the town.
7. At [apud] Plataea a few Greeks routed two hundred thousand infantrymen and twenty thousand cavalrymen.
8. Alexander led into Asia thirty thousand infantrymen and four thousand five hundred cavalrymen.

6.

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE

A Few Proverbs

1. It is pleasant to have many friends.
2. No one is able to avoid death.
3. It is dangerous to attack an enemy without arms.
4. It is disgraceful to overcome an adversary by fraud.
5. If it shall be necessary to hasten flight in war, it will be useful to exercise the feet before the battle.
6. We are all able to fight for our country.
7. It is pleasant in summer to lie under a tree.
8. It is difficult to rule bad boys.

9. All good citizens are able to keep the laws of their country.
10. All men are able to speak: you are not all able to listen.

7.

A Few More Proverbs

1. It is the nature of boys to love games and to avoid work.
2. It is difficult to keep everything in memory.
3. It is the nature of sailors to love the sea; it is the duty of farmers to plough the fields.
4. It is the duty of good citizens to keep the laws of the republic.
5. It is the duty of a father to punish and to train his boys.
6. It is the nature of barbarians to destroy temples.
7. You will not be able to be present unless I shall have been able to lend you help.
8. All have been able to blame, few will be able to praise you.
9. It is never useful to sin; it is always easy to err.
10. To fight is not sufficient: it is necessary always to gain the victory.

7.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Socrates

1. We have already heard about Socrates, the most famous philosopher and most prudent man.

2. The integrity of his most honourable life was rather well known [comp.] to all the Athenians.
3. The most excellent citizen and most learned philosopher was not more eager of money than of glory.
4. Socrates, the wisest of all the Athenians, spent a most holy life.
5. He was worthy of the most ample honours, but the citizens punished the most innocent hero with a most disgraceful death.
6. No one ever awaited death with a firmer mind.
7. Few speeches are more celebrated than the last speech of the philosopher.
8. To his friends he was most pleasant, to all tyrants most hostile.
9. Nothing is more excellent, nothing firmer than the example of the most honourable philosopher.
10. The tyrants never devised a baser crime than the death [abl.] of Socrates.

9.

PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

Dialogue at a Banquet

GUEST 1: Hasten your course! We shall never be present in time.

GUEST 2: Take care, my friends! We have wandered from the way.

GUEST 1: Come hither, boys. Show us the way to the temple of Vesta.

BOY 1: Direct your course through the gardens of Caesar! Then bend to the left. If you shall then be uncertain, ask again.

GUEST 2: Be thou our guide; lead us and show us the way! There will be a reward for thee.

GUEST 1: Lead us to the temple! Lend aid to us!

[The boys lead the guests to the temple.]

BOY 2: Behold the temple of Vesta! Farewell!

GUEST 2: Stay a little! Give me thy hand! Take [hold] thy reward!

BOY 1: Keep thy money! The work is not worthy of a reward.

GUEST 2: We are grateful to thee. Farewell all!

GUEST 1: Call the slave! Knock at the door!

10.

PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE (CONTINUED)

GUEST 1: Give pardon to us, if we have arrived late. We wandered from the way.

HOST: Good day, friends! Give your cloaks to the slave.

GUEST 2: Take care, boy! Hold my cloak with care.

HOST: Lead us to the triclinium! The way is known to you!

GUEST 3: Look, my friend, at the beautiful pictures!

GUEST 4: Relate to me your story!

HOST: Keep the tale and tell [it] at dessert! Come! Choose your couches! Recline, my friends! Take away the sandals, slaves!

GUEST 1: Recline near me and delight me with your witty conversation!

HOST: Bring, slaves, olives and chestnuts!

GUEST 2: Enough of fruit. Mix and give me a goblet!

HOST: Fill up the goblets with wine! Give us the sandals, slaves!
Remove the table!

11.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Alexander the Great

1. No one out of all the Greeks was greater or braver than Alexander.
2. In greater and in smaller matters he always showed very great zeal.
3. He looked after the greatest matters, and did not neglect the smallest affairs.
4. The king always thought nature a better guide than very many men.
5. He won more victories by courage and strategy than by the number of his soldiers.
6. The king was greater and more distinguished in the arts of war than of peace.
7. The mind of the king was always preparing greater and better designs.
8. The soldiers thought the anger of Alexander a greater punishment than death.
9. If Alexander was very inclined to anger, he was more inclined to sorrow.
10. And so the death of Clitus was a source of very great grief [dat.] to Alexander.

12.

PASSIVE VOICE

(PERFECT SYSTEM, 1ST CONJUGATION)

A General Exhorts his Troops

1. After an unsuccessful battle the soldiers are called together by the general.
2. The timid legions are thus urged on to the fight.
3. 'Why, my friends, are we so disturbed by our disaster?'
4. 'Our fields are being laid waste by the enemy; our towns are being attacked.'
5. 'The barbarians will soon be overcome and put to flight by you.'
6. 'I am neither disturbed by the number nor am I distressed by the courage of the enemy.'
7. 'But I shall be tortured with very great grief, if we shall again be routed.'
8. 'The city will never be stormed, if your courage shall be aroused by my words.'
9. 'A victory will be gained: we shall be loaded with many honours by the citizens.'
10. 'Courage is demanded: courage will not be expected in vain.'

13.

IMPERFECT TENSE

Frugality in Ancient Rome

1. Honest customs were preserved for a long time by the ancient Romans.

2. The boys were educated according to [ad] strict rules.
3. Frugality was praised; luxury was condemned by the masters.
4. The minds of the pupils were urged on thus by good advice.
5. 'If the example of your fathers shall be kept, you will be loaded with honours.'
6. 'Your fathers were educated thus: the good examples will be kept by you.'
7. 'They were loved and praised by all good men.'
8. 'You will be loved by many, if a good example shall be set [given] by you.'
9. 'If the old customs shall be changed, the republic will not be strengthened.'
10. But the words of the leaders were avoided; the customs were changed.

14.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

Alexander in Asia

1. When those affairs were reported, Alexander called together his generals.
2. Then with fierce words he urged on their minds to battle.
3. 'You have overcome the enemy and stormed their camp.'
4. 'You have defeated them in battle; you have routed their cavalry.'

5. 'But you have overcome neither their spirit nor their courage.'
6. 'Many brave men have been killed, but more are awaiting us.'
7. 'You have laid waste their fields: you have driven them from their towns.'
8. 'But those disasters are neither a hindrance nor care to them.'
9. 'They are fighting for their country and their altars: you have not yet frightened them.'
10. 'Prepare yourselves for battle: we will gain a final victory over [ab] them.'

15.

THE PERFECT SYSTEM

Frugality in Ancient Rome: Cincinnatus, Curius, and Fabricius

1. The sons of Brutus were condemned to death by their own father.
2. Camillus and Fabricius had been tempted in vain with money by the enemy.
3. A rustic life was loved by Camillus; luxury had been avoided by him.
4. The simple hero was called from the plough to the dictatorship.
5. The state had been saved; the enemy had been routed.
6. But the humble life was not changed.
7. A rustic life was valued more highly than riches.

8. By their good examples we have been urged on to a noble life.
9. But we were surpassed by the ancients in frugality and virtue.
10. If our customs shall be changed, their example will not have been praised in vain.

16.

THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE
WITH ADVERBS OR NEUTER ADJECTIVES

The Decline of Roman Morals

1. Before the Carthaginian war, the Romans had much moderation and little avarice.
2. Then all the leaders desired more wealth and exercised less virtue.
3. Soon there was much authority in the hands of the senators, little in the hands of the consuls.
4. And so the republic had not sufficient strength.
5. The citizens wanted very much pleasure, the senators very much riches.
6. And so the magistrates gave much corn and games to the citizens without payment.
7. Soon the senators had much power, the consuls had no authority.
8. Everywhere there was too much plotting, too little honesty and virtue.
9. At last there was no honesty, no frugality in the city of Rome.

10. The republic, because it had not sufficient protection, was overcome by its enemies.

17.

ACTIVE AND PASSIVE TENSES

Dialogue between the Ghosts of Xerxes and Leonidas

XERXES: A great honour has been given to you by me.

LEONIDAS: Neither glory nor honour is desired by me.

XERXES: Thou alone shall be appointed attendant of the Great King.

LEONIDAS: I do not desire the honour. I am tortured with grief, because I have not avoided thee by my death.

XERXES: What! How shall the Great King be compared with the leader of a few robbers?

LEONIDAS: Not by courage but by number didst thou overcome us.

XERXES: Was not the sea laden with my ships, the land filled by my soldiers?

LEONIDAS: We were only overcome because we were tired by slaughter.

XERXES: I shall always be tortured with grief, because your country was not laid waste by me.

LEONIDAS: Neither by your insults nor by your praise shall I be excited. Minos, the judge of the dead, awaits you; farewell.

18.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

Philip and Alexander

1. The great and famous [Magnus ille] Alexander surpassed his father Philip both in virtue and in vices.
2. The citizens obeyed the former through love, the latter through fear.
3. The plans of the former were more prudent, the mind of the latter more splendid.
4. Rage was often concealed by the latter, never by the former.
5. And so that sad death of the faithful Clitus is an object of disgrace to the former.
6. By these arts the father prepared a mighty kingdom; by those plans the son finished the glory of that work.
7. Yet the deeds of these kings were not a means of safety [pred. dat.] to their state.
8. The former was overcome by the sword of the assassin, the latter by the vices of youth.
9. Those words also of the famous orator are worthy of recollection:
10. 'The former was always Great, the latter often most base.'

18.

SECOND CONJUGATION, PRESENT SYSTEM

Dialogue Between the Ghosts of Achilles and Homer

ACHILLES. My mind is filled with joy, because a splendid tale is provided for you by my deeds.

HOMER: Thanks will be due to Ulysses more than to you.

ACHILLES: What! Is not more praise due to my courage than to his cunning?

HOMER: The fame of my songs will be increased more by the deeds of the wise Ulysses than the fierce Achilles.

ACHILLES: Ungrateful poet, you are moved by vain anger.

HOMER: I shall not be frightened by the anger of a shade. No longer is a sword held by your right hand!

ACHILLES: Your fame is due to me – but now I am attacked by ungrateful words.

HOMER: You are filled with pride and will not be taught by good advice.

ACHILLES: Formerly the Trojans were terrified by my deeds. Now I am not feared by an ungrateful poet.

HOMER: If my poems shall be destroyed, your name will no longer be held in memory.

ACHILLES: In vain you wilt be advised by my words: soon you will be taught by hard example.

20.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

Dialogue Between Alexander the Great and a Scythian Chief

SCYTHIAN: On account of what reasons wilt thou approach our country with an army?

ALEXANDER: What barbarian attacks me with these words? To what tribes is the name of Alexander not known?

SCYTHIAN: On what terms will you grant peace to us? To whom is not his country most dear?

ALEXANDER: With what gifts wilt thou appease my soldiers? To whom will Alexander refuse friendship?

SCYTHIAN: What friendship can there be between Greeks and Scythians?

ALEXANDER: To what tribes have I not given fair terms? What examples dost thou fear?

SCYTHIAN: With what victories wilt thou be content? Of what lands art thou not covetous?

ALEXANDER: What better friend is there than Alexander?

SCYTHIAN: What greater robber have we ever beheld?

ALEXANDER: What cities have I not stormed? Who will attack Alexander?

SCYTHIAN: Farewell. Fortune will help the better cause.

20.

SECOND CONJUGATION, PRESENT SYSTEM

Battle of Cannae, 216 BC

1. The Romans were terrified with fear, for two armies had been destroyed by the Carthaginians.

2. The citizens were scarcely prevented from flight.
3. All were deterred by fear from good counsels.
4. Confidence was no longer placed [habeo] in the generals [dat.].
5. The courage of the soldiers was destroyed by disasters.
6. Then Hannibal was advised with fierce words.
7. 'The city will soon be destroyed, if the fortifications shall be at once besieged.'
8. 'With difficulty have the Roman soldiers been deterred from flight.'
9. But Hannibal was held back by vain fear.
10. In vain he was warned; the legions were kept [habeo] in camp; the walls were not besieged.

22.

RELATIVE PRONOUN

The First Punic War (264–241 BC)

1. The Tyrians, who lived in Asia, settled colonies in many places.
2. Out of those colonies which the Tyrians settled in Africa, Carthage was most famous.
3. The Carthaginians, whose fleet was very large, soon crossed over to Sicily.
4. Soon the Roman people brought about a war, which was destructive to the Carthaginians.
5. In Sicily the Romans, whose army was very powerful, overcame the Carthaginians.

6. But at sea, the Carthaginian fleet (in which the barbarians were superior) was victorious.
7. At last the Romans built many ships, with which they attacked the barbarians.
8. At first the consul, who was leading the fleet, gained a great victory.
9. But soon the general, whom the Romans appointed in his place, was severely defeated.
10. Then the Romans, whose courage was tired but not overcome, prepared a new fleet.

23.

The Second Punic War (218–201 BC)

1. Out of all the wars which the Roman people ever waged, the Second Punic War is most worthy of mention.
2. Hannibal, whom the Carthaginians elected general, led the army with great boldness.
3. Soon he led the forces which he had with him in Spain through the Alps into Italy.
4. Scipio, who was awaiting the arrival of Hannibal, prepared his forces for battle.
5. But the enemy, who were superior in cavalry, easily defeated the consul.
6. The Romans, whom many disasters seriously frightened, elected a dictator.
7. But his plans, which had been most expedient, did not please the people.

8. And so the consuls, to whom large forces had been given, attacked the Carthaginian camp.
9. In the Battle of Cannae, of which we have already heard, the Romans were overcome and routed.
10. At last Hannibal, whose soldiers were worn out by many labours, sailed for Africa.

24.

RELATIVE PRONOUN

The Third Punic War (149–146 BC)

1. After many years the Romans, who still feared the Carthaginians, renewed the war.
2. Ambassadors whom the senate sent to Africa rejected the terms of peace.
3. Then the senate declared war on the Carthaginians, whose army was no longer a match for the Romans.
4. At length Carthage, which had been besieged for three years, was stormed.
5. The buildings which the citizens had raised with great pride were levelled to the ground.
6. Scipio, whose grandfather had been defeated by Hannibal, destroyed the town.
7. The Romans gave to the conqueror the cognomen which his grandfather had had.
8. And so the Carthaginians, with whom the Romans had waged war for a hundred and twenty years, were overcome and blotted out.

25.

INDICATIVE PASSIVE

FIRST & SECOND CONJUGATIONS

Dialogue between a Greek and a Roman

GREEK: How are boys educated in your native land?

ROMAN: First we are taught in an elementary school.

GREEK: When the first elements shall have been explained,
what is then handled?

ROMAN: The letters were formed by the master, then they were
copied by us.

GREEK: Soon you were able to read and write. Were not the
words of the poets then recited?

ROMAN: We were often delighted with the poems of Homer.

GREEK: While his beautiful writings were being recited [pres.],
were you not also delighted by music?

ROMAN: We were then taught to sing to the lyre [abl.].

GREEK: How was the lyre handled by you?

Roman. It was held by the left hand and struck with the right.

GREEK: While the mind was being strengthened by study, was
not the body also exercised?

ROMAN: Our limbs were exercised daily in the gymnasium.

GREEK: When were you released from the care of your preceptor?

ROMAN: After sixteen years had been completed, we were
freed.

26.

THIRD CONJUGATION, PRESENT SYSTEM

An Invitation to a Country House Refused

1. While your letter is being read, I am oppressed with great envy.
2. I am surrounded with many labours; yet nothing is being done.
3. I shall be kept in the city for a long time; in vain am I drawn away by you.
4. While the republic shall be ruled by bad leaders, nothing will be done.
5. In vain will a happy life at your country house be held out.
6. We are overwhelmed with great burdens: we are bothered with many cares.
7. Many friendships are being formed [joined], nor however will the old-ones be neglected.
8. We shall ever rejoice, if we shall still be esteemed by you.
9. Very great thanks will be given to you for your great kindness.
10. While these words are being written, the letter-carrier has entered. Farewell.

27.

DEFINITIVE PRONOUNS

Tribute to a Friend

1. The same house belonged [was] to us, the same friends.

2. The same things were pleasing and the same things disagreeable to us.
3. He himself was in the number of those whom nature herself loads with honours.
4. We were always fond of the same things: never did I offend him in the smallest matter.
5. He himself often praised his friends, never did he blame the same.
6. He also [idem] used to load us with many rewards; he himself was content with few things.
7. If it is the mark of friends [gen.] to praise the same things and blame the same things, ours was true friendship.
8. At the same time he himself was always patient and humble.
9. The image of that same man will always be kept in memory by me myself.
10. For the memory of the things themselves is not destroyed with the man himself.

28.

THIRD CONJUGATION, PERFECT SYSTEM

Marius Defeats the Teutons

1. When these things had been carried out, war was declared.
2. The armies of the Teutons were led into Italy.
3. Immediately the Romans were conquered in three battles.

4. All in the city were oppressed with great fear.
5. Then Marius was elected general and sent to the army.
6. The war was carried on for three years, nor were the enemy conquered.
7. At last the barbarian forces were led out of camp.
8. The enemy were overthrown and crushed with great slaughter.
9. Marius, the conqueror of the barbarians, was cherished with great Jove.
10. And so the matter was well carried out: at last an end was put to the war.

29.

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

Caesar and Pompey

1. To some citizens Caesar's cause was pleasing, to others Pompey's.
2. The senators had sent one general into Gaul, the other they kept in Italy.
3. The plan of one general was bad, the other was waiting an opportunity.
4. The senators desired one thing, the citizens another.
5. At this time some things were adverse to Caesar; some were favourable.
6. But when Caesar entered the city, Pompey sailed to Greece with some citizens; many others joined themselves to Caesar.

7. Caesar had led some legions to the city, others were hastening from Gaul.
8. In the Pharsalian battle, fortune was kind to one leader, the other leader was overcome.
9. Out of Pompey's soldiers many were killed, others sailed with him to Egypt, others hastened to Italy.
10. It is one thing to start a war, another thing to gain the victory.

30.

FOURTH CONJUGATION, PRESENT SYSTEM

A Letter from a Roman in Britain, 54 BC

1. During these six months we are hindered by many cares in Gaul.
2. While our ships are being got ready, many things are heard, nothing certain is known about the Britons.
3. Our course was often hindered by adverse winds and tides.
4. At last all things were being finished: then our course is directed to the island.
5. The shouts of the barbarians are heard far off on the sea.
6. The approaches of the island were being fortified: the harbours were being guarded.
7. Our men are not hindered by the barbarians; a way is soon opened up through the waves.
8. Nothing is known about the nature of the island: the inhabitants are clothed with skins against [contra] the cold.

9. If nothing shall be heard from [ex] you, you shall be punished.
10. My anger will only be calmed and appeased by many letters.

31.

FOURTH CONJUGATION, PERFECT SYSTEM

Defeat of Cassivellaunus, a British Chief

1. Caesar's words were then heard by all the soldiers.
2. 'The camp of Cassivellaunus has been fortified by nature and by art.'
3. 'But you have never been hindered by danger from great deeds.'
4. 'If only a way shall have been opened up, you will not be stopped by fear of the enemy.'
5. 'The noise of your approach has not been heard by the barbarians.'
6. 'When they shall have been roused from sleep, they will be heavily punished.'
7. 'Our course has been hindered by woods and by marshes.'
8. 'Now you have been freed from all delay; soon your work will be finished by victory.'
9. At the same time his words were finished: at the same time a shout was heard.
10. The barbarians, by whom the camp had been guarded, were already in flight.

32.

PRONOUNS

DEMONSTRATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND RELATIVE

A Visit to a Roman House

AUGUSTUS: What shall we visit to-day? Have I not seen nearly everything which is worthy of mention?

CLAUDIUS: We will visit a splendid house, about which I have related much [n.pl.] to you. One of my friends is guarding it, while his master is absent.

AUGUSTUS: That which you advise is most suitable.

CLAUDIUS: Here is the door. Knock! Beware of the dog.

AUGUSTUS: With what care has the figure been painted!

GUARDIAN: Who is there? What do you wish?

CLAUDIUS: It is I. Good day.

GUARDIAN: For what reason do you hasten hither?

CLAUDIUS: My friend, who is a stranger in the city, will give you thanks, if you shall have shown him the beautiful pictures and statues in this house.

GUARDIAN: Nothing can be more pleasant to me than this.

33.

A Visit to a Roman House (Continued)

GUARDIAN: Enter. This is the hall.

AUGUSTUS: How beautiful is the marble floor of this hall!

GUARDIAN: First we enter the large atrium. Look at these pictures, at those marble statues!

AUGUSTUS: What is the story of that picture?

GUARDIAN: Diogenes is saying to Alexander, 'A little away from the sun!'

AUGUSTUS: I have seen nothing more splendid than this court.
What beautiful columns!

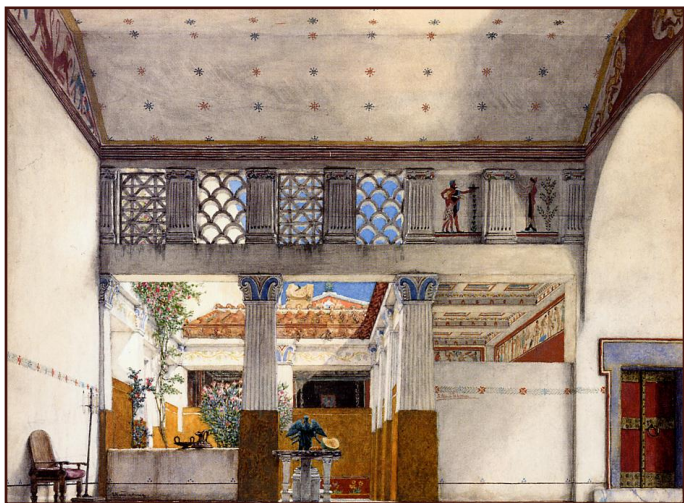
GUARDIAN: Look at these book-cases, which are filled with the writings of the best authors.

AUGUSTUS: Who is that first author, whose bust surpasses all the others?

GUARDIAN: That is Socrates, who is saying, 'Why am I, who wrote nothing, placed here?'

AUGUSTUS: What says his friend on the right?

GUARDIAN: Plato advises him with these words: 'What have I written, except that which you said?'



INTERIOR OF THE HOUSE OF GAIUS MARTIUS.

34.

THE IRREGULAR VERBS **volo, nolo, malo**

Inauguration of the Australian Commonwealth, AD 1901

BRITON 1: I was wishing to see you. Lo! you are here!

BRITON 2: Why were you willing to trust yourself to fortune?
Why did you not prefer to send a letter?

BRITON 1: He, to whom I had wished to give the letter, was
unwilling to come hither.

BRITON 2: But what do you wish to say to me?

BRITON 1: Listen to that which I wished to write. We wish to
visit Australia. If you shall be able and shall be willing, will
you not sail with us?

BRITON 2: I have always preferred to sail with you than with
others. Now I shall prefer in vain.

BRITON 1: If you wish to see Australia, and prefer to sail with
me, why are you unwilling to come?

BRITON 2: This year we shall be unwilling to undertake so long
a journey.

BRITON 1: But this year the commencement of the republic is
being celebrated in Australia.

BRITON 2: You advise well. If my wife shall be willing, I shall
not be unwilling. Farewell!

35.

THE VERB **ire, go** AND ITS COMPOUNDS

A Journey From Brundisium to Rome

MARCUS: Whence do you return to Rome? All at home were
grieving because you were absent.

QUINTUS: I have returned from Baiae. I left the ship to-day.

MARCUS: I am glad that [because] you have returned home.

Did you not see Horatius at Baiae?

QUINTUS: He had gone to Puteoli before [conj.] I reached Baiae. Afterwards I saw him at Puteoli.

MARCUS: When will Horatius return to Rome?

QUINTUS: He will never depart from Baiae, unless he shall have departed from [e] life.

MARCUS: Why does he live at Baiae?

QUINTUS: He is kept there by the Lucrine oysters. He never goes out of his villa.

MARCUS: Surely your brother lives at Naples? Did you not go to Naples and Pompeii?

QUINTUS: At Cumae I went on board a ship and sailed to Naples, but my brother had just gone away to Pompeii.

36.

A Journey from Brundisium to Rome (Continued)

MARCUS: Where [whither] did you go then?

QUINTUS: I remained three days at Naples at my brother's house. On the third day the letter-carrier returned from Pompeii.

MARCUS: But what had your brother written?

QUINTUS: He had given no letters to the letter-carrier. Then we got ready our horses and hastened our journey to Pompeii.

MARCUS: It is a most pleasant place. How many days were you at Pompeii?

QUINTUS: Scarcely had we gone forth from Naples, when my brother met us.

MARCUS: You did not [num] return to Naples, whence you had just departed?

QUINTUS: My brother was returning home but wished at once to go to Puteoli.

MARCUS: I am always sorry that I have never been at Puteoli.

QUINTUS: It is a crowded place. Many approach from all sides to Puteoli to the mineral waters.

MARCUS: Farewell! It is necessary to go home. While I was working at Rome, you were surrounded in the country by all sorts of pleasures.

37.

THIRD CONJUGATION **-io** VERBS

The Carthaginians Invade Italy

1. The republic was in great danger; all the citizens take up arms.
2. Many disasters were being received: the State was being visited with severe wounds.
3. At last the consul makes an attack upon [in] the Carthaginians.
4. Many Romans are being killed: more are being captured in flight.
5. In vain the generals address [make] words to the soldiers.
6. 'It will be better if we shall be killed than if we shall flee.'

7. 'If you shall fail in courage, a heavy disaster will be received.'
8. No one does what the generals desire; the soldiers, blind with fear, flee in all directions.
9. Many weapons were being thrown by the enemy, many Romans were being killed.
10. Night makes an end of the flight: the tired Carthaginians betake themselves to camp.

38.

DEPONENT VERBS

The Death of Queen Victoria (January 22, 1901)

1. How shall we speak about the death of our queen? With what words shall we recall her life?
2. Hope consoles the wretched: her illustrious example will always console and exhort us.
3. She has died full of years, full of honour, full of the love of her citizens.
4. If we shall contemplate her life, we shall admire her goodness and wisdom.
5. She shared her joys and sorrows with [cum] her citizens; she strove for her country, not for herself.
6. Nor do we in Britain alone suffer this sorrow.
7. The citizens of our colonies and of the whole world revered our queen and suffer the same grief.
8. And now the son of our king sets out for the shores of the great colonies.

9. The citizens will honour this prince on account of the memory of the queen.
10. I have attempted a difficult task, but I shall not fear this: I shall not seem worthy of blame, if I shall have spoken ill.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES

39.

The Complaint of Polyphemus

CYCLOPS: O father, have you not heard my cries? I have suffered a great injury!

NEPTUNE: Who has attempted to wrong my son?

CYCLOPS: A stranger, who came to the shores of my island, has blinded me.

NEPTUNE: But how was he able to do this?

CYCLOPS: I was overcome not by courage but by cunning.

NEPTUNE: What mortal surpasses my son in cunning?

CYCLOPS: He himself said to me, 'Nobody is my [mihi] name.' But afterwards he was called Ulysses by his companions.

NEPTUNE: How was my son deceived by these foolish words? Where did the stranger attack you?

CYCLOPS: I had just led back my sheep to the cave. The door had been closed with the immense rock and a fire had been lighted in the cave. Then I saw 'Nobody' and his companions among the sheep. Soon he gave me sweet wine and I was overcome by sleep.

40.

The Complaint of Polyphemus (Continued)

NEPTUNE: But while your eye was being blinded [pres.], were you not awakened from sleep?

CYCLOPS: I was awakened and cried out, 'Nobody is attacking me.' And so my companions came not to my aid [dat.]. Thus, I was overcome by the cunning of the stranger.

NEPTUNE: But how did Ulysses escape out of the cave? Was he [num] able to move the stone from the entrance?

CYCLOPS: I myself had moved the stone and was waiting for 'Nobody' on the threshold of the cave.

NEPTUNE: Of course he was concealed among the sheep and was not seen by you.

CYCLOPS: What shall I do? How shall I punish this wicked Greek?

NEPTUNE: While he is sailing on my ocean, he shall pay a worthy penalty to me. He shall return home . . . but not without injury.



Vocabularies to Exercises



1.

auctumnus -ī m., *autumn*.

auris -is f., *ear*.

creo -āre -āvī -ātum, *create*.

Grātiaē -ārum f.pl., *the Graces*
(goddesses of beauty).

Olympias -adis f., *Olympiad*
(a period of four years
between Olympic Games,
used by the ancient Greeks
in dating events).

Olympius -a -um, ADJ.,
Olympic (of Olympia, a
town in the West of
Greece).

operārius -a -um, ADJ.,
working.

sēnsus -us m., *sense*.

spatium -iī m., *space*.

vel, CONJ., *or*. *

vēr veris n., *spring* (the
season).

2.

aedificium -iī n., *a building*,
structure, 'edifice'.

Biās Biantis m., *Bias* (a
Cretan).

cremō -āre -āvī -ātum, *burn*
(→ cremate).

dīvidō -ere dīvīsī dīvīsus,
'divide'.

initium initiī n., *beginning*.

maxime, ADV., *most*,
especially.

mēnsis -is m., *month*.

mīrāculum -ī n., *a wonder*,
marvel, 'miracle'.

pretium -iī n., *price*.

* The conjunction **aut**, *xor*, *exclusive or* excludes one thing; **vel**, *or*, *either or* (old imperative of **volo**) gives the choice of either or both.

Sibyllīnus -a -um, ADJ., *of a*

Sibyl, *Sibylline* (the Sibyls were prophetic women).

Solōn -ōnis m., *Solon* (a famous Athenian).

Thales -is m., *Thales* (a philosopher).

vetulus -a -um, ADJ., *old*.

3.

Albani Albānōrum m.pl., *the Albans* (inhabitants of Alba Longa, a city near Rome).

Ētrūria -ae f., *'Etruria'* (a country north of Rome).

imperātor -ōris m., *emperor*.

Latini -ōrum m.pl., *the Latins* (inhabitants of Latium, in which country Rome was situated).

Sabini -ōrum m.pl., *the Sabines* (neighbours of the Latins).

speciēs -eī f., *form, shape*.

4.

Aegyptius -a -um, ADJ., *Egyptian*.

Artemisia -ae f., *Artemisia*.

Cāria -ae f., *Caria* (a province of Asia Minor).

Ephesius -a -um, ADJ., *Ephesian*, *Ephesus*.

lātus -a -um, ADJ., *broad*.

marītus -i m., *husband*.

Mausōlus -i m., *Mausolus* (king of Caria).

Nilus -i m., *the Nile*.

sepulcrum -ī n., *tomb*.

5.

Alexandrīnus -a -um, ADJ., *of Alexandria*.

Cannēnsis -e, ADJ., *of Cannae*.
columna -ae f., *a pillar*,
'column'.

Marathōnius -a -um, ADJ., *of Marathon*.

modo, ADV., *only*.

passus -ūs m., *pace*.*

pendeō pendere pependī,
hang, be suspended.

* 1 **passus**, *pace* = 5 **pedēs**, *feet* = 1.48 metres. 1 **pēs**, *foot* = 29.6 cm (11.65 in).

Persicus -a -um, ADJ.,
Persian.

Pharus -i f., lighthouse (esp.
 on the island of Pharos).

Plataeae -ārum f.pl., Plataea.

sīgnum -ī n., a statue.

supersum superesse

superfuī, be left, survive.

6.

certō -āre -āvī -ātum, decide
by contest, contend.

cōnsultō -āre -āvī -ātum,
consult, deliberate.

contendō -ere -ī contus,
'contend', try my strength.

currō currere cucurrī
cursum, run.

cursus -ūs m., running.

fraus fraudis f., a trick.

lūsus lūsūs m., a game.

necesse (+ esse/habere),

indecl. n. ADJ., necessary.

possum posse potui, be able.

sententia -ae f., an opinion.

saltus -ūs m., jumping,
leaping.

stadium -iī n., a racecourse.

studeō studēre studuī, desire,
be anxious.

7.

cōnsūmō -ere cōnsūmpsī

consumptum, 'consume',
devour, waste, destroy.

errō -āre -āvī -ātum, wander,
err, be incorrect.

hūmānus -a -um, ADJ.,
natural to man, human.

peccō -āre -āvī -ātum, sin
 (→ *impeccable*).

ūtilis -e, ADJ., useful.

8.

amābilis -e, ADJ., worthy of
love, amiable.

amplus -a -um, ADJ., great,
'ample'.

coniūctus -a -um, ADJ., close,
intimate.

figō -ere finxī fictus, invent,
devise.

fīrmus -a -um, ADJ., firm.

gravis -e, ADJ., heavy.

integritās integritātis f.,
integrity.

iūs iuris n., law.

levis leve, ADJ., *light*.

nihil n., INDECL., *nothing*.

opulentus -a -um, ADJ., *rich*,
'opulent'.

praestāns -antis, ADJ.,
remarkable, excellent.

reddō reddere reddidī
redditum, *render*.

splendidus -a -um, ADJ.,
brilliant, splendid.

studiōsus -a -um, ADJ., *eager*
(+ gen.).

unquam, ADV., *ever*.

9.

accumbō accumbere accubui
accubitum, *lie beside, esp.*

recline at a table,

ātrium -ī n., *the hall, the*
principal of a house.

caveō cavēre cāvī cautum,
beware.

cursus -ūs m., *a course*.

dēligō dēligere dēlēgī
dēlēctum, *choose*.

dēmō dēmere dēmpsī
dēmptum, *take away*.

heus, INTERJ., *hey!, ho!, ho*
there!, listen!

hilaris -e, ADJ., *merry*.

īnfrā, ADV., *below*.

lavō lavere lāvī lavātus, *wash*.

libet, IMPERS., *it is agreeable to*
(+ dat. of person
concerned, + inf. ± acc.).

ministrō -āre -āvī -ātum, *wait*
upon, serve.

mōnstrō -āre -āvī -ātum,
show.

paulisper, ADV., *for a little*
time.

prior prius, COMP. ADJ.,
former, first.

pulso, *knock at*.

rectus -a -um, ADJ., *straight*.

removeō removēre remōvī
remōtus, *'remove'*.

solea -ae f., *'sole', sandal*,
slipper (worn in the house
only).

taceo -ēre -uī -itum, *be silent*
(→ tacit).

trīclīnium -ī n., *a couch*
(around three sides of a
dining table), hence, *a*
dining room.

10.

anas anatis f., a duck.

appono -pōnere -posuī

-positum, to set before, serve.

bibō bibere bibī, to drink.

castanea -ae f., a chestnut.

dimidius -a -um, ADJ., half.

discerpo -ere discerpsī

discerptum, cut in pieces,
carve.

fundō fundere fūdī fūsum,
pour out.

gallina -ae f., a hen, fowl.

impleō implēre implēvī

implētum, fill up.

lacerna -ae f., a cloak,

legō legere lēgī lēctus, read.

mensa -ae f., table; **secunda**

mensa, dessert (when both
dishes and table were
changed).

misceō miscēre miscuī

mīxtum, 'mix'.

mūraena -ae f., a sea eel,
moray eel, lamprey.

ostrea -ae f., an oyster.

pānis -is m., bread.

pōculum -i n., a goblet.

pomum -i m., fruit, apple.

promissum -i n., 'promise'.

repleō replēre replēvī

replētus, fill again,
replenish.

scindō scindere scidī scissus,
cut, carve.

titulus -ī m., an inscription.

tollo stistuli sublātum,* take
away.

11.

Alexander -dri m., Alexander.

aurum -i n., gold.

Babylon -ōnis f., Babylon

(chief city of Babylonia on
the Euphrates).

cūrō -āre -āvī -ātum, to look
after, take care of.

eō, ADV. + COMP. ADJ., so
much, by so much.

fortasse, ADV., perhaps.

* The perfect and supine stems of **tollo** were prefixed with **sub**, beneath to distinguish them from the original forms **tetulī** and **lātum**, which had become suppletively attached to the conjugation of **ferō**, bear.

Macedones -um m.pl., *the*

Macedonians.

pondus -eris n., *weight.*

puto -āre -āvī -ātum, *to think*
(+ double acc.).

quo, ADV., *by how much* (with
comp.).

spero -āre -āvī -ātum, *to hope.*

12.

ā, ab, PREP. + abl. of agent,
by.

adeo, ADV., *so, so much.*

concilium -ī n., *a council,*
gathering.

convocō -āre -āvī -ātum, *to*
call together.

cruciō -āre -āvī -ātum,
torture.

īgnāvia -ae f., *cowardice.*

incommodum -ī n., *disaster.*

perturbō -āre -āvī -ātum,
disturb.

posterus -a -um, ADJ., *next.*

sollicito -āre -āvī -ātum,
distress, tempt (→ *sollicit*).

vituperō -āre -āvī -ātum,
blame, censure.

13.

argentum -ī n., *silver, money.*

exemplum -ī n., *an example.*

exploro -āre -āvī -ātum, *to*
examine.

frūgālītās -ātis f., *'frugality'.*

luxuria -ae f., *'luxury'.*

luxoriosus -a -um, ADJ.,
extravagant, 'luxurious'.

paupertas -ātis f., *poverty.*

potestās -ātis f., *power.*

rusticus -a -um, ADJ., *rustic,*
rural.

14.

desum dē(e)sse dēfui, *to fail,*
to be wanting (+ dat. of
pers.).

dubius -a -um, ADJ., *doubtful.*

exitium -ī n., *destruction.*

fēlicitas -atis f., *good luck,*
fortune, happiness.

feliciter, ADV., *luckily.*

impedimentum -ī n., *a*
hindrance.

īnstruō īnstruere īnstruī
īnstrūctum, *to draw up.*

is ea id, PRON., *that; he, she, it.*

nuntio -āre -āvī -ātum,

announce, report.

perpetuus -a -um, ADJ.,

everlasting, unfailing.

ubi, ADV., *when.*

undique, ADV., *from all sides.*

15.

Aequi -ōrum m.pl., the

*Aequians (a warlike people
near Rome).*

arātrum -i n., a plough.

cōnsiderō -āre -āvī -ātum,

examine.

dictātūra -ae f., dictatorship.

mūnus -eris n., a gift, present.

rectē, ADV., *rightly.*

rusticus -a -um, ADJ., *rustic,*

rural.

Samnītes -ium m.pl., the

*Samnites (a tribe south of
Rome).*

tendō tendere tetendī

tentum, *try, tamper with.*

16.

auctōritās -ātis f., 'authority'.

avāritia -ae f., 'avarice'.

civilis -e, ADJ., 'civil', *civic.*

divitiae -ārum f.pl., *riches.*

firmitas -ātis f., *strength.*

gratis, ADV., 'gratis', *free,*

without charge.

gravitās -ātis f., *weight,*

importance.

honestas -ātis f., *honesty.*

id temporis, ADV. *phrase, at*

*that time.**

magistratus -ūs m., a

magistrate.

nimis, ADV., *too much.*

parum, ADV., *little, too little.*

patres -um m.pl., *the senators.*

penes, PREP. + acc., *in the*

hands of, in the power of.

17.

comparo -āre -āvī -ātum,

compare (+ cum, with).

* This is an ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE, used mainly in popular speech. Other examples are **id (istuc) aetātis**, *at that age*; **meam vicem**, *on my part*; **bonam partem**, *in a great measure*; **maximam partem**, *for the most part*.

defatigo -āre -āvī -ātum,
exhaust, tire.

exanimō -āre -āvī -ātum,
alarm, deprive of courage.

latro -ōnis m., *robber.*

Leonidas -ae m., *Leonidas*
(voc. **Leonida**).

Minos -ōis m., *Minos* (a judge
in the lower world).

num, interrogative particle
expecting a negative
answer.

probrum -i n., *abuse, insult.*

satelles -itis m., *an attendant*
(on a distinguished
person).

valdē, ADV., *greatly,*
exceedingly.

vexo -āre -āvī -ātum, *harass,*
annoy, 'vex'.

18.

Cynicus -i m., *a Cynic*
philosopher, a Cynic (from
Gk. κυνικός, *dog-like*).

dedecus -oris n., *a disgrace.*

Diogenes -is m., *Diogenes* (the
Cynic philosopher).

Epicurus -i m., *Epicurus* (the
famous philosopher who
held pleasure to be the
highest good).

iuventūs -ūtis f., *youth.*

longe, ADV., *far.*

mollitia -ae f., *softness.*

paululum -i n., ADJ., *a little.*

pōnō pōnere posuī positus,
place; count, reckon.

sicārius -i m., *assassin.*

termino -āre -āvī -ātum,
limit, define.

Zēnō -ōnis m., *Zeno* (founder
of the Stoic philosophy).

19.

augeō augēre auxi auctum,
increase, 'augment'.

dēfleō -ēre -evi -etum,
lament, weep over.

deterreo -ēre -uī -itus, *'deter'*
(+ **de** + abl.).

factum -ī n., *a deed.*

fāma -ae f., *fame, renown.*

furor -ōris m., *madness.*

ingrātus -a -um, ADJ.,
ungrateful.

laus laudis f., *praise.*

nempe, ADV., *certainly, without doubt.*

obsideō -ēre obsēdi

obsessum, *besiege, attack.*

societās -ātis f., *fellowship, association.*

vānus -a -um, ADJ., *useless.*

20.

aequus -a -um, ADJ., *fair, equal.*

condiciō -ōnis f., *condition, terms.*

foedus -eris m., *a treaty.*

nātiō -ōnis f., *a tribe.*

opus est, *it is needful for* (+ dat. of person + abl. of thing wanted).

orbis -is m., *a circle; orbis terrarum*, *the circle of the earth, the world.*

regio -ōnis f., *'region', district.*

satio -āre -āvī -ātum, *satisfy.*

sitis sitis f., *thirst* (acc. **sitim**, abl. **sitī**, no pl.).

21.

dēlectus -ūs m., *a levy* (of troops).

habeō habēre habuī habitum; *have, hold, consider; habeo*

fidem, *place confidence in* (+ dat. of person).

retineo retinēre retinūī retentum, *hold back.*

22.

collocō -āre -āvī -ātum, *settle.*

commoveo -ēre -mōvī -motum, *bring about, raise.*

dēstituō -ere -uī -ūtum, *forsake, desert.*

fīnis -is m., *end.*

graviter, ADV.; *heavily, severely.*

imperitus -a -um, ADJ., *unskilled.*

impōnō -ere imposuī imposītum, *place, put* (+ dat.).

maritimus -a -um, ADJ., *of the sea, 'maritime'.*

plūrimum, SUPERL. ADV., *very, very much.*

prior -us, COMP. ADJ., *'prior', former, previous.*

propitius -a -um, ADJ., *favourable, 'propitious'.*

stō stāre stetī statum, *stand.*
superior -us, COMP. ADJ.,
superior, stronger.

23.

Alpes -ium f.pl., *the Alps.*
crūdēliter, ADV., *cruelly.*
deinde, ADV., *then, thereupon.*
Hispānia -ae f., *Spain.*
impetrō -āre -āvī -ātum,
obtain (by asking).
Saguntum -i n., *Saguntum*
(now Murviedro).
supplicium -ī n., *punishment,*
torture.
ūtilis -e, ADJ., *useful,*
expedient.

24.

aequo -āre -āvī -ātum, *to*
make one thing equal to
another; (of places) to level
(+ acc. + dat.).
avus -ī m., *a grandfather.*
cōgnōmen -inis n., *a surname,*
family name.
decus -oris n., *an ornament.*
mittō mittere mīsī missum,
send.

pār paris, ADJ., *equal to, a*
match for (+ dat.).

pāx pācis f., *peace.*

prōflīgō -āre -āvī -ātum,
overthrow, utterly defeat.

renovo -āre -āvī -ātum,
renew.

revoco -āre -āvī -ātum, *recall.*

Scīpiō -ōnis m., *Scipio.*

solum -i n., *the ground.*

triumphus -i m., *a triumph*
(triumphum ago, to
celebrate a triumph).

25.

ēmendō -āre -āvī -ātum, *free*
from faults, improve.

explicō -āre -āvī -ātum,
explain.

ferula -ae f., *a whip, rod.*

fides -ium f.pl., *a stringed*
instrument, lyre.

Horātius -ī m., *Horace.*

importō -āre -āvī -ātum,
bring in, introduce.

īstituō -ere īstituī

īstitutus, *train, instruct.*

litterārius -a -um, ADJ., *of*
reading and writing; hence,

ludus litterarius, *primary school, elementary school.*
mane, ADV., *in the morning.*
musicus -a -um, ADJ., *musical*; hence **musica -ōrum n.pl.**, *music.*
paedagōgus -ī m., *a preceptor (a slave to look after children and take them to school).*
palaestra -ae f., *wrestling school.*
retrāctō -āre -āvī -ātum, *handle again, revise.*
Vergilius -ī m., *'Vergil'.*
versō -āre -āvī -ātum, *to turn*;
versor versari versatus (pass.), *be engaged, be circumstanced, be situated.*

26.

abstrahō -ere abstrāxi
abstractum, *draw away.*
addūcō -ere addūxi
adductum, *lead to, induce.*

angō angere anxi anctum, *pain, bother.*
dēfendō -ere dēfendī,
dēfensum, *'defend'.*
fundus -ī m., *farm.*
interpōnō -ere -posuī
-positus, *let pass, leave (an interval).*
ostendō -ere -ī ostentum/
ostensum, *show, hold out.*
premō -ere pressī pressum,
'press', overwhelm, oppress.
sollicitūdō -inis f., *care, anxiety, 'solicitude'.*
tabellārius -ī m., *a lettercarrier, messenger, courier, postman.*
vehō -ere vexi vectum, *carry*;
 (pass.) *be carried, ride.*

27.

domus -ūs f., *a house* (abl. sg.
domo, acc. pl., **domos**; loc.
domī;^{*} other forms like
 the fourth declension).
imago -inis f., *an image.*

* **Domus** has no locative plural form; there is no way of saying two people are at their respective houses.

invītus -a -um, ADJ.,
unwilling.

offendō offendere offendī
offēsum, *offend.*

sentiō sentīre sēnsī sēsum,
feel.

vīctus -ūs m., *way of living.*

voluntās -ātis f., *wish.*

vultus -ūs m., *face,*
countenance, expression.

28.

adflīgo -ere -īxī -ictum, *cast*
down, overthrow.

destruo -ere -xi -ctum,
'destroy'.

eligo ēligere ēlēgī elēctum,
'elect'.

exstinguō -ere exstinxi
extinctum, *destroy,*
annihilate.

opprimō -ere -essī -essum,
crush, overwhelm.

perdūcō -ere -xi -ctum, *lead*
through, bring.

tergum -ī n., *back, rear.*

Teutoni -ōrum m.pl., *the*
Teutons (German tribe).

trādo -ere -didi trāditus,
hand over.

29.

adiuvō -āre adiūvī adiūtus,
assist, support.

Aegyptus -ī m., *Egypt.*

cēdō cēdere cessī cessum,
yield, withdraw.

cupīdō -inis f., *desire.*

divitiae -ārum f.pl., *wealth,*
riches.

factio -ōnis f., *a party faction.*

glōria -ae f., *glory.*

occāsio -ōnis f., *opportunity.*

Pharsālius -a -um, ADJ., *of*
Pharsalus, Pharsalian.

Pharsālus -i f., *Pharsalus (a*
city in Thessaly).

trucidō -āre -āvī -ātum,
slaughter, kill.

30.

carō carnis f., *flesh, meat.*

certus -a -um, ADJ., *certain.*

frūmentum -ī n., *corn.*

incursio -ōnis f., *an attack.*

lāc lactis n., *milk.*

lāna -ae f., *wool.*

lēniō -īre -īvī -ītum, *calm*,
appease.

līnum -ī n., *linen*.

mōlēs mōlis f., *a huge*
structure; a pier, breakwater,
'mole'.

nisi, CONJ., *if. . . not, unless*.

reperiō -īre repperī
repertum, *find, discover*.

31.

āgmen -inis n., *a column, army*
(on the march).

Cassivellaunus -ī m.,
Cassivellaunus.

exciō -īre -īvī -ītum, *rouse*.

liberi -ōrum m.pl., *children*.

māgnoperē, ADV., *greatly*.

palūs palūdis f., *a marsh*.

simul, ADV., *at the same time*,
at once.

strepitus -ūs m., *noise, din*.

32.

libenter, ADV., *gladly*,
willingly.

mendīcus -i m., *a beggar*.

pingō -ere pinxi pictum,
paint.

vestibulum -i n., *an*
entrancehall, entrance.

vīsō vīsere vīsī vīsum, *to visit*.

33.

cubiculum -ī n., *a bedroom*.

fauces -ium f.pl., *corridor*,
passage.

imāgō -inis f., *bust, statue*.

impluvium -i n., *'impluvium'*
(the square basin in the
atrium which received
rainwater from an opening
in the roof).

peristīlium -i n., *'peristyle'* (a
place surrounded with
columns on the inside).

piscīna -ae f., *a fountain, basin*
(in which fish were often
kept).

pluteus -ī m., *a bookcase (on*
which busts of the authors
were also placed).

postīcum -i n., *a back door*.

prōprius -a -um, ADJ., *not*
common with others, private.

sōlum -i n., *the ground; hence*,
the floor or pavement.

spectaculum -i n., *a show,*
'spectacle'.

tabulinum -i n., *an office,*
*writing-room (from **tabella**,*
writing-tablet).

34.

Austrālia -ae f., *'Australia' (the*
southern land).

Canada -ae f., *'Canada'.*

committō -ere -mīsī
-missum, trust, entrust.

regiō -ōnis f., *district, country.*

sērius -a -um, *ADJ., serious.*

vir viri m., *man, husband.*

35.

abeō abīre abīvī abitum, *go*
away, leave, depart.

abhinc, *ADV., ago, since.*

adeo -īre -iī -itum, *go to,*
approach.

Brundisium -ī n., *'Brundisium'*
(now Brindisi).

conscendō -ere -di -sum,
embark, go on board (+ in
+ acc.).

exeo -īre -iī -itum, *go out,*
*depart, leave (+ **ex/de**).*

illūc, *ADV., thither.*

ineo -īre inīvī initum, *go in,*
enter upon, enter.

modo, *ADV., just.*

Neāpolis -is f., *'Naples' (acc.*
-im, abl. -i).

prōdeō -īre -ivī -itum, *go or*
come forth.

Puteoli -ōrum m.pl., *'Puteoli'*
(near Naples).

redeo -īre -iī -itum, *return.*

rūs rūris n., *the country (rūs ↔*
urbs).

tranquillus -a -um, *ADJ.,*
quiet, peaceful.

turbulentus -a -um, *ADJ.,*
noisy.

36.

aquae -ārum f.pl., *mineral*
waters, springs.

āter -tra -trum, *ADJ., black.*

Beneventum -i n.,
'Beneventum'.

Capua -ae f., *'Capua'.*

caupō -ōnis m., *landlord,*
innkeeper.

imber -bris m., *rain.*

incendium -i n., a house on
fire, conflagration, blaze.

incendō -ere -di -sum, set on
fire.

iocōsus -a -um, ADJ., witty.

obviam, ADV., in the way;
+ **ire**, to go to meet, to meet
(+ dat. of person).

pānis -is m., bread.

sevērus -a -um, ADJ., serious,
'severe', stern.

ūnā, ADV., in company,
together.

37.

capiō capere cēpī captum,
take, capture; **accipio**,
receive; **recipio**, retake.*

cupiō cupere cupīvī cupītum,
desire.

faciō facere fēcī factum,
make; **verba facio**, speak,
plead; **afficio**, visit with,
afflict; **deficio**, fail;
interficio, kill.

fugiō fugere fūgī fugitum,
flee.

iaciō iacere iēcī iactum,
throw; **dēiciō**, cast down;
trāiciō, cross.

impetus -ūs m., an attack.

rapiō rapere rapuī raptum,
seize, carry off.

undique, ADV., on all sides.

38.

admīror admīrārī admīrātus
sum, admire.

aemulor aemulārī aemulātus
sum, 'emulate', strive after,
try to equal.

comitor comitārī comitātus
sum, accompany.

cōnor cōnārī cōnātus sum,
attempt.

cōnsōlor cōnsōlārī
cōnsōlātus sum, console.

contemplor contemplārī
contemplātus sum,
contemplate.

* NOTE. Compounds of **capio**, **facio** and **iacio** change **a** to **i** in the present stem, as **ac-cipio**: and **a** to **e** in the supine, as **ac-ceptum**.

frūstror frūstrārī frūstrātus
sum, *frustrate.*

fūnus -eris n., *death, funeral.*

hortor hortārī hortātus sum,
exhort.

imitor imitārī imitātus sum,
imitate.

laetor, laetārī, laetātus sum,
rejoice.

loquor loquī locūtus sum,
speak.

mereor merērī meritus sum,
deserve.

moderor moderārī
moderātus sum, *govern.*

morior morīrī moritus sum,
die.

nītor nītī nīxus sum, *strive.*

partior partīrī partītus sum,
share.

patior patī passus sum, *suffer.*

prex precis f., *prayer.*

prīnceps prīncipis m., *a*
prince.

probitas -ātis f., *goodness.*

proficīscor proficīscī

profectus sum, *set out.*

quamquam, *CONJ, although.*

recordor recordārī

recordātus sum, *recall.*

sequor sequī secūtus sum,
follow.

templum -ī n., *temple.*

veneror venerārī venerātus
sum, *revere, honour.*

vereor verērī veritus sum,
fear.

videō vidēre vīdī vīsum, *see;*
(pass.) seem.

39.

accendō -ere -ī accēsum,
light, kindle.

adhibeo -ēre adhibuī
adhibitum, *use, apply.*

callidus -a -um, *ADJ.,*
cunning.

certiorem facio, *inform,*
acquaint.

claudō -ere -sī -sum, *shut.*

committō -ere commīsī
commisum, *'commit'.*

contemnō -ere -tempsi
-temptum, *despise.*

decipio -ere -cepi -ceptum,
deceive.

facinus -oris n., *an outrage.*

iniuria -ae f., *an injury, wrong,*
loss.

pello -ere pepuli pulsum,
drive.

pererrō -āre -āvī -ātum,
wander over.

reduco -ere redūxī
reductum, *lead back.*

violo -āre -āvī -ātum, *'violate',*
outrage, wrong.

40.

cōspiciō -ere cōspēxī

cōspectum, *see, catch sight*
of.

dēserō -ere dēserū

dēsertum, *'desert'.*

ēripiō -ere -uī ēreptus, *snatch*
away.

furor -ōris m., *rage.*

responsum -i n., *an answer.*

ut, CONJ., *as.*



Bell's Modified

LATIN COURSE — INDICES





ROMAN RUINS.

Latin–English Index



KEY

NUMBERS refer to the declension of a substantive or the conjugation of a verb.

i = i-stem; **d** = deponent.

GENDER. **m** = masculine; **f** = feminine; **n** = neuter; **c** = common;

mm = masculine plural; etc.

PART OF SPEECH. **n** = noun; **a** = adjective; **v** = verb; **prep** = preposition;

pron = pronoun; **interj** = interjection; **ph** = phrase.



A

ā, ab · prep · from; (of agent) by
(+ abl.).

ab-sum ab-esse ā-fuī · v · be absent,
be distant.

abeō abīre abīvī abitum · v · go away,
leave, depart.

abhinc · adv · ago, since.

abstrahō -ere abstrāxī abstractum ·
v3 · draw away.

accendō -ere -ī accēnsūm · v3 · light,
kindle.

accipiō -ere -cēpi -ceptum · v3 ·
receive.

accumbō -ere accubuī accubitum · v2
· lie beside, esp. recline at a table.

accūsō -āre · v1 · attack, accuse.

ācer ācris ācre · a3 · sharp, fiery,
fierce.

Achillēs -is m · n3 · 'Achilles'.

aciēs aciēi f · n5 · line of battle, battle
array.

ācritēr · adv · keenly, sharply.

acūtus -a -um · a12 · sharp.

ad · prep · to, towards (+ acc.).

addūcō -ere addūxi adductum · v3 ·
lead to, induce.

adeo · adv · so, so much.

adeo -īre -iī -itum · v · go to,
approach.

ades · ph · come! (pres. imp. of
adsum).

adflīgō -ere -īxī -ictum · v3 · cast
down, overthrow.

adhibeo -ēre adhibuī adhibitum · v2 ·
use, apply.

adhūc · adv · still, yet.

aditus -ūs m · n4 · entrance,
approach.
adiuvō -āre adiuvī adiūtum · v1 ·
assist, support.
administrō -āre · v1 · 'administer'.
admīror admīrārī admīrātus sum ·
v1d · admire.
adsum adesse adfuī · v · be present,
be at hand.
advena -ae m · n1 · a stranger.
adventus -ūs m · n4 · arrival.
adversae res · ph · adversity.
adversārius -a -um · a12 · hostile, (as
c. subst.) an opponent.
adversus -a -um · a12 · adverse,
unsuccessful; contrary, turned
toward, in front.
aedificium -iī n · n2 · a building,
structure, 'edifice'.
aedificō -āre · v1 · build.
aeger -gra -grum · a12 · sick.
aegrē · adv · with difficulty.
aegrōtō -āre · v1 · be ill.
Aegyptius -a -um · a12 · Egyptian.
Aegyptus -ī m · n2 · Egypt.
aemulor aemulārī aemulātus sum ·
v1d · 'emulate', strive after, try to
equal.
Aenēas -ae m · n3 · Aeneas.
aēneus -a -um · a12 · of copper, of
bronze, brazen.
Aequi -ōrum mm · n2 · the Aequians
(a warlike people near Rome).
aequō -āre · v1 · to make one thing
equal to another; (of places) to
level (+ acc. + dat.).

aequus -a -um · a12 · fair, equal.
aestās -ātis f · n3 · summer.
aestimō -āre · v1 · value (+ gen. of
price; magni aestimo, I value
highly).
aestivus -a -um · a12 · of summer.
aestus -ūs m · n4 · tide (magno aestu,
at high tide).
aeternus -a -um · a12 · eternal.
afficio -ere -fēcī -fectum · v3i · visit
with, influence, afflict.
Africa -ae f · n1 · Africa.
ager -gri m · n2 · field.
agger -aria m · n3 · a rampart.
agitō -āre · v1 · drive, disturb, raise;
be employed in.
āgmen -inis n · n3 · a column, army
(on the march).
agō agere ēgī āctum · v3 · do, lead,
drive (ago gratias, I give thanks).
agricola -ae m · n1 · farmer.
āla -ae f · n1 · wing.
alacer -cris -cre · a3 · lively.
Albani Albānōrum mm · n2 · the
Albans (inhabitants of Alba
Longa, a city near Rome).
albus -a -um · a12 · white.
Alexander -dri m · n2 · 'Alexander'.
Alexandrīnus -a -um · a12 · of
Alexandria.
aliquando · adv · once upon a time.
alius -a -ud · a · other, another; ālias:
at another time.
Alpes -ium ff · n3 · the Alps.
alter -era -erum · a12 · the other of
two, one of two, the other.

- altus -a -um · a12 · high.
 amābilis -e · a3 · worthy of love,
 amiable.
 amans -antis · a3 · loving (pres. part.
 of amō).
 ambulō -āre · v1 · walk.
 amīcitia -ae f · n1 · friendship.
 amīcus -i m · n2 · a friend.
 amō -āre · v1 · love.
 amor -ōris m · n3 · love.
 amplus -a -um · a12 · great, 'ample'.
 anas anatis f · n3 · a duck.
 Ancus -i m · n2 · Ancus (Marcius).
 angō angere anxi anctum · v3 · pain,
 bother.
 anima -ae f · n1 · spirit.
 animal -alis n · n3i · animal.
 animus -i m · n2 · mind, courage.
 annus -i m · n2 · year.
 anser -ōris m · n3 · a goose.
 ante · prep · before (+ acc.).
 antea · adv · previously.
 antequam · conj · before.
 antiquus -a -um · a12 · ancient
 (→ antiquated).
 Antōnius -iī m · n2 · 'Antonius' (the
 Roman triumvir).
 aper -pri m · n2 · a boar.
 aperio -īre aperui apertum · v4 ·
 open, unfold.
 apertus -a -um · a12 · open.
 Apollō -inis m · n3 · 'Apollo' (god of
 the sun).
 appellō -āre · v1 · call.
 appono -pōnere -posui -positum · v3
 · to set before, serve.
 appropinquō -āre · v1 · approach.
 aptus -a -um · a12 · suitable, fitted
 (comp. aptior).
 apud · prep · among (+ acc.).
 aqua -ae f · n1 · water.
 aquae -arum ff · n1 · mineral waters,
 springs.
 aquila -ae f · n1 · eagle.
 āra -ae f · n1 · altar.
 arātrum -i n · n2 · a plough.
 arbiter -tri m · n2 · umpire, 'arbiter'.
 arceō arcere arcui · v2 · ward off
 (from, + ab).
 arcus -ūs m · n4 · a bow (dat. and abl.
 pl. -ubus).
 ardeō -ēre arsī arsum · v2 · be on fire,
 burn.
 arēna -ae f · n1 · sand, the sand-
 covered arena (place of combat in
 amphitheatre).
 argentum -ī n · n2 · silver, money.
 arma -ōrum nn · n2 · 'arms'.
 armenta -ōrum nn · n2 · flocks.
 arō -āre · v1 · plough.
 ars artis f · n3i · practical skill; 'art'.
 Artemisia -ae f · n1 · Artemisia.
 arvum -i n · n2 · field.
 arx arcis f · n3i · citadel.
 Āsia -ae f · n1 · Asia (originally Asia
 Minor).
 asper -era -erum · a12 · rough.
 āter -tra -trum · a12 · black.
 Athēniensis -e · a3 · Athenian.
 ātrium -ī n · n2 · the hall, the
 principal of a house.
 ātrox -ōcis · a3 · horrible.

attentus -a -um · a12 · 'attentive'.
 Attica -ae f · n1 · Attica.
 auctōritās -ātis f · n3 · 'authority'.
 auctumnus -ī m · n2 · autumn.
 audācia -ae f · n1 · boldness
 (→ audacity).
 audax -ācis · a3 · bold.
 audiō audīre audīvī audītum · v4 ·
 hear, listen to.
 augeō augēre auxili auctum · v2 ·
 increase, 'augment'.
 aureus -a -um · a12 · golden.
 auris -is f · n3i · ear.
 aurum -i n · n2 · gold.
 Austrālia -ae f · n1 · Australia.
 aut · conj · exclusive or, xor (aut
 excludes one thing; vel gives the
 choice of either or both).
 autem · conj · but.
 auxilium -ii n · n2 · help.
 avāritia -ae f · n1 · 'avarice'.
 avunculus -ī m · n2 · (maternal)
 uncle.
 avus -ī m · n2 · a grandfather.

B

Babylon -ōnis f · n3 · Babylon (chief
 city of Babylonia on the
 Euphrates).
 Babylōnius -a -um · a12 · Babylonian.
 barbarus -i m · n2 · a stranger,
 'barbarian'.
 beātus -a -um · a12 · blessed, happy.
 Bellerophōn -ontis m · n3 ·
 'Bellerophon' (heroic horseman).
 bellum -i n · n2 · war.

bene · adv · well.
 Beneventum -i n · n2 · 'Beneventum'.
 benignus -a -um · a12 · kind.
 bestia -ae f · n1 · wild beast.
 bētīzō -āre · v1 · to be a beetroot.
 Biās Biantis m · n3 · Bias (a Cretan).
 bibō bibere bibī bibitum · v3 · to
 drink.
 bonus -a -um · a12 · good.
 brachium -iī n · n2 · the arm (of the
 body).
 brevi · adv · shortly (for brevi
 tempore).
 brevis -e · a3 · short.
 Brundisium -ī n · n2 · Brundisium
 (now Brindisi).

C

caecō -āre · v1 · blind.
 caecus -a -um · a12 · blind.
 caedes -is f · n3 · slaughter.
 caelum -i n · n2 · heaven.
 Caesar -aris m · n3 · 'Caesar'.
 callidus -a -um · a12 · cunning.
 calor -ōris m · n3 · heat.
 campus -i m · n2 · a plain.
 Canada -ae f · n1 · 'Canada'.
 canis -is c · n3 · dog (gen. pl. canum).
 Cannae -ārum ff · n1 · Cannae.
 Cannēnsis -e · a3 · of Cannae.
 cantandum -i n · n2 · singing (a
 gerund, not used in nom.).
 cantō -āre · v1 · to sing.
 caper -pri m · n2 · a goat.
 capiō capere cēpī captum · v3i · take,
 capture.

- captīvus -i m · n2 · a captive.
 Capua -ae f · n1 · 'Capua'.
 caput -itis n · n3 · head.
 carcer -eris m · n3 · a prison.
 Cāria -ae f · n1 · Caria (a province of Asia Minor).
 carīna -ae f · n1 · a ship, bark.
 carmen -minis n · n3 · poem, song.
 carō carnis f · n3 · flesh, meat.
 Carthāginiēnsis -e · a3 · of Carthage, Carthaginian.
 Carthāgō -ginis f · n3 · Carthage.
 cārus -a -um · a12 · dear.
 Cassivellaunus -ī m · n2 · Cassivellaunus.
 castanea -ae f · n1 · a chestnut.
 castra -ōrum nn · n2 · a camp.
 cāsus -ūs m · n4 · chance, accident.
 catēna -ae f · n1 · chain.
 Catilina -ae m · n1 · Catiline (esp. the conspirator).
 cauda -ae f · n1 · tail.
 caupō -ōnis m · n3 · landlord, innkeeper.
 causa -ae f · n1 · cause, reason (causam dico, I plead a cause).
 causā (abl.) · n1 · for the sake of (gen. +, referring to the future).
 caveō cavēre cāvī cautum · v2 · beware.
 cēdō cēdere cessī cessum · v3 · yield, withdraw.
 cēlātus -a -um · a12 · concealed.
 celebrer -bris -bre · a3 · celebrated.
 celebrō -āre · n1 · celebrate; go in great numbers to a celebration, crowd.
 celer -is -e · a3 · quick.
 cēlō -āre · v1 · conceal.
 cēna -ae f · n1 · a meal.
 cēnō -āre · v1 · dine.
 centaurus -i m · n2 · centaur.
 centum · num · a hundred.
 cēra cērae f · n1 · wax, (pl.) waxen writing tablets.
 Cerberus -i m · n2 · Cerberus.
 certāmen -minis n · n3 · contest.
 certiore facio · ph · inform, acquaint.
 certō -āre · v1 · decide by contest, contend.
 certus -a -um · a12 · certain.
 cervus -i m · n2 · a stag, deer.
 cessō -āre · n1 · linger.
 cēteri -ae -a · a12 · the rest.
 Charōn -ontis m · n3 · Charon (underworld ferryman).
 Chimaera -ae f · n1 · the Chimaera (a fire-breathing monster).
 Chiron -ōnis m · n3 · Chiron (learned centaur).
 cibus -i m · n2 · food.
 Cicerō -ōnis m · n3 · Cicero (esp. of the orator).
 Cincinnātus -i m · n2 · Cincinnatus.
 cingō cingere cinxī cinctum · v3 · surround.
 cinis -eris m · n3 · ashes.
 circā · prep · around (+ acc.).

circumdō -dare -dedī -datum · v1 ·
surround.

circus -i m · n2 · 'circus'.

citius · a12 · more quickly.

citus -a -um · a12 · quick (comp. adv.
citius).

civilis -e · a3 · 'civil', civic.

cīvis -is c · n3i · citizen.

cīvītās -ātis f · n3 · state.

clādēs -is f · n3i · disaster, defeat.

clāmor -ōris m · n3 · shout.

clangor -ōris m · n3 · cackling.

clārus -a -um · a12 · celebrated.

classis -is f · n3i · fleet.

Claudius -i m · n2 · Claudius.

claudō -ere -sī -sum · v3 · shut.

clāva -ae f · n1 · club.

cōgnōmen -inis n · n3 · a surname,
family name.

collocō -āre · v1 · place, assemble;
settle; relocate.

colōnia -ae f · n1 · colony.

color -ōris m · n3 · colour.

columba -ae f · n1 · a dove.

columna -ae f · n1 · a pillar, 'column'.

comes -itis c · n3 · comrade.

comitor comitārī comitātus sum · v1d
· accompany.

commeō -āre · v1 · come and go
(frequently).

committō -ere -mīsī -missum · v3 ·
trust, entrust, 'commit'.

commoveo -ēre -mōvī -motum · v2 ·
bring about, raise.

commūnis -e · a3 · common.

comparō -āre · v1 · make ready,
provide; 'compare' (+ cum, with).

compleō -ēre -ēvī -ētum · v2 · fill up,
complete.

concilium -i n · n2 · a council,
gathering.

condiciō -ōnis f · n3 · condition,
terms.

cōnfligō -fligere -flixi -flīctum · v3 ·
contend (+ cum + abl.).

congregō -āre · v1 · gather, collect.

coniugium -ii n · n2 · marriage.

coniūctus -a -um · a12 · close,
intimate.

coniūrātiō -ōnis f · n3 · conspiracy.

cōnor cōnārī cōnātus sum · v1d ·
attempt.

conscendō -ere -di -sum · v3 ·
embark, go on board (+ in + acc.).

cōnsiderō -āre · v1 · examine.

consilium -ii n · n2 · plan.

cōnsōlor cōnsōlārī cōnsōlātus sum ·
v1d · console.

cōnspiciō -ere cōnspēxī cōnspectum ·
v3i · see, catch sight of.

constans -antis · a3 · constant, firm.

cōnsul -ulis m · n3 · a consul (Roman
magistrate).

cōnsultō -āre · v1 · consult, deliberate.

cōnsūmō -ere cōnsūmpsī
consumptum · v3 · 'consume',
devour, waste, destroy.

contemnō -ere -tempsi -temptum ·
v3 · despise.

contemplor -ārī -ātus sum · v1d ·
contemplate.

contendō -ere -ī contum · v3 ·
 'contend', try my strength.
 contentiō -ōnis f · n3 · dispute.
 contentus -a -um · a12 · contented
 with (+ abl.).
 contrā · prep · against (+ acc.).
 convocō -āre · v1 · to call together.
 cōpiae -ārum ff · n1 · forces.
 Corinthus -ī f · n2 · Corinth.
 cornū -ūs n · n4 · horn, antler, tusk.
 corōna -ae f · n1 · garland, crown.
 corpus -poris n · n3 · body.
 crās · adv · tomorrow.
 cremō -āre · v1 · burn (→ cremate).
 creō -āre · v1 · create; elect.
 crīnis -is m · n3i · the hair (generally
 used in plural).
 cruciō -āre · v1 · torture.
 crudēlis -e · a3 · cruel.
 crūdēlitās -ātis f · n3 · cruelty.
 crūdēliter · adv · cruelly.
 cubiculum -ī n · n2 · a bedroom.
 culpa -ae f · n1 · blame, fault.
 culpō -āre · v1 · blame.
 cum · prep · with (+ abl.).
 cumulō -āre · v1 · load.
 cunae -ārum ff · n1 · cradle.
 cupīdō -inis f · n3 · desire.
 cupidus -a -um · a12 · adj. + gen.,
 fond, fond of.
 cupiō cupere cupīvī cupītum · v3i ·
 desire.
 cūr · adv · why?.
 cūra -ae f · n1 · care (pred. dat. curae,
 an object of care).

cūrō -āre · v1 · to look after, take care
 of.
 currō currere cucurrī cursum · v3 ·
 run.
 currus -ūs m · n4 · chariot.
 cursus -ūs m · n4 · a course; running.
 curvō -āre · v1 · curve, bend.
 custōdiō -īre -īvī -ītum · v4 · guard.
 custōs -odis m · n3 · guardian.
 Cynicus -ī m · n3 · a Cynic
 philosopher, a Cynic.

D

damnātus -a -um · a12 · condemned.
 damnō -āre · v1 · condemn (capitis, to
 death; lit., of the head).
 Dārēus -ii m · n2 · Darius.
 dē · prep · down from; about,
 concerning (+ abl.).
 dea -ae f · n1 · goddess.
 debellō -āre · v1 · vanquish, subdue.
 dēbeō -ēre -uī -ītum · v2 · owe.
 decem · num · ten.
 decimus -a -um · a12 · tenth.
 decipiō -ere -cepi -ceptum · v3i ·
 deceive.
 decorō -āre · v1 · decorate, adorn.
 decus -oris n · n3 · an ornament.
 dedecus -oris n · n3 · a disgrace.
 defatigō -āre · v1 · exhaust, tire.
 dēfendō -ere dēfendī, dēfensum · v3 ·
 'defend'.
 defensor -ōris m · n3 · defender.
 dēficiō dēficere dēfēcī dēfectum · v3i ·
 withdraw, abandon, fail.

dēfleō -ēre -evi -etum · v2 · lament,
weep over.

dēfōrmis -e · a3 · shapeless.

dēiciō dēicere dēiēcī dēiectum · v3i ·
throw down, cast down
(→ dejected).

deinde · adv · then, thereupon.

dēlecto -āre · v1 · delight, please,
charm.

dēlectus -ūs m · n4 · a levy (of troops).

dēleō -ēre -ēvī dēlētum · v2 · destroy.

dēligō dēligere dēlēgī dēlēctum · v3 ·
choose.

dēmō dēmere dēmpsī dēmptum · v3 ·
take away.

dēnsus -a -um · a12 · thick.

dērigō dērigere dērēxī dērēctum · v3 ·
direct.

dēsērō -ere dēsēruī dēsertum · v3 ·
'desert'.

dēsertus -a -um · a12 · 'deserted'.

dēsīgnō -āre · v1 · mark out.

dēstituō -ere -uī -ūtum · v3 · forsake,
desert.

destruō -ere -xi -ctum · v3 · 'destroy'.

desum dē(e)sse dēfuī · v · fail; want
for (+ dat. of thing; nihil mihi
dēerit, I shall want for nothing).

deterreo -ēre -uī -itum · v2 · 'deter'
(+ de + abl.).

dēturbō -āre · v1 · throw down.

deus dei m · n2 · a god.

dēvorō -āre · v1 · devour.

dexter -tra -terum · a12 · right.

dextra -ae f · n1 · right hand; ad
dextram, to the right.

Diāna -ae f · n1 · Diana.

dicio -ōnis m · n3 · sway, power.

dīcō dīcere dīxī dictum · v3 · say,
speak.

dictātōr -ōris m · n3 · 'dictator' (chief
magistrate).

dictātūra -ae f · n1 · dictatorship.

diēs diē c · n5 · day.

difficilis -e · a3 · difficult,
inaccessible; slow.

dignius -a -um · a12 · worthy of
(+ abl.).

diligens -entis · a3 · diligent.

diligenter · adv · carefully.

dīligentia -ae f · n1 · diligence.

dīligō dīligere dīlēxī dīlēctum · v3 ·
cherish, love.

dimidius -a -um · a12 · half.

Diogenes -is m · n3 · Diogenes (the
Cynic philosopher).

dīrigo -ere dīrexī dīrectum · v3 ·
'direct'.

dīrus -a -um · a12 · dreadful, terrible.

discerpō -ere discerpsī discerptum ·
v3 · cut in pieces, carve.

disciplīna -ae f · n1 · training.

discipulus -ī m · n2 · pupil.

diū · adv · for a long time.

dīversus -a -um · a12 · different.

dīvidō -ere dīvīsī dīvīsum · v3 ·
'divide'.

dīvīnus -a -um · a12 · 'divine'.

divitiae -ārum ff · n1 · wealth, riches.

dō dare dedī datum · v1 · give; (of a
penalty) to undergo, suffer.

doceō -ēre -uī doctum · v2 · teach.

doctus -a -um · a12 · learned.
 doleō dolēre doluī dolitum · v2 ·
 grieve.
 dolor -ōris m · n3 · grief.
 dolus -i m · n2 · stratagem.
 domi · adv · at home.
 domina -ae f · n1 · a mistress.
 dominus -i m · n2 · a master.
 domus -ūs f · n4 · a house (abl. sg.
 domo, acc. pl., domos; loc. domī).
 dōnum -i n · n2 · a gift.
 dormiō -īre -īvī -ītum · v4 · sleep.
 dubius -a -um · a12 · doubtful.
 ducenti -ae -a · num · two hundred.
 dūcō dūcere dūxī ductum · v3 · lead.
 dulcis -e · a3 · sweet, pleasant.
 dum · conj · while.
 duo duae duo · num · two.
 duodecim · num · twelve.
 duodecim · num · twelfth.
 duodēvigintī · num · eighteen.
 dūrus -a -um · a12 · hard.
 dux ducis c · n3 · a leader.

E

e, ex · prep · out of, from (+ abl.).
 ecce · interj · lo!, behold!; here is
 (+ nom.).
 ēdūcō ēdūcere ēdūxī ēductum · v3 ·
 ‘educate’.
 efflō -āre · v1 · breathe out.
 ego mei · pron · I (acc. me, dat. mihi).
 ēheu · interj · alas!.
 elementum -ī n · n2 · element, (pl.)
 first principles, rudiments.
 elephantus -i m · n2 · ‘elephant’.

eligo eligere ēlēgī elēctum · v3 · ‘elect’.
 ēloquēns -entis · a3 · eloquent.
 ēloquentia -ae f · n1 · eloquence.
 Elysium -ii n · n2 · Elysium, the
 Elysian fields (the abode of the
 blessed).
 ēmendō -āre · v1 · free from faults,
 improve.
 ēminēō ēminēre ēminuī · v2 · stand
 out.
 enim · conj · for.
 eō · adv · so much, by so much
 (+ comp. adj.).
 eō īre īvi (ii) itum · v · go.
 Ephesius -a -um · a12 · Ephesian,
 Ephesus.
 Epicūrēus -a -um · a12 · Epicurean.
 Epicurus -i m · n2 · Epicurus (the
 famous philosopher who held
 pleasure to be the highest good).
 eques -itis m · n3 · cavalryman,
 horseman, horse-soldier.
 equester -tris -tre · a3 · of a
 horseman, equestrian.
 equitātus -ūs m · n4 · cavalry.
 equus -i m · n2 · a horse.
 ēripiō -ere -uī ēreptus · v3i · snatch
 away.
 errō -āre · v1 · wander, ‘err’, be
 incorrect.
 error -ōris m · n3 · a mistake.
 erudiō -īre -īvī -ītum · v4 · train.
 esuriō -īre ēsurīvī ēsurītum · v4 ·
 desire to eat, suffer hunger, be
 hungry, hunger.
 et · conj · and.

etiam · adv · also.

Ētrūria -ae f · n1 · 'Etruria' (a country north of Rome).

Eurystheus Eurystheī m · n2 ·

Eurystheus (king of Mycenae).

ex · prep · out of, from (+ abl.).

exanimō -āre · v1 · alarm, deprive of courage.

exciō -īre -īvī -itum · v4 · rouse.

excito -āre · v1 · arouse, inflame.

exemplum -ī n · n2 · an example.

exeo -īre -iī -itum · v · go out, depart, leave (+ ex/de).

exerceō -ēre -uī -itum · v2 · exercise, train.

exercitus -ūs m · n4 · army.

exitium -ī n · n2 · destruction.

exordium -i n · n2 · commencement.

expediō -īre -īvī -itum · v4 · set free (+ a(b), from); disclose.

experientia -ae f · n1 · experience.

explicō -āre · v1 · explain.

explorō -āre · v1 · to examine.

expugnō -āre · v1 · capture.

exspectō -āre · v1 · await.

extinguō -ere extinxī extinctum · v3 · destroy, annihilate.

extorqueō -ēre extorsī extortum · v2 · twist out, wrench.

F

faber -bri m · n2 · a workman.

Fābricius -i m · n2 · Fabricius.

fābula -ae f · n1 · tale, story.

facilis -e · a3 · easy, inclined; quick.

facinus -oris n · n3 · an outrage.

faciō facere fēci factum · v3i · make;

verba facere, to speak, plead.

factio -ōnis f · n3 · a party faction.

factum -ī n · n2 · a deed.

fāma -ae f · n1 · fame, renown.

fātum -ī n · n2 · fate.

fauces -ium ff · n3i · corridor, passage.

fēlicitas -atis f · n3 · good luck, fortune, happiness.

feliciter · adv · luckily.

fēlīx -īcis · a3 · happy, fortunate, prosperous.

fēmīna -ae f · n1 · a woman.

fenestra -ae f · n1 · a window.

ferāx -ācis · a3 · fertile.

ferōcia -ae f · n1 · wildness; 'ferocity', savageness.

ferōx -ōcis · a3 · fierce, warlike.

ferreus -a -um · a12 · of iron.

ferula -ae f · n1 · a whip, rod.

fessus -a -um · a12 · weary.

fēstus -a -um · a12 · festal.

fidēs -eī f · n5 · faith, fidelity.

fides -ium ff · n3i · a stringed instrument, lyre.

fīdus -a -um · a12 · faithful.

figō figere fixī fixum · v3 · fix.

figūra -a f · n1 · figure.

filia -ae f · n1 · daughter.

filius -ii m · n2 · son.

fīngō -ere finxī fictum · v3 · invent, devise.

finiō -īre -īvī -itum · v4 · finish.

fīnis -is m · n3i · end.

finitimus -a -um · a12 · near (to
 + dat.).
 firmitas -ātis f · n3 · strength.
 firmō -āre · v1 · strengthen.
 firmus -a -um · a12 · firm.
 flagrō -āre · v1 · burn.
 flamma -ae f · n1 · flame.
 flectō -ere flēxī flexum · v3 · bend,
 turn (→ inflection).
 flōreō -ēre -uī · v2 · flourish.
 flōs floris m · n3 · flower.
 fluctus -ūs m · n4 · wave, flood.
 flūmen -minis n · n3 · river.
 focus -i m · n2 · hearth.
 foedus -eris m · n3 · a treaty.
 forma -ae f · n1 · shape, beauty.
 fōrmō -āre · v1 · shape, fashion, form,
 build.
 fortasse · adv · perhaps.
 forte · adv · by chance.
 fortis -e · a3 · brave.
 fortitūdō -dinis f · n3 · bravery.
 fortūna -ae f · n1 · fortune.
 forum -i n · n2 · a market-place.
 fossa -ae f · n1 · a ditch.
 frāter frātris m · n3 · brother.
 fraus fraudis f · n3 · a trick.
 frīgus -goris n · n3 · cold.
 frōns frontis f · n3i · front.
 fructus -ūs m · n4 · fruit.
 frūgālītās -ātis f · n3 · 'frugality'.
 frūmentum -i n · n2 · corn.
 frustrā · adv · in vain.
 frūstror frūstrārī frūstrātus sum · v1d
 · frustrate.
 fuga -ae f · n1 · flight.

fugiō fugere fūgī fugitum · v3i · flee.
 fugō -āre · v1 · put to flight, cause to
 flee.
 fundō fundere fūdī fūsum · v3 · pour
 out.
 fundus -i m · n2 · farm.
 fūnus -eris n · n3 · death, funeral.
 furor -ōris m · n3 · madness, rage.

G

Gāius Gāi m · n2 · Gaius.
 galea -ae f · n1 · a helmet.
 gallina -ae f · n1 · a hen, fowl.
 gaudeō -ēre gāvīsus sum · v · rejoice,
 be glad.
 gaudium -ii n · n2 · joy.
 gēns gentia f · n3 · race, people.
 genū -ūs n · n4 · knee.
 genus -eris n · n3 · a kind, race.
 gerō gerere gessī gestum · v3 · wage.
 gladius -ii m · n2 · sword.
 glōria -ae f · n1 · glory.
 gracilis -e · a3 · graceful.
 Graecia -ae f · n1 · Greece.
 Graecus -a -um · a12 · Greek.
 grātia -ae f · n1 · thanks; est tibi
 gratia, I thank you.
 Grātiaē -ārum ff · n1 · the Graces
 (goddesses of beauty).
 gratis · adv · 'gratis', free, without
 charge.
 grātulātiō -ōnis f · n3 ·
 congratulation.
 grātus -a -um · a12 · pleasing,
 grateful.
 gravis -e · a3 · heavy.

gravitās -ātis f · n3 · weight,
importance.

graviter · adv · heavily, severely.

gubernō -āre · v1 · govern.

gymnasium -iī n · n2 · gymnasium.

H

habeo delectum · ph · hold a levy (of
troops).

habeo fidem · ph · place confidence in
(+ dat. of person).

habeo grātiām · ph · be grateful.

habēō habēre habuī habitum · v2 ·
have, hold, consider; habeo
fidem, place confidence in (+ dat.
of person).

habitō -āre · v1 · dwell, live.

Hannibal -alis m · n3 · Hannibal.

harēna -ae f · n1 · sand, the sand-
covered arena (place of combat in
amphitheatre).

hasta -ae f · n1 · a spear.

Hector -oris m · n3 · 'Hector' (son of
Priam, king of Troy).

Helena -ae f · n1 · Helen.

herba -ae f · n1 · grass.

Herculēs -is m · n3 · 'Hercules'.

heus · interj · hey!, ho!, ho there!,
listen!.

hiberna -ōrum nn · n2 · winter-
quarters.

Hibernia -ae f · n1 · Ireland.

hīc · adv · here.

hic haec hoc · pron · this, these.

hiems -emis f · n3 · winter.

hilaris -e · a3 · merry, jovial.

hinc · adv · from here, from this
place, hence.

Hispānia -ae f · n1 · Spain.

historia -ae f · n1 · history.

hodiē · adv · today.

Homērus -ī m · n2 · Homer (an early
Greek poet).

homō -minis c · n3 · human being, a
man, a person.

honestas -ātis f · n3 · honesty.

honestus -a -um · a12 · honest.

honor -ōris m · n3 · honour.

hōra -ae f · n1 · hour.

Horātius -ī m · n2 · Horace.

horreō -ēre -uī · v2 · dread.

horribilis -e · a3 · horrible.

horridus -a -um · a12 · rough.

hortor hortārī hortātus sum · v1d ·
exhort.

hortus -i m · n2 · garden.

hospes -itis m · n3 · guest.

hostilis -e · a3 · hostile.

hostis -is c · v3i · enemy (usually pl.).

hūc · adv · hither.

hūmānus -a -um · a12 · natural to
man, human.

humilis -e · a3 · humble.

I

iaceō -ēre -uī · v2 · lie, lie dead.

iaciō iacere iēcī iactum · v3i · throw,
hurl.

iacō -āre · v1 · throw.

iaculum -i n · n2 · a dart, javelin.

iam · adv · now, already.

ibi · adv · there.

- id temporis · ph · at that time.
 idem eadem idem · pron · the same;
 idem qui, the same as.
 igitur · conj · therefore, then.
 ignāvia -ae f · n1 · cowardice.
 ignāvus -a -um · a12 · idle.
 ignis -is m · n3 · fire.
 ignōrō -āre · n1 · not know, be
 ignorant of.
 ille illa illud · pron · that; he, she, it;
 the former; the famous
 (+ person's name).
 illūc · adv · thither.
 illūminō -āre · v1 · light up.
 illūstris -e · a3 · illustrious.
 imago -inis f · n3 · an image.
 imāgō -inis f · n3 · bust, statue.
 imber -bris m · n3 · rain.
 imitor imitārī imitātus sum · v1d ·
 imitate.
 immānis -e · a3 · immense.
 immortalis -e · a3 · immortal.
 impedimentum -ī n · n2 · a
 hindrance.
 impediō -īre -īvī -ītum · v4 · hinder,
 entangle, burden.
 imperātor -ōris m · n3 · emperor,
 general.
 imperitus -a -um · a12 · unskilled.
 imperium -īi n · n2 · rule, command.
 imperō -āre · v1 · order.
 impetrō -āre · v1 · obtain (by asking).
 impetus -ūs m · n4 · an attack.
 impleō implēre implēvī implētum ·
 v2 · fill up.
 impluvium -ī n · n2 · 'impluvium'.
 impōnō -ere imposuī imposītum · v3
 · place, put (+ dat.).
 importō -āre · v1 · bring in,
 introduce.
 improbus -a -um · a12 · wicked.
 in · prep · in, on (+ abl.); into, onto
 (+ acc.).
 incendium -īi n · n2 · a fire,
 conflagration, blaze; house on
 fire.
 incendō -ere -di -sum · v3 · set on
 fire.
 incertus -a -um · a12 · uncertain.
 incitō · v1 · urge on.
 incola -ae m · n1 · an inhabitant.
 incommodum -ī n · n2 · disaster.
 incursiō -ōnis f · n3 · an attack.
 indicō -dīcere -dīxī -dictum · v3 ·
 declare (+ dat.; bellum Romaniis
 indico, I declare war on the
 Romans).
 industrius -a -um · a12 · industrious.
 in eo -īre inīvī initum · v · go in, enter
 upon, enter.
 infāns -ntis m · v3 · 'infant'.
 infēlix -īcis · a3 · unhappy.
 infidus -a -um · a12 · faithless.
 infligō infligere inflixī inflictum · v3 ·
 inflict.
 infrā · adv · below.
 ingenium -īi n · n2 · cleverness.
 ingēns -ēntis · a3 · immense.
 ingrātus -a -um · a12 · ungrateful.
 inimicus -a -um · a12 · hostile.
 inimicus -i m · n2 · a (private) enemy.
 initium initīi n · n2 · beginning.

iniuria -ae f · n1 · an injury, wrong,
loss.
insidiae -ārum ff · n1 · ambush.
īnstituō -ere īnstituī īnstitūtum · v3 ·
train, instruct.
īnstruō -ere īnstruī īnstrūctum · v3 ·
to draw up.
insula -ae f · n1 · an island.
integritās integritātis f · n3 ·
integrity.
intellegō -ere intellēxī intellēctum ·
v3 · understand.
inter · prep · between, among; during
(+ acc.).
interdum · adv · sometimes.
intereā · adv · meanwhile.
interficiō -ficere -fēcī -fectum · v3i ·
kill.
interpōnō -ere -posuī -positum · v3 ·
let pass, leave (an interval).
intrō -āre · v1 · enter.
invidia -ae f · n1 · envy, jealousy, ill-
will.
invidus -a -um · a12 · jealous.
invītō -āre · v1 · 'invite'.
invītus -a -um · a12 · unwilling.
iocōsus -a -um · a12 · witty,
humorous, funny.
īra -ae f · n1 · anger.
īrātus -a -um · a12 · angry.
irrītō -āre · v1 · provoke, excite.
is ea id · pron · that; he, she, it.
iste ista istud · pron · that, that near
you; that of yours.
itaque (ita + -que) · conj · and so.
iter itineris n · n3 · journey.

iterō -āre · v1 · repeat.
iterum · adv · again.
iuba -ae f · n1 · mane.
iubeō iubēre iussī iūssum · v2 · order.
iūcundus -a -um · a12 · pleasant.
iūdex -icis m · n3 · judge.
iūdicium -ii n · n2 · a trial.
iūdico -āre · v1 · to judge.
iungo currum equis · ph · to harness
the horses to the chariot.
iungō iungere iūnxī iūnctum · v3 ·
join.
Iuno -ōnis f · n3 · Juno.
Iuppiter (< Iovis pater) Iovis m · n3 ·
Jupiter (acc. Iovem, gen. Iovis,
dat. Iovī, abl. Iove).
iūs iuris n · n3 · law.
iuvenis -is · a3 · young (gen. pl.
iuvenum).
iuvenis -is c · n3 · a young person
(gen. pl. iuvenum).
iuventūs -ūtis f · n3 · youth.
iuvō -āre · v1 · assist, help.
iuxtā · prep · near (+ acc.).
Ixīon -onis m · n3 · Ixion (king of the
Lapithae).

L

labor -ōris m · n3 · labour.
lāc lactis n · n3 · milk.
lacerna -ae f · n1 · a cloak.
lacerō -āre · v1 · tear, rend.
laetor, laetārī, laetātus sum · v1d ·
rejoice.
lāna -ae f · n1 · wool.
Lāomedon -ontis m · n3 · Laomedon.

- latēbrae -ārum ff · n1 · hiding place.
lateō -ēre -uī · v2 · lie hidden.
Latini -ōrum mm · n2 · the Latins
(inhabitants of Latium, in which
country Rome was situated).
Latīnus -a -um · a12 · Latin, of
Latium; (as n. subst.) the Latin
language.
latro -ōnis m · n3 · robber.
lātus -a -um · a12 · broad.
laudō -āre · v1 · praise.
laus laudis f · n3 · praise.
lavō lavāre lāvī lavātum · v1 · wash.
lēgātus -ī m · n2 · ambassador,
‘legate’.
legiō -ōnis f · n3 · legion.
legō legere lēgī lēctum · v3 · read.
lēniō -īre -īvī -ītum · v4 · calm,
appease.
leo -ōnis m · n3 · a lion.
Leonidas -ae m · n3 · Leonidas (voc.
Leonida).
lētum lēti n · n2 · death, ruin.
levis leve · a3 · light.
levō -āre · v1 · lighten, alleviate.
lex lēgis f · n3 · law.
libenter · adv · gladly, willingly.
liber -bri m · n2 · a book.
libēr -era -erum · a12 · free (from
+ abl.).
liberi -ōrum mm · n2 · children.
libērō -āre · v1 · set free.
libertās -ātis f · n3 · freedom, ‘liberty’.
libet libēre libuit or libitum est · v · it
is agreeable to (+ dat. of person
concerned + inf. ± acc.).
ligneus -a -um · a12 · wooden.
lignum -i n · n2 · a log of wood.
limen -inis n · n3 · threshold.
lingua -ae f · n1 · language.
linteum -ī n · n2 · linen cloth, sail.
linum -ī n · n2 · linen.
littera -ae f · n1 · a letter (of alphabet);
pl. litterae -arum, a letter
(epistle); literature.
litterārius -a -um · a12 · of reading
and writing; ludus litterarius,
primary school, elementary
school.
litus -toris n · n3 · shore.
locō -āre · v1 · place.
locus -i m · n2 · a place.
Londīnium -iī n · n2 · London.
longe · adv · far.
longus -a -um · a12 · long.
loquor loquī locūtus sum · v3d ·
speak.
lōrica -ae f · n1 · breastplate.
ludendum -i n · n2 · play, playing (a
gerund, not used in nom.).
lūdō lūdere lūsī lūsum · v3 · play.
lūdus -i m · n2 · school; sport, play;
fun.
lūgubris -e · a3 · mournful.
lūna -ae f · n1 · the moon.
lupus -i m · n2 · wolf.
luscinia -ae f · n1 · nightingale.
lūsus lūsus m · n4 · a game.
lūx lūcis f · n3 · light.
luxuria -ae f · n1 · ‘luxury’.
luxuriosus -a -um · a12 · extravagant,
‘luxurious’.

Lycia -ae f · n1 · 'Lycia' (a country in Asia Minor).

Lýdia -ae f · n1 · Lydia (district in West of Asia Minor).

lyra -ae f · n1 · 'lyre'.

M

Macedones -um mm · n3 · the Macedonians.

mactō -āre · v1 · sacrifice.

magis · adv · more (comp.).

magister -tri m · n2 · master, teacher.

magistra -ae f · n1 · mistress.

magistratus -ūs m · n4 · a magistrate.

māgnitūdō -inis f · n3 · size.

māgnoperē · adv · greatly.

magnus -a -um · a12 · great.

māiestās -ātis f · n3 · 'majesty'.

māior · a3 · greater (comp.).

male · adv · badly.

malum -i n · n2 · a misfortune.

malus -a -um · a12 · bad.

mandō -āre · v1 · entrust, commit.

māne · adv · in the morning.

manēō manēre mānsī mānsum · v2 · remain.

mānes -ium mm · n3i · shades (of the dead).

manus -ūs f · n4 · hand.

Marathōnius -a -um · a12 · of Marathon.

Marcus -i m · n2 · Marcus.

mare maris n · n3i · the sea (gen. pl. marum, found once).

maritimus -a -um · a12 · of the sea, 'maritime'.

marītus -i m · n2 · husband.

Marius -i m · n2 · Marius (a Roman general).

marmoreus -a -um · a12 · marble, marmoreal.

māter mātris f · n3 · mother.

mātūrō -āre · v1 · hasten (+ an acc. like iter, fugam, etc.).

Mausōlus -i m · n2 · Mausolus (king of Caria).

maxime · adv · most, especially.

maximus -a -um · a12 · greatest (superl.).

Medi -ōrum mm · n2 · the Medes.

medius -a -um · a12 · middle (media navis, the middle of the ship).

membrum -i n · n2 · limb.

memoria -ae f · n1 · memory.

mendīcus -i m · n2 · a beggar.

mēns mentis f · n3 · mind.

mensa -ae f · n1 · table; secunda mensa, dessert (when both dishes and table were changed).

mēnsis -is m · n3i · month.

mereor merēri meritus sum · v2d · deserve.

meridies -iē m · n5 · midday, noon.

metallum -ī n · n2 · metal.

metus -ūs m · n4 · fear.

meus -a -um · a12 · my, mine (personal pronominal adjective).

migrō -āre · v1 · depart.

mīles -itis m · n3 · soldier.

mīlia nn · num · thousand.

minister -tri m · n2 · a servant.

ministrō -āre · v1 · wait upon, serve.

minor -ōris · a3 · less (comp. of parvus).
 Minos Mīnōis m · v3 · Minos (a judge in the lower world).
 mīrāculum -ī n · n2 · a wonder, marvel, 'miracle'.
 mīrus -a -um · a12 · wonderful.
 misceō miscēre miscuī mīxtum · v2 · 'mix'.
 miser -era -erum · a12 · wretched.
 miserābilis -e · a3 · miserable.
 mittō mittere mīsī missum · v3 · send.
 moderor moderārī moderātus sum · v1d · govern.
 modo · adv · only, just.
 modus -i m · n2 · measure, limit, manner.
 moenia moenium nn · n3i · walls (of a town).
 mōlēs mōlis f · n3i · a dam, pier, breakwater, 'mole'.
 molestus -a -um · a12 · troublesome.
 molliō -īre -īvī -ītum · v4 · soften.
 mollitia -ae f · n1 · softness.
 Mona -ae f · n1 · the Isle of Man.
 moneō -ēre -uī -itum · v3 · warn, advise.
 mōns montis m · n3i · a hill, mountain (gen. pl. montium).
 mōnstrō -āre · v1 · show.
 monstrum -i m · n2 · monster.
 monumentum -i n · n2 · monument.
 mora -ae f · n1 · delay.
 morem gero · ph · to comply with (+ dat. of person).

morior morīrī moritus sum · v3id · die.
 mors mortis f · n3i · death (gen. pl. mortium).
 mortalis -is c · n3i · a mortal.
 mortuus -a -um · a12 · dead; (as m. subst.) a dead person.
 mōs mōris m · n3 · custom; (pl.) morals, customs, conduct.
 moveō -ēre mōvī mōtum · v2 · move, throw.
 mox · adv · soon.
 multitūdō -dinis f · n3 · band, multitude.
 multum · adv · much, very.
 multus -a -um · a12 · many, much.
 mundus -i m · n2 · world.
 mūniō -īre -īvī -ītum · v4 · fortify, defend.
 mūnus -eris n · n3 · a gift, present.
 mūraena -ae f · n1 · a sea eel, moray eel, lamprey (found in the sea).
 mūrus -i m · n2 · wall.
 Mūsa -ae f · n1 · a Muse.
 musicus -a -um · a12 · musical; hence musica -ōrum nn, music.
 mūtātiō -ōnis f · n3 · change.
 mūto -āre · v1 · to change.
 Mycēnae -ārum ff · n1 · Mycenae (ancient town in Greece).

N

nam · conj · for.
 narrō -āre · v1 · relate.
 nātālis -e · a3 · natal, of birth; (as m. subst.) birthday.

nātiō -ōnis f · n3 · a tribe, nation.

nātūra -ae f · n1 · nature.

nauta -ae m · n1 · sailor.

nāvigō -āre · v1 · sail.

nāvis -is f · n3i · a ship (nāvis longa,
war-ship).

Neāpolis -is f · n3i · 'Naples' (acc. -im,
abl. -i).

necessārius -a -um · a12 · necessary.

necesse (+ esse/habere) · a · (indecl. n.
adj.) necessary.

necō -āre · v1 · kill.

nefastus -a -um · a12 · unholy (days
on which no trials or assemblies
were held).

neglegens -entis · a3 · careless of
(+ gen.).

neglegō neglegere neglēxī neglēctum
· v3 · 'neglect'.

negō -āre · v1 · deny, refuse.

negōtium -ii m · n2 · business.

nēmō c · pron · nobody (acc.
nēminem, dat. nēminī, for other
cases nullius and nullo nullī
used).

nempe · adv · certainly, without
doubt.

neque or nec · conj · and not, nor.

Nero -ōnis m · n3 · Nero (a Roman
emperor).

niger -gra -grum · a12 · black.

nihil, nīl · n · nothing; not at all.

Nilus -i m · n2 · the Nile.

nimis · adv · too, too much.

nisi · conj · if . . . not, unless.

nītor nītī nīxus sum · v3d · strive.

nōbilis -e · a3 · noble.

noctua -ae f · n1 · an owl.

nōlo nolle nōlui · v · be unwilling, not
wish.

nōmen -minis n · n3 · name.

nōminō -āre · v1 · name.

nōn · adv · not.

non iam · ph · no longer.

nondum · adv · not yet.

nonne · adv · interrog., not?.

nōnus -a -um · a12 · ninth.

noster -tra -trum · a12 · our (personal
pronominal adjective).

nōtus -a -um · a12 · known.

novem · num · nine.

novus -a -um · a12 · new.

nox noctis f · n3i · night.

noxius -a -um · a12 · hurtful.

nūbēs -is f · n3i · cloud.

nūdus -a -um · a12 · naked, bare.

num · adv · interrogative particle
expecting a negative answer.

numerus -i m · n2 · number.

nunc · adv · now.

nunquam · adv · never.

nuntiō -āre · v1 · announce, report.

nuntius -ii m · n2 · messenger.

nūper · adv · lately.

nuptiae -ārum ff · n1 · wedding.

nūtriō -īre -īvī -ītum · v4 · nurse,
nourish.

O

ō · interj · O! Oh! (vocative particle).

ob · prep · against, on account of
(+ acc.).

obnoxius -a -um · a12 · exposed to
(+ dat.).
obses -idis m · n3 · hostage.
obsideō -ēre obsēdi obsessum · v2 ·
besiege, attack.
obviam · adv · in the way; + ire, to go
to meet, to meet (+ dat. of
person).
occāsio -ōnis f · n3 · opportunity.
ōceanus -i m · n2 · ocean.
octāvus -a -um · a12 · eighth.
octigenti -ae -a · num · eight
hundred.
octō · num · eight.
oculus -i m · n2 · eye.
odor -ōris m · n3 · scent.
offendō offendere offendī offēsum ·
v3 · offend.
ōlim · adv · formerly.
olīva -ae f · n1 · olive-tree, olive.
Olympias -adis f · n3 · Olympiad.
Olympius -a -um · a12 · Olympic (of
Olympia, a town in the West of
Greece).
omnis -e · a3 · all, every, as a whole.
onerō -āre · v1 · load.
onus -eris n · n3 · burden.
operārius -a -um · a12 · working.
oppidum -i n · n2 · a town.
opprimō -ere -essī -essum · v3 ·
crush, overwhelm.
oppugnō -āre · v1 · attack.
optimus -a -um · a12 · best, excellent.
optō -āre · v1 · desire.
opulentus -a -um · a12 · rich,
'opulent'.

opus -eris n · n3 · work, labour.
opus est · ph · there is a need (to
+ dat. of person, of + abl. of thing
wanted).
ora -ae f · n1 · coast, shore.
ōrāculum -ī n · n2 · oracle.
ōrātiō -ōnis f · n3 · speech, 'oration'.
ōrātor -ōris m · n3 · an orator.
orbis -is m · n3i · a circle; orbis
terrarum, the circle of the earth,
the world.
orīgō -ginis f · n3 · commencement,
origin.
ornāmentum -i n · n2 · ornament.
ōrnātus -a -um · a12 · adorned,
having been adorned.
ornō -āre · v1 · adorn.
ōrō -āre · v1 · implore, beseech.
Orphēus -i m · n2 · Orpheus (the
famous singer).
ostendō -ere -ī ostentum/ostensum ·
v3 · show, hold out.
ostium -ii n · n2 · door.
ostrea -ae f · n1 · an oyster.
ovis -is f · n3i · sheep.

P

paedagōgus -ī m · n2 · a preceptor (a
slave to look after children and
take them to school).
paene · adv · almost.
palaestra -ae f · n1 · wrestling school.
palātium -iī n · n2 · palace.
pallium -iī n · n2 · cloak.
pallium -iī n · n2 · cloak, robe.
palūs palūdis f · n3 · a marsh.

pānis -is m · n3 · bread.
 pār paris · a3 · equal to, a match for
 (+ dat.).
 pāreō -ēre -uī · v2 · obey (+ dat.).
 parō -āre · v1 · prepare.
 pars partis f · n3 · part.
 partior partīrī partītus sum · v3id ·
 share.
 parum · adv · little, too little.
 parvus -a -um · a12 · small.
 passus -ūs m · n4 · pace.
 pastor -ōris m · n3 · a shepherd.
 pater patris m · n3 · father (pl. patres
 -um mm, the senators).
 patiēns -entis · a3 · patient; capable
 of (+ gen.).
 patientia -ae f · n1 · patience.
 patior patī passus sum · v3id · suffer.
 patria -ae f · n1 · native-land, country.
 paucus -a -um · a12 · few.
 paulisper · adv · for a little time.
 paululum -i n · n2 · a little.
 paupertas -ātis f · n3 · poverty.
 pāvo -ōnis m · n3 · peacock.
 pāx pācis f · n3 · peace.
 peccō -āre · v1 · sin (→ impeccable).
 pectus -toris n · n3 · breast.
 pecūnia -ae f · n1 · money.
 pedes -itis m · n3 · infantryman, foot-
 soldier.
 pedester -tris -tre · a3 · on foot
 (pedestria itinera, journeys on
 foot).
 peditātus -ūs m · n4 · infantry.
 Pēgasus -ī m · n2 · 'Pegasus' (a winged
 horse).

pēior -us · a3 · worse.
 pellis -is f · n3 · a skin.
 pellō -ere pepuli pulsum · v3 · drive.
 pendeō pendēre pependī · v2 · hang,
 be suspended.
 penes · prep · with, at the house of; in
 the hands of, in the power of
 (+ acc.).
 penna -ae f · n1 · feather.
 per · prep · over, through, by (+ acc.).
 perdūcō -ere -xi -ctum · v3 · lead
 through, bring.
 pererrō -āre · v1 · wander over.
 periculōsus -a -um · a12 · dangerous.
 periculum -i n · n2 · danger.
 peristīlium -i n · n2 · 'peristyle' (an
 open court surrounded with
 columns).
 perītus -a -um · a12 · skilful, skilled in
 (+ gen.).
 perniciōsus -a -um · a12 · destructive.
 perpetuus -a -um · a12 · everlasting,
 unfailing.
 Persae -ārum mm · n1 · the Persians.
 Persicus -a -um · a12 · Persian.
 perturbō -āre · v1 · disturb.
 pēs pedis m · n3 · a foot.
 pessimus -a -um · a12 · worst
 (superl.).
 Pharsālius -a -um · a12 · of Pharsalus,
 Pharsalian.
 Pharsālus -i f · n2 · Pharsalus (a city
 in Thessaly).
 Pharus -i f · n2 · lighthouse (esp. on
 the island of Pharos).
 Phīdias -ae m · n1 · Phidias.

philosophus -i m · n2 · philosopher.
 pictus -a -um · a12 · painted.
 pīla -ae f · n1 · ball (pilam movēre, to play ball).
 pilum -i n · n2 · a javelin.
 pingō -ere pinxi pictum · v3 · paint.
 Piraeus -i m · n2 · the Piraeus (one of the three harbours of Athens).
 piscīna -ae f · n1 · a fountain, basin (in which fish were often kept).
 placeō -ēre -uī -itum · v3 · please (+ dat.).
 plācō -āre · v1 · appease.
 plāga -ae f · n1 · a blow.
 Plataeae -ārum ff · n1 · Plataea.
 plēnus -a -um · a12 · full, filled with (+ abl.).
 plōrō -āre · v1 · deplore.
 plūrimum · adv · very, very much (superl.).
 plūrimus -a -um · a12 · very many, most (superl.).
 plūs plūris · a3 · (n. comp.) more, pluris aestimo, to value at a higher price.
 pluteus -ī m · n2 · a bookcase (on which busts of the authors were also placed).
 Plūtō -ōnis m · n3 · Pluto.
 pōculum -i n · n2 · a goblet.
 poena -ae f · n1 · punishment, penalty.
 Poeni -ōrum mm · n2 · Carthaginians.
 poēta -ae m · n1 · poet.
 Polyphēmus -i m · n2 · Polyphemus.

Pompēii -ōrum mm · n2 · Pompeii.
 Pompēius -i m · n2 · Pompey.
 pomum -i m · n2 · fruit, apple.
 pondus -eris n · n3 · weight.
 pōnō pōnere posuī positum · v3 · place; count, reckon.
 pontifex -ficus m · n3 · a high priest.
 populus -i m · n2 · the people.
 porta -ae f · n1 · door, gate.
 portitor -oris m · n3 · ferryman.
 portō -āre · v1 · carry.
 portus -ūs m · n4 · harbour.
 possideō -ēre possēdī possessum · v2 · possess.
 possum posse potui · v · be able.
 post · prep · after (adv., prep. + acc.), behind.
 posteā · adv · after this, afterwards.
 posterus -a -um · a12 · next.
 posticum -i n · n2 · a back door.
 postquam · conj · after.
 postridiē · adv · on the next day.
 postulō -āre · v1 · ask, demand.
 potentia -ae f · n1 · power.
 potestās -ātis f · n3 · power.
 potus -ūs m · n4 · drink.
 praebeō -ēre -uī -itum · v3 · show; lend.
 praeceptor -ōris m · n3 · instructor.
 praeclārus -a -um · a12 · famous.
 praeda -ae f · n1 · prey, booty.
 praedicō -āre · v1 · proclaim.
 praemium -ii n · n2 · reward.
 praescriptum -ī n · n2 · task, lesson.
 praesidium -ii n · n2 · protection.

praestāns -antis · a3 · remarkable,
 excellent.
 praetor -ōris m · n3 · 'praetor', leader.
 premō -ere pressī pressum · v3 ·
 'press', overwhelm, oppress.
 pretium -iī n · n2 · price.
 prex precis f · n3 · a prayer.
 prīmus -a -um · a12 · first.
 prīnceps prīncipis m · n3 · leading
 member, chief man (of a group,
 state, class); prince.
 prior prius · a3 · former, previous,
 'prior', first (comp.).
 prīvātus -a -um · a12 · private.
 pro · prep · for, on behalf of, in
 proportion to (+ abl.).
 probitas -ātis f · n3 · goodness.
 probrum -i n · n2 · abuse, insult.
 procella -ae f · n1 · storm.
 procul · adv · far off.
 prōdeō -īre -ivī -itum · v · go or come
 forth.
 proditio -ōnis f · n3 · treachery.
 proelium -ii n · n2 · battle.
 profectō · adv · without doubt, surely.
 proficīscor proficīscī profectus sum ·
 v3d · set out.
 prōflīgō -āre · v1 · overthrow, utterly
 defeat.
 profuga -ae m · n1 · exile.
 prohibeō -ēre -uī -itum · v3 · keep off.
 promissum -i n · n2 · 'promise'.
 prope · prep · near, next; (comp.)
 propior, (superl.) proximus; (adv.)
 prope, nearly, almost.
 properō -āre · v1 · hasten.

propinquus -a -um · a12 · near.
 propitius -a -um · a12 · favourable,
 'propitious'.
 prōprius -a -um · a12 · not common
 with others, private.
 propter · prep · because of (+ acc.).
 prōpulsō -āre · v1 · ward off, beat off.
 prōra -ae f · n1 · prow.
 proximus -a -um · a12 · next.
 prūdēns -entis · a3 · prudent.
 prūdentia -ae f · n1 · prudence.
 publicus -a -um · a12 · public.
 puella -ae f · n1 · girl, maiden.
 puer puerī m · n2 · boy, slave.
 pugna -ae f · n1 · battle.
 pugnō -āre · v1 · fight.
 pulcher -chra -chrum · a12 ·
 beautiful.
 pulchritūdō -dinis f · n3 · beauty.
 pulsō -āre · v1 · knock at.
 Pūnicus -a -um · a12 · Carthaginian.
 pūniō -īre -ivī -itum · v4 · punish.
 puppis -is f · n3i · stern (rearmost
 part of a ship).
 Puteoli -ōrum mm · n2 · 'Puteoli'
 (near Naples).
 putō -āre · v1 · to think (+ double
 acc.).

Q

quadrāgintā · num · forty.
 quadrīgae -ārum ff · n1 · a four-
 horsed chariot.
 quam · conj · how, how much;
 tam . . . quam, how much . . . as;
 (+ comp.) than.

quam ob rem · adv · wherefore.
 quamquam · conj · although.
 quanndō · adv · when?.
 quartus -a -um · a12 · fourth.
 quartus decimus -a -um · a12 ·
 fourteenth.
 quattuor · num · four.
 quī quae quod · pron · who, which,
 what.
 quia · conj · because.
 quigenti -ae -a · num · five hundred.
 quinquāgintā · num · fifty.
 quinque · num · five.
 quintus -a -um · a12 · fifth.
 quis quid · pron · (interr.) who? what?
 which?.
 quō · adv · whither?, to what place?;
 by how much? (+ comp.).
 quod · conj · because.
 quōmodo · adv · how?.
 quondam · adv · once.
 quoque · adv · also.
 quot · adv · how many? (interr. adj.).
 quotidie · adv · every day, daily.

R

rāmus -i m · n2 · branch.
 rapāx -ācis · a3 · rapacious, greedy.
 rapiō rapere rapuī raptum · v3i ·
 seize, carry off.
 raptō -āre · v1 · seize, drag.
 rārō · adv · rarely.
 rārus -a -um · a12 · rare.
 recipiō -ere recēpī receptum · v3i ·
 retake, recapture.
 recitō -āre · v1 · recite, read aloud.

recordor recordārī recordātus sum ·
 vid · recall.
 rectē · adv · rightly.
 rectus -a -um · a12 · straight.
 reddō reddere reddidī redditum · v3 ·
 render.
 redeo -īre -iī -itum · v · to return.
 reditus -ūs m · n4 · a going back,
 return.
 reducō -ere redūxī reductum · v3 ·
 lead back.
 rēgīna -ae f · n1 · queen.
 regio -ōnis f · n3 · 'region', district,
 country.
 rēgius -a -um · a12 · royal.
 regnō -āre · v1 · reign.
 regnum -i n · n2 · kingdom.
 regō regere rēxī rēctum · v3 · rule,
 guide.
 rēgula -ae f · n1 · a rule.
 Rēgulus -i m · n2 · Regulus.
 religio -ōnis f · n3 · piety, religion.
 removeō removēre remōvī remōtum ·
 v2 · 'remove'.
 rēmus -ī m · n2 · oar.
 renovō -āre · v1 · renew.
 reperio -īre repperī repertum · v4 ·
 find, discover.
 replēō replēre replēvī replētum · v2 ·
 fill again, replenish.
 reportō -āre · v1 · gain.
 repudiō -āre · v1 · reject.
 res adversae ff · ph · adversity.
 res publica f · ph · the republic, state,
 commonwealth (declined in both
 parts).

rēs reī f · n5 · a thing, matter,
 property, deed.
 res se habent · ph · matters stand.
 res secundae ff · ph · prosperity.
 responsum -i n · n2 · an answer.
 retineo retinēre retinui retentum · v2
 · hold back.
 retrāctō -āre · v1 · handle again,
 revise.
 revocō -āre · v1 · recall.
 rēx rēgis m · n3 · king.
 Rhea -ae f · n1 · Rhea.
 rīdeō rīdēre rīsī rīsum · v2 · laugh,
 laugh at.
 ripa -ae f · n1 · bank.
 rīvus -i m · n2 · a stream.
 rogō -āre · v1 · ask.
 Rōma -ae f · n1 · Rome.
 Rōmānus -a -um · a12 · Roman.
 Romulus -i m · n2 · 'Romulus'.
 rosa -ae f · n1 · a rose.
 rōstrum -ī n · n2 · beak of a ship
 (projection used to pierce the
 hulls of enemy ships).
 rota -ae f · n1 · a wheel.
 ruīna -ae f · n1 · ruin.
 rūs rūris n · n3 · the country (opp.
 urbs) (loc. rūri).
 rusticus -a -um · a12 · rustic, rural.

S

Sabini -ōrum mm · n2 · the Sabines
 (neighbours of the Latins).
 sacer -cra -crum · a12 · sacred.
 sacerdos -ōtis m · n3 · priest.
 sacrificium -iī n · n2 · a sacrifice.

saepe · adv · often.
 saeviō -īre -īvī -ītum · v4 · rage (± in,
 against, + acc.).
 saevitia -ae f · n1 · cruelty.
 saevus -a -um · a12 · cruel.
 sagitta -ae f · n1 · arrow.
 Saguntum -i n · n2 · Saguntum (now
 Murviedro).
 saltō -āre · v1 · dance.
 saltus -ūs m · n4 · jumping, leaping.
 salūs -ūtis f · n3 · safety.
 salveō salvēre · v2 · be well, healthy
 (imp. salvē, hail! good day!).
 Samnītes -ium mm · n3i · the
 Samnites (a tribe south of Rome).
 sanctus -a -um · a12 · holy.
 sanō -āre · v1 · heal.
 sānus -a -um · a12 · healthy.
 sapiēns -entis · a3 · wise.
 sapientia -ae f · n1 · wisdom.
 satelles -itis m · n3 · an attendant (on
 a distinguished person).
 satiō -āre · v1 · satisfy.
 satis · adv · enough, sufficiently;
 tolerably.
 saxum -i n · n2 · a stone.
 scelus -eris n · n3 · crime.
 schola -ae f · n1 · school.
 scindō scindere scidī scissum · v3 ·
 cut, carve.
 sciō -īre -īvī -ītum · v4 · know.
 Scīpiō -ōnis m · n3 · Scipio.
 scriptor -ōris m · n3 · a writer.
 scriptum -i n · n2 · something drawn,
 a written composition.
 scūtum -i n · n2 · shield.

sē (acc. sg. and pl.) · pron · him- her-
 itself, themselves (gen. suī, dat.
 sibi, abl. sē).
 sēcrētum -i n · n2 · a secret.
 secundae res ff · ph · prosperity.
 secundo · adv · secondly.
 secundus -a -um · a12 · second, (of
 winds or currents) favourable.
 sed · conj · but.
 sedeō sedēre sēdī sessum · v2 · sit.
 sēdes sēdis f · n3i · abode.
 sēgniter · adv · lazily.
 semel · adv · once.
 Semīramis -is/-idis f · n3 ·
 Semiramis.
 semper · adv · always.
 senātus -ūs m · n4 · the senate.
 senex -is m · n3 · old man (gen. pl.
 senum).
 sēnsus -ūs m · n4 · sense.
 sententia -ae f · n1 · an opinion.
 sentiō sentīre sēnsī sēnsū · v4 · feel.
 sēparō -āre · v1 · divide.
 septem · num · seven.
 septimus -a -um · a12 · seventh.
 sepulcrum -ī n · n2 · tomb.
 sequor sequī secūtus sum · v3d ·
 follow.
 sērius -a -um · a12 · serious.
 sermo -ōnis m · n3 · conversation.
 sērō · adv · late.
 serpēns serpentis c · n3 · snake,
 'serpent'.
 serviō -īre -īvī -ītum · v4 · serve, be
 enslaved to (+ dat.).
 servō -āre · v1 · keep, protect, rescue.

servus -i m · n2 · a slave.
 sevērus -a -um · a12 · serious, 'severe',
 stern.
 sex · num · six.
 sextus -a -um · a12 · sixth.
 sī · conj · if.
 Sibyllīnus -a -um · a12 · of a Sibyl,
 Sibylline (of the prophetesses).
 sīc · adv · thus.
 sicārius -i m · n2 · assassin.
 Sicilia -ae f · n1 · Sicily.
 sidus -eris n · n3 · a star,
 constellation.
 significō -āre · v1 · make known.
 sīgnum -i n · n2 · a sign, statue.
 silva -ae f · n1 · a wood.
 similis -e · a3 · like, similar to (+ dat.;
 + gen. of persons).
 simplex -icis · a3 · simple.
 simplicitas -ātis f · n3 · 'simplicity'.
 simul · adv · at the same time, at
 once.
 simulō -āre · v1 · pretend.
 sine · prep · without (+ abl.).
 sinister -tra -trum · a12 · left; (as f.
 subst.) left hand.
 Sīsypus -ī m · n2 · Sisyphus (king of
 Corinth).
 sitiō -īre -īvī · v4 · thirst.
 sitis sitis f · v3i · thirst (acc. sitim, abl.
 sitī, no pl.).
 situs -ūs m · n4 · site, position.
 societās -ātis f · n3 · fellowship,
 association.
 socius -ii m · n2 · companion.
 Sōcratēs -is m · n3 · Socrates.

sōl sōlis m · n3 · sun.
solea -ae f · n1 · 'sole', sandal, slipper
(worn in the house only).
sollicitō -āre · v1 · distress, tempt
(→ solicit).
sollicitūdō -inis f · n3 · care, anxiety,
'solicitude'.
Solōn -ōnis m · n3 · Solon (a famous
Athenian).
solum · adv · only.
solum -i n · n2 · the ground; hence,
the floor or pavement.
somnus -ī m · n2 · sleep.
soror -ōris f · n3 · sister.
sors sortis f · n3i · lot.
spatium -iī m · n2 · space.
speciēs -eī f · n5 · form, shape.
spectaculum -i n · n2 · a show,
'spectacle'.
spectātor -ōris m · n3 · 'spectator'.
spectō -āre · v1 · look at.
spēlunca -ae f · n1 · a cave.
sperō -āre · v1 · to hope.
spēs speī f · n5 · hope.
splendidus -a -um · a12 · brilliant,
'splendid'.
sponsor -ōris m · n3 · a surety
(someone who takes
responsibility for another's
undertaking).
stadium -iī n · n2 · a racecourse.
statim · adv · immediately.
statua -ae f · n1 · a statue.
stella -ae f · n1 · a star.
stilus -i m · n2 · a stilus.

stō stāre stetī statum · v1 · stand,
remain.
Stōicus -i m · n2 · a Stoic
philosopher.
strēnuus -a -um · a12 · vigorous.
strepitus -ūs m · n4 · noise, din.
stringō stringere strinxī strictum · v3
· bind.
struō struere strūxī strūctum · v3 ·
build, prepare.
studeō studēre studuī · v2 · be eager,
be zealous, care for (+ dat.); (later)
study.
studiōsus -a -um · a12 · eager
(+ gen.); industrious.
studium -ii n · n2 · study, pursuit,
desire; (pl.) studies.
stultus -a -um · a12 · foolish.
Styx Stygis f · n3 · 'Styx' (one of the
nine rivers of the underworld).
sub · prep · up to (+ acc.); under
(+ abl.).
subitō · adv · suddenly.
subsidiū -i n · n2 · help, aid.
Sulla -ae m · n1 · Sulla (a Roman
general).
sum esse fuī · v · be, exist.
summus -a -um · a12 · uppermost,
highest; (as n. subst.) the top.
superbia -ae f · n1 · pride.
superbus -a -um · a12 · proud.
superior -us · a3 · superior, stronger
(comp.).
superō -āre · v1 · surpass, overcome.
supersum superesse superfuī · v · be
left, survive.

supplicium -ī n · n2 · punishment,
torture.
surgō surgere surrēxī · v3 · rise.
suus -a -um · a12 · his, her, its, their
(personal pronominal adjective).

T

tabella -ae f · n1 · a tablet.
tabellārius -i m · n2 · a lettercarrier,
messenger, courier, postman.
taberna -ae f · n1 · shop, inn.
tabula -ae f · n1 · a painting.
tabulinum -i n · n2 · an office,
writing-room (from tabella,
writing-tablet).
taceo -ēre -uī -itum · v2 · be silent
(→ tacit).
tam · conj · so.
tamen · conj · however.
tandem · adv · at length.
Tantalus -i m · n2 · Tantalus (son of
Jupiter).
tardus -a -um · a12 · slow.
Tarquinius -ii m · n2 · Tarquinius.
Tartarus -ī m · n2 · Tartarus (the
lower regions of the underworld).
taurus -i m · n2 · a bull.
tectum -i m · n2 · roof, dwelling.
tegō tegere tēxī tēctum · v3 · cover,
protect.
tegumentum -ī n · n2 · a covering.
tēlum -i n · n2 · a missile.
temperantia -ae f · n1 · moderation.
templum -i n · n2 · a temple.
tempus -oris n · n3 · time.
tendō tendere tetendī tentum · v3 ·
try, tamper with.
tenēbrae -ārum ff · n1 · darkness.
teneō -ēre -uī · v2 · hold, keep (+ abl.
memoriā, in memory).
tener -era -erum · a12 · tender.
tento -āre · v1 · to attempt, tempt.
tenuis -e · a3 · thin.
tergum -ī n · n2 · the back, the rear.
terminō -āre · v1 · limit, define.
terra -ae f · n1 · land, earth.
terreō -ēre -uī -itum · v3 · frighten.
terrestris -tre · a3 · of the earth or
land.
terribilis -e · a3 · terrible.
terror -ōris m · n3 · terror.
tertiō · adv · thirdly.
tertius -a -um · a12 · third.
Teutoni -ōrum mm · n2 · the Teutons
(German tribe).
Thales -is m · n3 · Thales (a
philosopher).
theātrum -i m · n2 · theatre.
thermae -ārum ff · n1 · baths.
timeō -ēre -uī · v2 · fear.
timidus -a -um · a12 · timid.
timor -ōris m · n3 · fear.
tintinnābulum -i n · n2 · a bell, signal
bell, call-bell.
titulus -ī m · n2 · an inscription.
tolerō -āre · v1 · bear, endure.
tollō tollere sustulī sublātum · v3 ·
take away.
tonsus -a -um · a12 · cropped, short.
tot · num · so many (indecl.).

tōtus -a -um · a12 · all, the whole
(gen. tōtius).

tractō -āre · v1 · handle, treat.

trādō -ere -didi trāditum · v3 · hand
over.

trahō trahere trāxī tractum · v3 ·
drag, draw.

trāciō trāicere trāiēcī trāiectum · v3i
· throw across, cross
(→ trajectory).

tranquillus -a -um · a12 · quiet,
peaceful.

trans · prep · across (+ acc.).

transportō -āre · v1 · carry across.

trānstrum -ī n · n2 · a crossbench (for
rowers).

trecenti -ae -a · num · three hundred.

trēs tria · num · three (gen. pl. trium).

trīclīnium -ī n · n2 · a couch (around
three sides of a dining table),
hence, a dining room.

tridens -entis m · n3 · trident (three-
pronged spear).

trīgintā · num · thirty.

trirēmis -is f · n3 · 'trireme' (ship with
three banks of oars).

trīstis -e · a3 · sad, gloomy.

triumphus -i m · n2 · a triumph
(triumphum ago, to celebrate a
triumph).

Trōia -ae f · n1 · Troy.

Trōiānus -a -um · a12 · Trojan.

trucidō -āre · v1 · slaughter, kill.

tū tuī · pron · thou, you (sg.) (acc. tē,
dat. tibi).

Tullius -i m · n2 · Tullius.

Tullus -i m · n2 · Tullus.

tum · adv · then.

tumultus -ūs m · n4 · tumult,
disturbance.

turba -ae f · n1 · crowd.

turbulentus -a -um · a12 · noisy.

turpis -e · a3 · base, ugly.

turris -is f · n3i · tower.

tūtēla -ae f · n1 · protection.

tūtō · adv · safely.

tūtus -a -um · a12 · safe, protected.

tuus -a -um · a12 · thy, your (personal
pronominal adjective).

tyrannus -i m · n2 · a ruler.

Tyrius -a -um · a12 · Tyrian, of Tyre (a
city in Phoenicia, north of
Palestine).

U

ubi · adv · where?; where, when.

Ulixes -is m · n3 · Ulysses.

ultimus -a -um · a12 · furthest,
furthest part of (superl.).

umbra -ae f · n1 · shade.

ūnā · adv · in company, together.

unda -ae f · n1 · wave.

unde · adv · whence? from where?.

undecem · num · eleven.

undecimus -a -um · a12 · eleventh.

undique · adv · on all sides, from all
parts.

unquam · adv · ever.

urbs urbis f · n3i · city.

ursus -ī m · n2 · a bear.

ūsus -ūs m · n4 · use, practice.

ut · conj · as.

ūtilis -e · a3 · useful, expedient.

uxor -ōris f · n3 · wife.

V

valdē · adv · greatly, exceedingly.

valeō -ēre -uī -itum · v2 · be well, be strong (imp. valē, farewell!).

validus -a -um · a12 · strong.

vallum -i n · n2 · rampart.

vānus -a -um · a12 · useless.

varius -a -um · a12 · various.

vastō -āre · v1 · lay waste.

vāstus -a -um · a12 · vast.

vehementer · adv · vigorously.

vehō -ere veki vectum · n3 · carry; (pass.) be carried, ride.

vel · conj · or; vel . . . vel, either . . . or (that is, take your choice).

vēlōx -ōcis · a3 · swift.

vēlum -i n · n2 · sail.

venātor -ōris m · n3 · hunter.

venēnum -i n · n2 · poison.

veneror venerārī venerātus sum · v1d · revere, honour.

venia -ae f · n1 · pardon, permission, leave.

ventus -i m · n2 · wind.

vēr veris n · n3 · spring (the season).

verbum -i n · n2 · a word.

vērē · adv · truly.

vereor verērī veritus sum · v2d · fear.

Vergilius -ī m · n2 · 'Vergil'.

vērītās -ātis f · n3 · truth.

versō -āre · v1 · to turn; versor versari versatus (pass.), be engaged, be situated.

verū -ūs n · n4 · spit (for roasting).

vērus -a -um · a12 · true.

vester vestra vestrum · a12 · your (pl.) (personal pronominal adjective).

vestibulum -i n · n2 · entrance, entrance hall.

vestiō -īre -īvī -ītum · v4 · clothe, dress.

vetula -ae f · n1 · an old woman.

vetulus -a -um · a12 · old.

vexō -āre · v1 · harass, annoy, 'vex'.

via -ae f · n1 · street, course.

viātor -ōris m · n3 · traveller (cf. viātrīx -īcis f.).

vīcīnus -a -um · a12 · near.

victor -ōris m · n3 · a conqueror.

victōria -ae f · n1 · victory.

vīctus -ūs m · n4 · way of living.

videō vidēre vīdī vīsum · v2 · see; (pass.) seem.

vigilō -āre · v1 · watch, be awake.

vīgintī · num · twenty.

vīlla -ae f · n1 · a country-house, 'villa'.

vinciō -īre vīnxī vinctum · v4 · bind, surround.

vinculum -i n · n2 · a bond, chain.

vindicō -āre · v1 · claim, avenge.

vīnum -i n · n2 · wine.

violētia -ae f · n1 · violence.

violō -āre · v1 · 'violate', outrage, wrong.

vir viri m · n2 · man, husband, hero.

virgō -ginis f · n3 · a maiden.

viridis -e · a3 · green.

virtūs -ūtis f · n3 · virtue, courage.

vīsō vīsere vīsī vīsum · v3 · to visit.

vīta -ae f · n1 · life.

vitium -iī n · n2 · vice.

vītō -āre · v1 · avoid.

vituperō -āre · v1 · blame, censure.

vīvō vīvere vīxī vīctum · v3 · live.

vīvus -a -um · a12 · living.

vix · adv · scarcely, barely.

vocō -āre · v1 · call.

volucer -cris -cre · a3 · winged.

voluntās -ātis f · n3 · wish.

voluptās -ātis f · n3 · pleasure.

volūtō -āre · v1 · roll, turn.

vōs vestrī/vestrum · pron · you (pl.).

vōtum -i n · n2 · an offering.

vulnerō -āre · v1 · wound.

vulnus -eris n · n3 · wound.

vultus -ūs m · n4 · face, countenance,
expression.

Z

Zēnō -ōnis m · n3 · Zeno (founder of
the Stoic philosophy).



English–Latin Index



A

abandon · dēficiō dēficere dēfēcī
dēfectum.

able, to be · possum posse potui.

abode · sēdes sēdis f.

about · dē.

absent, to be · ab-sum ab-esse ā-fuī.

abuse · probrum -i n.

accident · cāsus -ūs m.

accompany · comitor comitārī
comitātus sum.

accuse · accūsō -āre.

Achilles · Achillēs -is m.

acquaint · certiozem facio.

across · trans (+ acc.).

administer · administrō -āre.

admire · admīror admīrārī
admīrātus sum.

adorn · ornō -āre; decorō -āre.

adorned · ōrnātus -a -um.

adverse · adversus -a -um.

adversity · res adversae ff.

advise · moneō -ēre -uī -itum.

Aeneas · Aenēas -ae m.

Aequians · Aequi -ōrum mm.

aestival · aestivus -a -um.

afflict · afficio -ere -fēcī -fectum.

Africa · Africa -ae f.

after · postquam; post (adv., prep.
+ acc.).

afterwards · postea.

again · iterum.

against · contrā (+ acc.); ob (+ acc.).

ago · abhinc.

agreeable, it is · libet libēre libuit or
libitum est (to, + dat. of person
concerned + inf. ± acc.).

aid · subsidium -i n.

alarm · exanimō -āre.

alas! · ēheu.

Albans · Albani Albānōrum mm.

Alexander · Alexander -dri m.

Alexandrian · Alexandrīnus -a -um.

all · omnis -e; tōtus -a -um.

alleviate · levō -āre.

almost · paene; prope.

Alps · Alpes -ium ff.

already · iam.

also · etiam; quoque.

altar · āra -ae f.

although · quamquam.

always · semper.

am · sum.

ambassador · lēgātus -ī m.

ambush · insidiae -ārum ff.

amiable · amābilis -e.

among · apud (+ acc.); inter (+ acc.).

ample · amplius -a -um.

ancient · antīquus -a -um.

Ancus (Marcius) · Ancus -i m.

- and · et.
 and not, nor · neque or nec.
 and so · itaque (ita + -que).
 anger · ira -ae f.
 angry · irātus -a -um.
 animal · animal -alis n.
 annihilate · exstinguō -ere exstinxī
 extinctum.
 announce · nuntiō -āre.
 annoy · vexō -āre.
 another · alius -a -ud.
 answer · responsum -i n.
 antler · cornū -ūs n.
 Antonius · Antōnius -iī m.
 anxiety · sollicitūdō -inis f.
 Apollo · Apollō -inis m.
 appease · plācō -āre; lēniō -īre -īvi
 -ītum.
 apple · pomum -i m.
 apply · adhibeo -ēre adhibuī
 adhibitum.
 approach, an · aditus -ūs m.
 approach, to · appropinquō -āre;
 adeo -īre -iī -itum.
 arbiter · arbiter -tri m.
 arena · (h)arēna -ae f.
 arm (of the body) · braccium -iī n.
 arms · arma -ōrum nn.
 army · exercitus -ūs m.
 army (on the march) · āgmen -inis n.
 around · circā (+ acc.).
 arouse · excito -āre.
 arrival · adventus -ūs m.
 arrow · sagitta -ae f.
 art · ars artis f.
 Artemisia · Artemisia -ae f.
 as · ut.
 as a whole · omnis -e.
 ashes · cinis -eris m.
 Asia (Minor) · Āsia -ae f.
 ask · rogō -āre; postulō -āre.
 assassin · sicārius -i m.
 assemble · collocō -āre.
 assist · iuvō -āre; adiuvō -āre adiūvi
 adiūtum.
 association · societās -ātis f.
 at another time · ālias.
 at hand, to be · adsum adesse adfuī.
 at high tide · magno aestu.
 at home · domi.
 at length · tandem.
 at once · simul.
 at that time · id temporis.
 at the same time · simul.
 Athenian · Athēniensis -e.
 attack, an · impetus -ūs m; incursiō
 -ōnis f.
 attack, to · oppugnō -āre; accūsō
 -āre; obsideō -ēre obsēdi
 obsessum.
 attempt · cōnor cōnārī cōnātus sum;
 tento -āre.
 attendant · satelles -itis m.
 attentive · attentus -a -um.
 Attica · Attica -ae f.
 Australia · Austrālia -ae f.
 authority · auctōritās -ātis f.
 autumn · auctumnus -ī m.
 avarice · avāritia -ae f.
 avenge · vindicō -āre.
 avoid · vitō -āre.
 await · exspectō -āre.

awake, to be · vigilō -āre.

B

Babylon · Babylon -ōnis f.

Babylonian · Babylōnius -a -um.

back door · posticum -i n.

back, rear · tergum -ī n.

bad · malus -a -um.

badly · male.

ball · pīla -ae f.

band · multitūdō -dinis f.

bank (of a river) · ripa -ae f.

barbarian · barbarus -i m.

bare · nūdus -a -um.

barely · vix.

bark · carīna -ae f.

base · turpis -e.

basin · piscīna -ae f.

baths · thermae -ārum ff.

battle · pugna -ae f; proelium -ii n.

battle array · aciēs aciēi f.

be · sum esse fuī.

be able · possum posse potui.

be absent · ab-sum ab-esse ā-fuī.

be distant · ab-sum ab-esse ā-fuī.

beak (of a ship) · rōstrum -ī n.

bear, a · ursus -ī m.

bear, to · tolerō -āre.

beat off · prōpulsō -āre.

beautiful · pulcher -chra -chrum.

beauty · forma -ae f; pulchritūdō
-dinis f.

because · quia, quod.

because of · propter (+ acc.).

bedroom · cubiculum -ī n.

beetroot, to be a · bētīzō -āre.

before · antequam; ante (+ acc.).

beggar · mendīcus -i m.

beginning · initium initiī n.

behind · post (adv., prep. + acc.).

behold! · ecce (+ nom.).

bell · tintinnābulum -i n.

Bellerophon · Bellerophōn -ontis m.

below · īnfra.

bend · curvō -āre; flectō -ere flēxī
flexum.

Beneventum · Beneventum -i n.

beseech · ōrō -āre.

besiege · obsideō -ēre obsēdi
obsessum.

best · optimus -a -um.

between · inter (+ acc.).

beware · caveō cavēre cāvī cautum.

Bias · Biās Biantis m.

bind · stringō stringere strinxī
strictum; vincio -īre vinxī
vinctum.

birth (regarding) · nātālis -e.

birthday · nātālis -is m.

black · niger -gra -grum; āter -tra
-trum.

blame · culpa -ae f.

blame, to · culpō -āre; vituperō -āre.

blaze · incendium -ii n.

blessed · beātus -a -um.

blind · caecō -āre.

blind · caecus -a -um.

blow · plāga -ae f.

boar · aper -pri m.

board, go on · conscendō -ere -di
-sum (+ in + acc.).

body · corpus -poris n.

bold · audax -ācis.
 boldness · audācia -ae f.
 bond · vinculum -i n.
 book · liber -bri m.
 bookcase · pluteus -ī m.
 bother · angō angere anxi anctum.
 bow · arcus -ūs m (dat. and abl. pl. -ubus).
 boy · puer puerī m.
 branch · rāmus -i m.
 brave · fortis -e.
 bravery · fortitūdō -dinis f.
 brazen · aēneus -a -um.
 bread · pānis -is m.
 breakwater · mōlēs mōlis f.
 breast · pectus -toris n.
 breastplate · lōrīca -ae f.
 breathe out · efflō -āre.
 brilliant · splendidus -a -um.
 Brundisium · Brundisium -ī n.
 bring · perdūcō -ere -xi -ctum.
 bring about · commoveo -ēre -mōvī -motum.
 bring in · importō -āre.
 broad · lātus -a -um.
 brother · frāter frātris m.
 build · aedificō -āre; struō struere strūxī strūctum.
 build · fōrmō -āre.
 building · aedificium -iī n.
 bull · taurus -i m.
 burden, a · onus -eris n.
 burden, to · impediō -īre -īvī -ītum.
 burn · ārdeō -ēre ārsī ārsum; cremō -āre; flagrō -āre.
 business · negōtium -ii m.

bust · imāgō -inis f.
 but · autem.
 but · sed.
 by · (agent) ā, ab (+ abl); (of location) per (+ acc.).
 by chance · forte.
 by how much? (+ comp.) · quō.

C

cackling · clangor -ōris m.
 Caesar · Caesar -aris m.
 call · vocō -āre; appellō -āre.
 call together · convocō -āre.
 calm · lēniō -īre -īvī -ītum.
 camp · castra -ōrum nn.
 Canada · Canada -ae f.
 Cannae · Cannae -ārum ff.
 Cannae · Cannēnsis -e.
 capable of · patiēns -entis (+ gen.).
 captive · captīvus -i m.
 capture · expugnō -āre.
 Capua · Capua -ae f.
 care · sollicitūdō -inis f; cūra -ae f (pred. dat. curae, an object of care).
 care for · cūrō -āre; studeō studēre studūi (+ dat.).
 carefully · diligenter.
 careless of · neglegens -entis (+ gen.).
 Caria · Cāria -ae f.
 carry · portō -āre; vehō -ere vexti vectum; carry across, transportō -āre;.
 Carthage · Carthāgō -ginis f.
 Carthaginian · Pūnicus -a -um;
 Carthāginiēnsis -e.

Carthaginians · Poeni -ōrum mm.
 carve · discernō -ere discernsī
 discerptum; scindō scindere scidi
 scissum.
 Cassivellaunus · Cassivellaunus -ī m.
 cast down · adflīgō -ere -īxī -ictum;
 dēiciō dēicere dēiēcī dēiectum.
 Catiline · Catilina -ae m.
 cause · causa -ae f.
 cause to flee · fugō -āre.
 cavalry · equitātus -ūs m.
 cavalryman · eques -itis m.
 cave · spēlunca -ae f.
 celebrate · celebrō -āre.
 celebrate (a triumph) · triumphum
 ago.
 celebrated · celebrer -bris -bre; clārus
 -a -um.
 censure · vituperō -āre.
 centaur · centaurus -i m.
 Cerberus · Cerberus -i m.
 certain · certus -a -um.
 certainly · nempe.
 chain · catēna -ae f; vinculum -i n.
 chance · cāsus -ūs m.
 change · mūtātiō -ōnis f.
 change, to · mūto -āre.
 chariot · currus -ūs m.
 charm · dēlecto -āre.
 Charon · Charōn -ontis m.
 cherish · diligō diligere dīlēxī
 dīlēctum.
 chestnut · castanea -ae f.
 chief man · prīnceps prīncipis m.
 children · liberi -ōrum mm.
 Chimaera · Chimaera -ae f.

Chiron · Chiron -ōnis m.
 choose · dēligō dēligere dēlēgī
 dēlēctum.
 Cicero · Cicerō -ōnis m.
 Cincinnatus · Cincinnātus -i m.
 circle · orbis -is m.
 circus · circus -i m.
 citadel · arx arcis f.
 citizen · cīvīs -is c.
 city · urbs urbis f.
 civic, civil · civilis -e.
 claim · vindicō -āre.
 Claudius · Claudius -i m.
 cleverness · ingenium -iī n.
 cloak · lacerna -ae f; pallium -iī n.
 close · coniūctus -a -um.
 clothe · vestiō -īre -īvī -itum.
 cloud · nūbēs -is f.
 club · clāva -ae f.
 coast · ora -ae f.
 cold · frīgus -goris n.
 collect · congregō -āre.
 colony · colōnia -ae f.
 colour · color -ōris m.
 column · columna -ae f.
 column (of an army) · āgmen -inis n.
 come and go (frequently) · commeō
 -āre.
 come forth · prōdeō -īre -ivī -itum.
 come! · ades (pres. imp. of adsum).
 command, a · imperium -ii n.
 commencement · exordium -i n;
 orīgō -ginis f.
 commit · mandō -āre; committō -ere
 -mīsī -misum.
 common · commūnis -e.

companion · socius -ii m.
 compare · comparō -āre (+ cum,
 with).
 complete · compleō -ēre -ēvī -ētum.
 comply with · morem gero (+ dat. of
 person).
 composition · scriptum -i n.
 comrade · comes -itis c.
 conceal · cēlō -āre.
 concealed · cēlātus -a -um.
 concerning · dē (+ abl.).
 condemn · damnō -āre (capitis, to
 death; lit., of the head).
 condemned · damnātus -a -um.
 condition · condiciō -ōnis f.
 conduct · mōrēs mōrum mm.
 conflagration · incendium -ii n.
 congratulation · grātulātiō -ōnis f.
 conqueror · victor -ōris m.
 consider · habeo habēre habuī
 habitum.
 console · cōnsōlor cōnsōlārī
 cōnsōlātus sum.
 conspiracy · coniūrātiō -ōnis f.
 constant, firm · constans -antis.
 constellation · sidus -eris n.
 consul · cōnsul -ulis m.
 consult · cōnsultō -āre.
 consume · cōnsūmō -ere cōnsūmpsī
 consumptum.
 contemplate · contemplor -ārī -ātus
 sum.
 contend · certō -āre.
 contend · contendō -ere -ī contum;
 cōnfligō -fligere -flīxī -flīctum
 (+ cum + abl.).

contented · contentus -a -um (with
 + abl.).
 contest · certāmen -minis n.
 contrary · adversus -a -um.
 conversation · sermo -ōnis m.
 Corinth · Corinthus -i f.
 corn · frūmentum -i n.
 corridor · fauces -ium ff.
 couch · trīclīnium -i n.
 council · concilium -i n.
 count · pōnō pōnere posuī positum.
 countenance · vultus -ūs m.
 country · regio -ōnis f; rūs rūris n
 (loc. rūri); patria -ae f.
 country-house · villa -ae f.
 courage · animus -i m.
 courier · tabellārius -i m.
 course · cursus -ūs m.
 cover · tegō tegere tēxī tēctum.
 covering · tegumentum -ī n.
 cowardice · ignāvia -ae f.
 cradle · cunae -ārum ff.
 create; elect · creō -āre.
 crime · scelus -eris n.
 cropped · tonsus -a -um.
 cross · trāiciō trāicere trāiēcī
 trāiectum.
 cross-bench (for rowers) · trānstrum
 -ī n.
 crowd, a · turba -ae f.
 crowd, to · celebrō -āre.
 crown · corōna -ae f.
 cruel · crudēlis -e; saevus -a -um.
 cruelly · crudēliter.
 cruelty · crudēlītās -ātis f; saevitia -ae
 f.

crush, overwhelm · opprimō -ere
-essī -essum.
cunning · callidus -a -um.
curve · curvō -āre.
custom · mōs mōris m.
cut · discerpō -ere discerspī
discerptum; scindō scindere scidī
scissum.
Cynic (philosopher) · Cynicus -i m.

D

daily · quotidie.
dam · mōlēs mōlis f.
dance · saltō -āre.
danger · perīculum -i n.
dangerous · perīculōsus -a -um.
Darius · Dārēus -ii m.
darkness · tenēbrae -ārum ff.
dart · iaculum -i n.
daughter · filia -ae f.
day · diēs diēi c.
dead · mortuus -a -um.
dear · cārus -a -um.
death · mors mortis f (gen. pl.
mortuum).
deceive · decipiō -ere -cepi -ceptum.
decide (by contest) · certō -āre.
declare · indicō -dicere -dixī -dictum
(+ dat.).
decorate · decorō -āre.
deed · factum -ī n; rēs rei f.
deer · cervus -i m.
defeat · clādēs -is f.
defeat, to · (utterly) prōfligō -āre.
defend · dēfendō -ere dēfendī,
dēfensum; mūniō -īre -īvī -ītum.

defender · defensor -ōris m.
define · terminō -āre.
delay · mora -ae f.
deliberate · cōsultō -āre.
delight · dēlecto -āre.
demand · postulō -āre.
deny · negō -āre.
depart · migrō -āre; abeō abīre abīvī
abitum; exeo -īre -īī -ītum (+ ex/
de).
deplore · plōrō -āre.
deprive of courage · exanimō -āre.
desert · dēserō -ere dēseruī
dēsertum; dēstituō -ere -ui
-ūtum.
deserted · dēsertus -a -um.
deserve · mereor merērī meritus
sum.
desire · cupīdō -inis f; studium -ii n.
desire to eat · esuriō -īre ēsurīvī
ēsurītum.
desire, to · cupiō cupere cupīvī
cupītum; optō -āre.
despise · contemnō -ere -tempsti
-temptum.
dessert · secunda mensa.
destroy · cōnsūmō -ere cōnsūmpsī
consumptum; destruō -ere -xi
-ctum; dēleō -ēre -ēvī dēlētum;
exstinguō -ere exstinxi
extinctum.
destruction · exitium -ī n.
destructive · perniciōsus -a -um.
deter · deterreo -ēre -uī -ītum (+ de
+ abl.).
devise · fingō -ere finxi fictum.

devour · cōnsūmō -ere cōnsūmpsī
 consumptum; dēvorō -āre.
 Diana · Diāna -ae f.
 dictator · dictātor -ōris m.
 dictatorship · dictātūra -ae f.
 die · morior morīrī moritus sum.
 different · diversus -a -um.
 difficult · difficilis -e.
 diligence · diligentia -ae f.
 diligent · diligens -entis.
 dine · cēnō -āre.
 dining room · trīclīnium -i n.
 Diogenes · Diogenes -is m.
 direct · dīrigo -ere dīrexi dīrectum.
 disaster · clādēs -is f; incommodum
 -ī n.
 disclose · expediō -īre -īvī -ītum.
 discover · reperiō -īre repperī
 repertum.
 disgrace · dedecus -oris n.
 dispute · contentiō -ōnis f.
 distant, to be · ab-sum ab-esse ā-fuī.
 distress · sollicitō -āre.
 district · regio -ōnis f.
 disturb · agitō -āre; perturbō -āre.
 disturbance · tumultus -ūs m.
 ditch · fossa -ae f.
 divide · sēparō -āre; dīvidō -ere dīvīsī
 dīvīsum.
 divine · dīvīnus -a -um.
 do · agō agere ēgī āctum.
 dog · canis -is c (gen. pl. canum).
 door · ostium -ii n; porta -ae f.
 doubtful · dubius -a -um.
 doubtless · profectō.
 dove · columba -ae f.

down from · dē (+ abl.).
 drag · trahō trahere trāxī tractum.
 draw · trahō trahere trāxī tractum;
 draw away, abstrahō -ere abstrāxī
 abstractum; draw up, īnstruō -ere
 īnstrūxī īnstrūctum.
 drawing · scriptum -i n.
 dread · horreō -ēre -uī.
 dreadful · dīrus -a -um.
 dress · vestiō -īre -īvī -ītum.
 drink · potus -ūs m.
 drink, to · bibō bibere bibī bibitum.
 drive · agō agere ēgī āctum; agitō
 -āre; pellō -ere pepuli pulsum.
 duck · anas anatis f.
 during · inter (+ acc.).
 dwell · habitō -āre.
 dwelling · tectum -i m.

E

eager · studiōsus -a -um (+ gen.).
 eager, to be · studeō studēre studuī.
 eagle · aquila -ae f.
 ear · auris -is f.
 earth · terra -ae f.
 easy · facilis -e.
 educate · ēdūcō ēdūcere ēdūxī
 ēductum.
 eel · mūraena -ae f.
 Egypt · Aegyptus -ī m.
 Egyptian · Aegyptius -a -um.
 eight · octō.
 eight hundred · octigenti -ae -a.
 eighteen · duodēvīgintī.
 eighth · octāvus.
 either . . . or · vel . . . vel.

- elect · eligo ēligere ēlēgī elēctum.
 element · elementum -ī n.
 elementary school · ludus litterarius.
 elephant · elephantus -i m.
 eleven · undecem.
 eleventh · undecimus -a -um.
 eloquence · ēloquentia -ae f.
 eloquent · ēloquēns -entis.
 Elysium, Elysian fields · Elysium -ii n.
 embark · conscendō -ere -di -sum (+ in + acc.).
 emperor · imperātor -ōris m.
 employed in, to be · agitō -āre.
 emulate · aemulor aemulārī aemulātus sum.
 end · finis -is m.
 endure · tolerō -āre.
 enemy · inimicus -i m; hostis -is c (usually pl.).
 engaged, to be · versor versari versatus.
 enough · satis.
 enslaved to, to be · serviō -īre -īvī -ītum (+ dat.).
 entangle · impediō -īre -īvī -ītum.
 enter · intrō -āre.
 enter, enter upon · in eo -īre inīvī initum.
 entrance · aditus -ūs m.
 entrance, entrance hall · vestibulum -i n.
 entrust · mandō -āre; committō -ere -mīsī -misum.
 envy · invidia -ae f.
 Ephesian · Ephesius -a -um.
 Epicurean · Epicūrēus -a -um.
 Epicurus · Epicurus -i m.
 equal to · pār paris (+ dat).
 equestrian · equester -tris -tre.
 err · errō -āre.
 especially · maxime.
 eternal · aeternus -a -um.
 Etruria · Ētrūria -ae f.
 Eurystheus · Eurystheus Eurystheī m.
 ever · unquam.
 everlasting · perpetuus -a -um.
 every · omnis -e.
 every day · quotidie.
 examine · cōsīderō -āre; explorō -āre.
 example · exemplum -ī n.
 exceedingly · valdē.
 excellent · optimus -a -um; praestāns -antis.
 excite · irrīto -āre.
 exercise · exerceō -ēre -uī -itum.
 exhale · efflō -āre.
 exhaust · defatigō -āre.
 exhort · hortor hortārī hortātus sum.
 exile · profuga -ae m.
 exist · sum esse fuī.
 expedient · ūtilis -e.
 experience · experientia -ae f.
 explain · explicō -āre.
 exposed · obnoxius -a -um (to + dat.).
 expression · vultus -ūs m.
 extravagant · luxuriosus -a -um.
 eye · oculus -i m.

F

Fabricius · Fābricius -i m.

face · vultus -ūs m.

fail · dēficiō dēficere dēfēcī dēfectum;

desum dē(e)sse dēfuī.

fair, equal · aequus -a -um.

faith · fidēs -eī f.

faithful · fidus -a -um.

faithless · infidus -a -um.

fame · fāma -ae f.

family name · cōgnōmen -inis n.

famous · praeclārus -a -um.

famous, the · ille illa illud (+ person's name).

far · longe; far off, procul.

farewell! · valē! (imp.).

farm · fundus -i m.

farmer · agricola -ae m.

fashion · fōrmō -āre.

fate · fātum -ī n.

father · pater patris m.

fault · culpa -ae f.

favourable · propitius -a -um;

secundus -a -um.

fear · metus -ūs m; timor -ōris m.

fear, to · timeō -ēre -uī; vereor verērī
veritus sum.

feather · penna -ae f.

feel · sentiō sentīre sēnsī sēnsū.

fellowship · societās -ātis f.

ferocity · ferōcia -ae f.

ferrous · ferreus -a -um.

ferryman · portitor -oris m.

fertile · ferāx -ācis.

festal · fēstus -a -um.

few · paucus -a -um.

fidelity · fidēs -eī f.

field · ager -gri m; arvum -i n.

fierce · ferōx -ōcis; ācer ācris ācre.

fiery · ācer ācris ācre.

fifth · quintus -a -um.

fifty · quinquāgintā.

fight · pugnō -āre.

figure · figūra -a f.

fill again · repleō replēre replēvī
replētum.

fill up · compleō -ēre -ēvī -ētum;
impleō implēre implēvī
implētum.

filled · plēnus -a -um (with + abl.).

find · reperiō -īre repperī repertum.

finish · finiō -īre -īvī -ītum.

fire · īgnis -is m; incendium -ii n.

firm · fīrmus -a -um.

first · pīrmus -a -um; prior prius
(comp.).

first principles · elementa -ōrum nn.

fishbowl · piscīna -ae f.

fitted · aptus -a -um (comp. aptior).

five · quinque.

five hundred · quingenti -ae -a.

fix · figō figere fixī fixum.

flame · flamma -ae f.

flee · fugiō fugere fūgī fugitum.

fleet · classis -is f.

flesh · carō carnis f.

flight · fuga -ae f.

flocks · armenta -ōrum nn.

flood · fluctus -ūs m.

floor · solum -i n.

flourish · flōreō -ēre -uī.

flower · flōs floris m.

follow · sequor sequī secūtus sum.
 fond · cupidus -a -um (of + gen.).
 food · cibus -i m.
 foolish · stultus -a -um.
 foot · pēs pedis m.
 foot-soldier · pedes -itis m.
 for · (conj.) enim; nam; (prep.) pro
 (+ abl.).
 for a little time · paulisper.
 for a long time · diū.
 for the sake of · causā (abl.) (gen. +,
 referring to the future).
 forces · cōpiae -ārum ff.
 form, shape · speciēs -eī f.
 form, to · fōrmō -āre.
 former · prior prius (comp.).
 former, the · ille illa illud.
 formerly · ōlim.
 forsake · dēstituō -ere -ui -ūtum.
 fortify · mūniō -īre -ivī -ītum.
 fortunate · fēlix -īcis.
 fortune · fortūna -ae f; fēlicitas -atis
 f.
 forty · quadrāgintā.
 fountain · piscīna -ae f.
 four · quattuor.
 four-horsed chariot · quadrīgae
 -ārum ff.
 fourteenth · quartus decimus -a -um.
 fourth · quartus -a -um.
 free · (adv.) gratis; (adj.) liber -era
 -erum (from + abl.).
 freedom · libertās -ātis f.
 friend · amīcus -i m.
 friendship · amīcitia -ae f.
 frighten · terreō -ēre -uī -ītum.

from · ā, ab (+ abl).
 from · e, ex (+ abl.).
 from all parts · undique.
 from here, from this place · hinc.
 from where? · unde.
 front · frōns frontis f.
 frugality · frūgālītās -ātis f.
 fruit · fructus -ūs m; pomum -i m.
 frustrate · frūstror frūstrārī
 frūstrātus sum.
 full · plēnus -a -um (+ abl.).
 fun · lūdus -i m.
 funeral · fūnus -eris n.
 funny · iocōsus -a -um.
 furthest · ūltimus -a -um (superl.).

G

gain · reportō -āre.
 Gaius · Gāius Gāi m.
 game · lūsus lūsus m.
 garden · hortus -i m.
 garland · corōna -ae f.
 gate · porta -ae f.
 gather · congregō -āre.
 gathering · concilium -i n.
 general · imperātor -ōris m.
 gift · dōnum -i n; mūnus -eris n.
 girl · puella -ae f.
 give · dō dare dedī datum.
 give thanks · ago gratias.
 glad, to be · gaudeō -ēre gāvīsus sum.
 gladly · libenter.
 glory · glōria -ae f.
 go · eō ire ivi (ii) itum; away, abeō
 abīre abīvī abitum; forth, prōdeō
 -īre -ivī -itum; in, in eo -īre inīvī

initum; out, exeo -īre -iī -itum
 (+ ex/de); to, adeo -īre -iī -itum.
 goat · caper -pri m.
 goblet · pōcūm -i n.
 god · deus dei m.
 goddess · dea -ae f.
 going back · reditus -ūs m.
 gold · aurum -i n.
 golden · aureus -a -um.
 good · bonus -a -um.
 good day! · salvē! (imp. of salveō
 salvēre).
 good luck · fēlicitas -atis f.
 goodness · probitas -ātis f.
 goose · anser -ōris m.
 govern · gubernō -āre; moderor
 moderārī moderātus sum.
 graceful · gracilis -e.
 Graces · Grātia -arum ff.
 grandfather · avus -ī m.
 grass · herba -ae f.
 grateful · grātus -a -um.
 grateful, to be · habeo grātiā.
 gratis · gratis.
 great · magnus -a -um; amplius -a
 -um.
 greater · māior (comp.).
 greatest · maximus -a -um (superl.).
 greatly · māgnoperē; valdē.
 Greece · Graecia -ae f.
 greedy · rapāx -ācis.
 Greek · Graecus -a -um.
 green · viridis -e.
 grief · dolor -ōris m.
 grieve · doleō dolēre doliū dolitum.
 ground · solum -i n.

guard · custōdiō -īre -ivī -itum.
 guardian · custōs -odis m.
 guest · hospes -itis m.
 guide, to · regō regere rēxī rēctum.
 gymnasium · gymnasium -iī n.

H

hail! · salvē! (imp. of salveō salvēre).
 hair · crīnis -is m (mostly pl.).
 half · dimidiū -a -um.
 hall · ātrium -ī n.
 hand · manus -ūs f.
 hand over · trādō -ere -didi trāditum.
 handle · tractō -āre; again, retrāctō
 -āre.
 hang · pendeō pendēre pependī.
 Hannibal · Hannibal -alis m.
 happiness · fēlicitas -atis f.
 happy · beātus -a -um; fēlix -īcis.
 harass · vexō -āre.
 harbour · portus -ūs m.
 hard · dūrus -a -um.
 harness (horses to a chariot) · iungo
 currum equis.
 hasten · properō -āre; mātūrō -āre
 (+ an acc. like iter, fugam, etc.).
 have · habeo habēre habuī habitum.
 he · see is ea id, ille illa illud.
 head · caput -itis n.
 heal · sanō -āre.
 healthy · sānus -a -um.
 healthy, to be · salveō salvēre.
 hear · audiō audīre audīvī audītum.
 hearth · focus -i m.
 heat · calor -ōris m.
 heaven · caelum -i n.

- heavily · graviter.
 heavy · gravis -e.
 Hector · Hector -oris m.
 Helen · Helena -ae f.
 helmet · galea -ae f.
 help · auxilium -ii n; subsidium -i n.
 help, to · iuvō -āre.
 hen, fowl · gallina -ae f.
 hence · hinc.
 her · suus -a -um.
 Hercules · Herculēs -is m.
 here · hīc.
 here is · ecce (+ nom.).
 hero · vir viri m.
 herself · sē.
 hey! · heus.
 hiding place · latēbrae -ārum ff.
 high · altus -a -um.
 high priest · pontifex -ficis m.
 highest · summus -a -um.
 hill · mōns montis m (gen. pl. montium).
 himself · sē.
 hinder · impediō -īre -īvī -ītum.
 hindrance · impedimentum -ī n.
 his · suus -a -um.
 history · historia -ae f.
 hither · hūc.
 ho!, ho there! · heus.
 hold · habeō habēre habuī habitum; a levy (of troops), delectum; teneō -ēre -uī (+ abl. memoriā, in memory); hold back, retineō retinēre retinuī retentum; hold out, ostendō -ere -ī ostentum/ostensum.
 holy · sanctus -a -um.
 Homer · Homērus -ī m.
 honest · honestus -a -um.
 honesty · honestas -ātis f.
 honour · honor -ōris m.
 honour, to · veneror venerārī venerātus sum.
 hope · spēs speī f.
 hope, to · sperō -āre.
 Horace · Horātius -ī m.
 horn · cornū -ūs n.
 horrible · ātrox -ōcis; horribilis -e.
 horse · equus -i m.
 horse-soldier · eques -itis m.
 hostage · obses -idis m.
 hostile · adversārius -a -um; hostilis -e; inimicus -a -um.
 hour · hōra -ae f.
 house · domus -ūs f (abl. sg. domo, acc. pl., domos; loc. domī).
 house on fire · incendium -ii n.
 housed with · penes (+ acc.).
 how many? · quot (interr. adj.).
 how much . . . as · tam . . . quam.
 how, how much · quam.
 how? · quōmodo.
 however · tamen.
 human · hūmānus -a -um.
 human being · homō -minis c.
 humble · humilis -e.
 humorous · iocōsus -a -um.
 hundred · centum.
 hunger · esuriō -īre ēsurīvī ēsurītum.
 hunter · venātor -ōris m.
 hurl · iaciō iacere iēcī iactum.
 hurtful · noxius -a -um.

husband · marītus -i m; vir viri m.

I

I · ego mei (acc. me, dat. mihi).

idle · ignāvus -a -um.

if · sī.

if . . . not · nisi.

ignorant of, to be · ignōrō -āre.

ill-will · invidia -ae f.

ill, to be · aegrōtō -āre.

illustrious · illūstris -e.

image · imago -inis f.

imitate · imitor imitārī imitātus
sum.

immediately · statim.

immense · ingēns -ēntis; immānis -e.

immortal · immortalis -e.

implore · ōrō -āre.

impluvium · impluvium -i n.

importance · gravitās -ātis f.

improve · ēmendō -āre.

in · in (+ abl.).

in company · ūnā.

in front · adversus -a -um.

in proportion to · pro (+ abl.).

in the hands/power of · penes.

in the morning · māne.

in the way · obviam.

in vain · frustrā.

inaccessible · difficilis -e.

inclined · facilis -e.

incorrect, to be · errō -āre.

increase · augeō augēre auxi auctum.

induce · adducō -ere addūxi
adductum.

industrious · industrius -a -um;
studiōsus -a -um.

infant · infāns -ntis m.

infantry · peditātus -ūs m.

infantryman · pedes -itis m.

inflame · excito -āre.

inflict · infligō infligere inflīxi
inflīctum.

influence · afficio -ere -fēci -fectum.

inform · certiore facio.

inhabitant · incola -ae m.

injury · iniuria -ae f.

inn · taberna -ae f.

innkeeper · caupō -ōnis m.

inscription · titulus -ī m.

instruct · instituō -ere instituī
institutum.

instructor · praeceptor -ōris m.

insult · probrum -i n.

integrity · integritās integritātis f.

intimate · coniūctus -a -um.

into · in (+ acc.).

introduce · importō -āre.

invent · fingō -ere finxī fictum.

invite · invītō -āre.

Ireland · Hibernia -ae f.

island · insula -ae f.

Isle of Man · Mona -ae f.

it · see is ea id, ille illa illud.

it is agreeable to · libet libere libuit or
libitum est (+ dat. of person
concerned + inf. ± acc.).

its · suus -a -um.

itself · sē.

Ixion · Ixion -onis m.

J

javelin · iaculum -i n; pilum -i n.
 jealous · invidus -a -um.
 jealousy · invidia -ae f.
 join · iungō iungere iūnxī iūctum.
 journey · iter itineris n.
 joy · gaudium -ii n.
 judge · iūdex -icis m.
 judge, to · iūdicto -āre.
 jumping · saltus -ūs m.
 Juno · Iuno -ōnis f.
 Jupiter · Iuppiter Iovis m.
 just · modo.

K

keenly · ācritēr.
 keep · servō -āre; teneō -ēre -uī
 (+ abl. memoriā, in memory); off,
 prohibeō -ēre -uī -itum.
 kill · necō -āre; interficiō -ficere -fēcī
 -fectum; trucidō -āre.
 kind · benignus -a -um.
 kindle · accendō -ere -ī accēsum.
 king · rēx rēgis m.
 kingdom · regnum -i n.
 knee · genū -ūs n.
 knock at · pulsō -āre.
 know · sciō -īre -īvī -itum.
 known · nōtus -a -um.

L

labour · labor -ōris m; opus -eris n.
 lament · dēfleō -ēre -evi -etum.
 land · terra -ae f.
 landlord · caupō -ōnis m.
 language · lingua -ae f.

Laomedon · Lāomedon -ontis m.
 late · sērō.
 lately · nūper.
 Latin · Latīnus -a -um; (as n. subst.)
 the language.
 Latins · Latīni -ōrum mm.
 laugh, laugh at · rīdeō rīdēre rīsī
 rīsum.
 law · iūs iuris n; lex lēgis f.
 lay waste · vastō -āre.
 lazily · sēgniter.
 lead · dūcō dūcere dūxī ductum; agō
 agere ēgī āctum; back, reducō
 -ere redūxī reductum; through,
 perdūcō -ere -xi -ctum; to,
 addūcō -ere addūxi adductum.
 leader · dux ducis c; praetor -ōris m;
 prīnceps prīncipis m.
 leaping · saltus -ūs m.
 learned · doctus -a -um.
 leave · abeō abīre abīvī abitum; exeo
 -īre -iī -itum (+ ex/de).
 leave · venia -ae f.
 leave (an interval) · interpōnō -ere
 -posuī -positum.
 left · sinister -tra -trum; (as f. subst.)
 left hand.
 left, to be · supersum superesse
 superfuī.
 legate · lēgātus -ī m.
 legion · legiō -ōnis f.
 lend · praebeō -ēre -uī -itum.
 Leonidas · Leonidas -ae m (voc.
 Leonida).
 less · minor -ōris.
 lesson · praescriptum -ī n.

let pass · interpōnō -ere -posuī
-posītum.
letter · (of alphabet) littera -ae f;
(epistle) litterae -arum ff.
lettercarrier · tabellārius -i m.
level, to make · aequō -āre (+ acc.
+ dat.).
levy (of troops) · dēlectus -ūs m.
liberty · libertās -ātis f.
lie beside · accumbō -ere accubū
accubitum.
lie hidden · lateō -ēre -uī.
lie, lie dead · iaceō -ēre -uī.
life · vīta -ae f.
light · on fire, accendō -ere -ī
accēsum; light up, illūminō -āre.
light · levis leve.
light · lūx lūcis f.
lighten · levō -āre.
lighthouse · Pharus -i f.
like · similis -e (+ dat.; + gen. of
persons).
limb · membrum -i n.
limit · modus -i m.
limit · terminō -āre.
line of battle · aciēs aciēi f.
linen · līnum -ī n; linteum -ī n.
linger · cessō -āre.
lion · leo -ōnis m.
listen to · audiō audīre audīvī
audītum.
listen! · heus.
little · paululum -i n; parum.
live · habitō -āre; vīvō vīvere vīxī
vīctum.
lively · alacer -cris -cre.

living · vīvus -a -um.
lo! · ecce (+ nom.).
load · cumulō -āre; onerō -āre.
log of wood · lignum -i n.
London · Londīnium -īī n.
long · longus -a -um.
look after · cūrō -āre.
look at · spectō -āre.
loss · iniuria -ae f.
lot · sors sortis f.
love · amō -āre.
love · amor -ōris m.
love · diligō diligere dīlēxī dīlēctum.
loving · amans -antis.
luckily · feliciter.
luxurious · luxuriosus -a -um.
luxury · luxuria -ae f.
Lycia · Lycia -ae f.
Lydia · Lȳdia -ae f.
lyre · fides -ium ff.
lyre · lyra -ae f.

M

Macedonians · Macedones -um mm.
madness, rage · furor -ōris m.
magistrate · magistratus -ūs m.
maiden · puella -ae f.
maiden · virgō -ginis f.
majesty · māiestās -ātis f.
make · faciō facere fēcī factum.
make known · significō -āre.
make ready · comparō -āre.
man · homō -minis c.
man · vir viri m.
mane · iuba -ae f.
manner · modus -i m.

- many · multus -a -um.
 Marathonian · Marathōnius -a -um.
 marble · marmoreus -a -um.
 Marcius · Marcius -i m.
 maritime · maritimus -a -um.
 Marius · Marius -i m.
 mark out · dēsīgnō -āre.
 market-place · forum -i n.
 marriage · coniugium -ii n.
 marsh · palūs palūdis f.
 marvel · mīrāculum -ī n.
 master · dominus -i m.
 master · magister -tri m.
 match, a · pār paris (for + dat).
 matter · rēs rei f.
 matters stand · res se habent.
 Mausolus · Mausōlus -i m.
 meal · cēna -ae f.
 meanwhile · intereā.
 measure · modus -i m.
 meat · carō carnis f.
 Medes · Medi -ōrum mm.
 meet · obviam ire (+ dat. of person).
 memory · memoria -ae f.
 merry · hilaris -e.
 messenger · nuntius -ii m.
 messenger · tabellārius -i m.
 metal · metallum -ī n.
 midday · meridies -iēi m.
 middle · medius -a -um.
 milk · lāc lactis n.
 mind · mēns mentis f; animus -i m.
 mineral waters · aquae -ārum ff.
 Minos · Minos Mīnōis m.
 miracle · mīrāculum -ī n.
 miserable · miserābilis -e.
 misfortune · malum -i n.
 missile · tēlum -i n.
 mistake · error -ōris m.
 mistress · domina -ae f; magistra -ae f.
 mix · misceō miscēre miscuī mīxtum.
 moderation · temperantia -ae f.
 mole · mōlēs mōlis f.
 money · argentum -ī n.
 money · pecūnia -ae f.
 monster · monstrum -i m.
 month · mēnsis -is m.
 monument · monumentum -i n.
 moon · lūna -ae f.
 morals · mōrēs mōrum mm.
 more · magis (comp.).
 more · plūs plūris.
 more quickly · citius.
 mortal · mortalis -is c.
 most · maxime.
 most · plūrimus -a -um (superl.).
 mother · māter mātis f.
 mountain · mōns montis m (gen. pl. montium).
 mournful · lūgubris -e.
 move · moveō -ēre mōvī mōtum.
 much · multum.
 much · multus -a -um.
 multitude · multitūdō -dinis f.
 Muse · Mūsa -ae f.
 music · musica -ōrum nn.
 musical · musicus -a -um.
 my, mine · meus -a -um.
 Mycenae · Mycēnae -ārum ff.

N

naked · nūdus -a -um.
 name · nōmen -minis n.
 name · nōminō -āre.
 Naples · Neāpolis -is f (acc. -im, abl. -i).
 natal · nātālis -e.
 nation · nātiō -ōnis f.
 native-land · patria -ae f.
 nature · nātūra -ae f.
 near · iuxtā (+ acc.); finitimus -a -um
 (to + dat.); propinquus -a -um;
 vīcīnus -a -um.
 near · prope.
 nearer · propior.
 nearest · proximus.
 nearly · prope.
 necessary · necessārius -a -um;
 necesse (+ esse/habere).
 need, there is a · opus est (to + dat. of
 person, of + abl. of thing wanted).
 neglect · neglegō neglegere neglēxi
 neglēctum.
 Nero · Nero -ōnis m.
 never · nunquam.
 new · novus -a -um.
 next · posterus -a -um.
 next · prope.
 next · proximus -a -um.
 night · nox noctis f.
 nightingale · lusciniā -ae f.
 Nile · Nilus -i m.
 nine · novem.
 ninth · nōnus -a -um.
 no longer · non iam.
 noble · nōbilis -e.

nobody · nēmō c; nullius; nullo nulli.
 noise, din · strepitus -ūs m.
 noisy · turbulentus -a -um.
 noon · meridies -iēi m.
 nor · neque or nec.
 not · nōn.
 not at all · nihil, nīl.
 not know · ignōrō -āre.
 not wish · nōlo nolle nōlui.
 not yet · nondum.
 not? · nonne interrog. particle.
 nothing · nihil, nīl.
 nourish · nūtriō -īre -īvi -ītum.
 now · iam.
 now · nunc.
 number · numerus -i m.
 nurse · nūtriō -īre -īvi -ītum.

O

O! Oh! · ō.
 oar · rēmus -ī m.
 obey · pāreō -ēre -uī (+ dat.).
 obtain (by asking) · impetrō -āre.
 ocean · ōceanus -i m.
 offend · offendō offendere offendi
 offēsum.
 offering · vōtum -i n.
 office · tabulinum -i n.
 often · saepe.
 old · vetulus -a -um.
 old man · senex -is m (gen. pl.
 senum).
 old woman · vetula -ae f.
 olive-tree, olive · olīva -ae f.
 Olympiad · Olympias -adis f.
 Olympic · Olympius -a -um.

on · in (+ abl.).
 on account of · ob (+ acc.).
 on all sides · undique.
 on behalf of · pro (+ abl.).
 on fire, to be · ārdēō -ēre ārsī ārsum.
 on foot · pedester -tris -tre.
 on the next day · postrīdiē.
 once · quondam; semel.
 once upon a time · aliquando.
 one of two · alter -era -erum.
 only · solum; modo.
 onto · in (+ acc.).
 open · apertus -a -um.
 open, unfold · aperiō -īre aperuī
 apertum.
 opinion · sententia -ae f.
 opponent · adversārius -a -um.
 opportunity · occāsiō -ōnis f.
 oppress · premō -ere pressī pressum.
 or · aut (exclusive).
 or · vel (inclusive).
 oracle · ōrāculum -ī n.
 oration · ōrātiō -ōnis f.
 orator · ōrātor -ōris m.
 order · imperō -āre; iubeō iubēre
 iussī iūssum.
 origin · orīgō -ginis f.
 ornament · decus -oris n;
 ornāmentum -ī n.
 Orpheus · Orphēus -ī m.
 other · alius -a -ud.
 other, other of two · alter -era -erum.
 others, the · cēteri -ae -a.
 our · noster -tra -trum.
 out of · e, ex (+ abl.).
 outrage · facinus -oris n; violō -āre.

over · per (+ acc.).
 overthrow · adflīgō -ere -īxī -ictum.
 overthrow · prōflīgō -āre.
 overwhelm · premō -ere pressī
 pressum.
 owe · dēbeō -ēre -uī -itum.
 owl · noctua -ae f.
 oyster · ostrea -ae f.

P

pace · passus -ūs m.
 pain · angō angere anxī anctum.
 paint · pingō -ere pinxi pictum.
 painted · pictus -a -um.
 painting · tabula -ae f.
 palace · palātium -iī n.
 pardon · venia -ae f.
 part · pars partis f.
 party faction · factio -ōnis f.
 passage · fauces -ium ff.
 patience · patientia -ae f.
 patient · patiēns -entis (+ gen.).
 pavement · solum -ī n.
 peace · pāx pācis f.
 peaceful · tranquillus -a -um.
 peacock · pāvo -ōnis m.
 Pegasus · Pēgasus -ī m.
 penalty · poena -ae f.
 people · gēns gentia f.
 people · populus -ī m.
 perhaps · fortasse.
 peristyle · peristȳlium -ī n.
 permission · venia -ae f.
 Persian · Persicus -a -um.
 Persians · Persae -ārum mm.
 person · homō -minis c.

Pharsalian · Pharsālius -a -um.
 Pharsalus · Pharsālus -i f.
 Phidias · Phīdias -ae m.
 philosopher · philosophus -i m.
 pier · mōlēs mōlis f.
 piety · religio -ōnis f.
 pillar · columna -ae f.
 Piraeus (harbour) · Piraeus -i m.
 place · locus -i m.
 place · pōnō pōnere posuī positum;
 impōnō -ere imposuī imposītum.
 place confidence in · habeo fidem
 (+ dat. of person).
 place, to · collocō -āre; locō -āre.
 plain · campus -i m.
 plan · consilium -ii n.
 Plataea · Plataeae -ārum ff.
 play · lūdō lūdere lūsī lūsum.
 play · lūdus -i m.
 play ball · pilam movēre.
 play, playing · ludendum -i n (a
 gerund, not used in nom.).
 plead · verba facere.
 plead a cause · causam dico.
 pleasant · dulcis -e.
 pleasant · iūcundus -a -um.
 please · dēlecto -āre.
 please · placeō -ēre -uī -itum (+ dat.).
 pleasing · grātus -a -um.
 pleasure · voluptās -ātis f.
 plough · arātrum -i n.
 plough · arō -āre.
 Pluto · Plūtō -ōnis m.
 poem, song · carmen -minis n.
 poet · poēta -ae m.
 poison · venēnum -i n.

Polyphemus · Polyphēmus -i m.
 Pompeii · Pompēii -ōrum mm.
 Pompey · Pompēius -i m.
 possess · possideō -ēre possēdī
 possessum.
 postman · tabellārius -i m.
 pour out · fundō fundere fūdī fūsum.
 poverty · paupertas -ātis f.
 power · dicio -ōnis m.
 power · potentia -ae f.
 power · potestās -ātis f.
 practical skill · ars artis f.
 practice · ūsus -ūs m.
 praetor · praetor -ōris m.
 praise · laudō -āre.
 praise · laus laudis f.
 prayer · prex precis f.
 preceptor · paedagōgus -ī m.
 prepare · parō -āre.
 prepare · struō struere strūxī
 strūctum.
 present · mūnus -eris n.
 present, to be · adsum adesse adfuī.
 press · premō -ere pressī pressum.
 pretend · simulō -āre.
 previous · prior prius (comp.).
 previously · antea.
 prey, booty · praeda -ae f.
 price · pretium -iī n.
 pride · superbia -ae f.
 priest · sacerdos -ōtis m.
 primary school · ludus litterarius.
 prince · prīnceps prīncipis m.
 prior · prior prius (comp.).
 prison · carcer -eris m.
 private · privātus -a -um.

private · *prōprius* -a -um.
 proclaim · *praedicō* -āre.
 promise · *promissum* -i n.
 property · *rēs reī* f.
 propitious · *propitius* -a -um.
 prosperity · *res secundae* ff.
 prosperous · *fēlix* -īcis.
 protect · *servō* -āre.
 protect · *tegō tegere tēxi tēctum*.
 protection · *praesidium* -ii n.
 protection · *tūtēla* -ae f.
 proud · *superbus* -a -um.
 provide · *comparō* -āre (+ cum, with).
 provoke · *irritō* -āre.
 prow · *prōra* -ae f.
 prudence · *prudentia* -ae f.
 prudent · *prūdēns* -entis.
 public · *publicus* -a -um.
 punish · *pūniō* -īre -īvī -ītum.
 punishment · *poena* -ae f;
 supplicium -ī n.
 pupil · *discipulus* -ī m.
 pursuit · *studium* -ii n.
 put · *impōnō* -ere *imposuī*
 impositum (+ dat.).
 put to flight · *fugō* -āre.
 Puteoli · *Puteoli* -ōrum mm.

Q

queen · *rēgīna* -ae f.
 quick · *celer* -is -e; *citus* -a -um
 (comp. adv. *citius*).
 quick · *facilis* -e.
 quiet · *tranquillus* -a -um.

R

race · *genus* -eris n.
 race (of people) · *gēns gentia* f.
 racecourse · *stadium* -īi n.
 rage · *saeviō* -īre -īvī -ītum (± in,
 against, + acc.).
 rain · *imber* -bris m.
 raise · *agitō* -āre.
 raise · *commoveo* -ēre -mōvī
 -motum.
 rampart · *agger* -aria m; *vallum* -i n.
 rapacious · *rapāx* -ācis.
 rare · *rārus* -a -um.
 rarely · *rārō*.
 read · *legō legere lēgī lēctum*.
 read aloud · *recitō* -āre.
 reading (things concerning) ·
 litterārius -a -um.
 reason · *causa* -ae f.
 recall · *revocō* -āre; *recordor*
 recordārī recordātus sum.
 recapture · *recipiō* -ere *recēpī*
 receptum.
 receive · *accipiō* -ere -cēpī -ceptum.
 recite · *recitō* -āre.
 reckon · *pōnō pōnere posuī positum*.
 recline · *accumbō* -ere *accubuī*
 accubitum.
 refuse · *negō* -āre.
 region · *regio* -ōnis f.
 Regulus · *Rēgulus* -i m.
 reign · *regnō* -āre.
 reject · *repudiō* -āre.
 rejoice · *laetor, laetārī, laetātus* sum;
 gaudeō -ēre *gāvīsus* sum.
 relate · *narrō* -āre.

religion · religio -ōnis f.
 relocate · collocō -āre.
 remain · maneō manēre mānsī
 mānsum.
 remarkable · praestāns -antis.
 remove · removeō removēre remōvī
 remōtum.
 render · reddō reddere reddidī
 redditum.
 renew · renovō -āre.
 renown · fāma -ae f.
 repeat · iterō -āre.
 replenish · repleō replēre replēvī
 replētum.
 report · nuntiō -āre.
 republic · res publica f (declined in
 both parts).
 rescue · servō -āre.
 rest, the · cēteri -ae -a.
 retake · recipiō -ere recēpī receptum.
 return · redeo -īre -īī -itum.
 return · reditus -ūs m.
 revere · veneror venerārī venerātus
 sum.
 revise · retrāctō -āre.
 reward · praemium -ii n.
 Rhea · Rhea -ae f.
 rich · opulentus -a -um.
 riches · divitiae -ārum ff.
 ride · vehō -ere vexī vectum (in
 pass.).
 right · dexter -tra -terum.
 right hand · dextra -ae f.
 rightly · rectē.
 rise · surgō surgere surrēxī.
 river · flūmen -minis n.

robber · latro -ōnis m.
 robe · lacerna -ae f; pallium -īī n.
 rod · ferula -ae f.
 roll, turn · volūtō -āre.
 Roman · Rōmānus -a -um.
 Rome · Rōma -ae f.
 Romulus · Romulus -i m.
 roof · tectum -i m.
 rose · rosa -ae f.
 rough · asper -era -erum.
 rough · horridus -a -um.
 rouse · exciō -īre -īvī -ītum.
 royal · rēgius -a -um.
 rudiments · elementa -ōrum nn.
 ruin · lētum lētī n.
 ruin · ruīna -ae f.
 rule · imperium -ii n; rēgula -ae f.
 rule, to · regō regere rēxī rēctum.
 ruler · tyrannus -i m.
 run · currō currere cucurrī cursum.
 running · cursus -ūs m.
 rustic, rural · rusticus -a -um.

S

Sabines · Sabini -ōrum mm.
 sacred · sacer -cra -crum.
 sacrifice, a · sacrificium -īī n.
 sacrifice, to · mactō -āre.
 sad, gloomy · trīstis -e.
 safe, protected · tūtus -a -um.
 safely · tūtō.
 safety · salūs -ūtis f.
 Saguntum · Saguntum -i n.
 sail · linteum -īī n.
 sail · nāvigō -āre.
 sail · vēlum -i n.

- sailor · nauta -ae m.
 same · idem eadem idem; the same
 as, idem qui.
 Samnites · Samnītes -ium mm.
 sand · (h)arēna -ae f.
 sandal · solea -ae f.
 satisfy · satiō -āre.
 savageness · ferōcia -ae f.
 say · dicō dīcere dīxī dictum.
 scarcely · vix.
 scent · odor -ōris m.
 school · lūdus -i m; schola -ae f.
 Scipio · Scīpiō -ōnis m.
 sea · mare maris n (gen. pl. marum,
 found once).
 second · secundus -a -um.
 secondly · secundo.
 secret · sēcrētum -i n.
 see, catch sight of · cōspiciō -ere
 cōspēxī cōspectum.
 see; (pass.) seem · videō vidēre vīdī
 vīsum.
 seize, carry off · rapiō rapere rapuī
 raptum.
 seize, drag · raptō -āre.
 Semiramis · Semīramis -is/-idis f.
 senate · senātus -ūs m.
 senators · patres -um mm.
 send · mittō mittere mīsi missum.
 sense · sēnsus -ūs m.
 serious · sērius -a -um.
 serious, severe, stern · sevērus -a
 -um.
 serpent · serpēns serpentis c.
 servant · minister -tri m.
 serve · serviō -īre -īvī -ītum.
 set before · appono -pōnere -posuī
 -positum.
 set free · liberō -āre; expediō -īre -īvī
 -ītum (from, + a(b)).
 set on fire · incendō -ere -di -sum.
 set out · proficīscor proficīscī
 profectus sum.
 settle · collocō -āre.
 seven · septem.
 seventh · septimus -a -um.
 severely · graviter.
 shade · umbra -ae f.
 shades (of the dead) · mānes -ium
 mm.
 shape · forma -ae f.
 shape, to · fōrmō -āre.
 shapeless · dēfōrmis -e.
 share · partior partīrī partītus sum.
 sharp · acūtus -a -um; ācer ācris ācre.
 sharply · ācritur.
 she · see is ea id, ille illa illud.
 sheep · ovis -is f.
 shepherd · pastor -ōris m.
 shield · scūtum -i n.
 ship · carīna -ae f.
 ship · nāvis -is f.
 shop · taberna -ae f.
 shore · lītus -toris n.
 shore · ora -ae f.
 short · brevis -e.
 short · tonsus -a -um.
 shortly · brevi (for brevi tempore).
 shout · clāmōr -ōris m.
 show · spectaculum -i n.

show, to · mōnstrō -āre; ostendō -ere
-ī ostentum/ostensum; praebeō
-ēre -uī -itum.

shut · claudō -ere -sī -sum.

Sibylline · Sibyllīnus -a -um.

Sicily · Sicilia -ae f.

sick · aeger -gra -grum.

sign · sīgnum -i n.

silent, to be · taceo -ēre -uī -itum.

silver · argentum -ī n.

similar to · similis -e (+ dat.; + gen. of
persons).

simple · simplex -icis.

simplicity · simplicitas -ātis f.

sin · peccō -āre.

since · abhinc.

sing · cantō -āre.

singing · cantandum -i n (a gerund,
not used in nom.).

sister · soror -ōris f.

Sisyphus · Sīsyphus -ī m.

sit · sedeō sedēre sēdī sessum.

site, position · situs -ūs m.

situated, to be · versor versari
versatus.

six · sex.

sixth · sextus -a -um.

size · māgnitūdō -inis f.

skilful, skilled in (+ gen.) · perītus -a
-um.

skill · ars artis f.

skin · pellis -is f.

slaughter · caedes -is f.

slaughter, to · trucidō -āre.

slave · puer puerī m.

slave · servus -i m.

sleep · dormiō -īre -īvī -itum.

sleep · somnus -ī m.

slipper · solea -ae f.

slow · difficilis -e.

slow · tardus -a -um.

small · parvus -a -um.

snake · serpēns serpentis c.

snatch away · ēripiō -ere -uī ēreptus.

so · tam.

so many (indecl.) · tot.

so much, by so much · eō (+ comp.
adj.).

so, so much · adeo.

Socrates · Sōcratēs -is m.

soften · molliō -īre -īvī -itum.

softness · mollitia -ae f.

soldier · mīles -itis m.

sole · solea -ae f.

solicitude · sollicitūdō -inis f.

Solon · Solōn -ōnis m.

sometimes · interdum.

son · filius -ii m.

soon · mox.

space · spatium -iī m.

Spain · Hispānia -ae f.

speak · dīcō dīcere dīxī dictum.

speak · loquor loquī locūtus sum.

spear · hasta -ae f.

spectacle · spectaculum -i n.

spectator · spectātōr -ōris m.

speech · ōrātiō -ōnis f.

spirit · anima -ae f.

spit (for roasting) · verū -ūs n.

splendid · splendidus -a -um.

sport · lūdus -i m.

spring (the season) · vēr veris n.

springs · aquae -ārum ff.
 stag · cervus -i m.
 stand out · ēmineō ēminēre ēminuī.
 stand, remain · stō stāre steti statum.
 star · stella -ae f; sidus -eris n.
 state · cīvitas -ātis f.
 statue · imāgō -inis f.
 statue · sīgnum -i n.
 statue · statua -ae f.
 stern (rear most part of a ship) ·
 puppis -is f.
 still · adhūc.
 stilus · stilus -i m.
 Stoic (philosopher) · Stōicus -i m.
 stone · saxum -i n.
 storm · procella -ae f.
 story · fābula -ae f.
 straight · rectus -a -um.
 stranger · advena -ae m; barbarus -i
 m.
 stratagem · dolus -i m.
 stream · rīvus -i m.
 street, course · via -ae f.
 strength · firmitas -ātis f.
 strengthen · firmō -āre.
 stringed instrument · fides -ium ff.
 strive · nītor nītī nīxus sum; strive
 after, aemulor aemulārī
 aemulātus sum.
 strong · validus -a -um.
 strong, to be · valeō -ēre -uī -itum.
 stronger · superior -us (comp.).
 structure · aedificium -iī n.
 study · studeō studēre studuī.
 study · studium -ii n.
 Styx · Styx Stygis f.

subdue · debellō -āre.
 suddenly · subitō.
 suffer · patior patī passus sum.
 suffer (of a penalty) · dō dare dedī
 datum.
 sufficiently · satis.
 suitable · aptus -a -um (comp.
 aptior).
 Sulla (a Roman general) · Sulla -ae m.
 summer · aestās -ātis f.
 summit · summum -i n.
 sun · sōl sōlis m.
 superior · superior -us (comp.).
 support · adiuvō -āre adiuvī
 adiūtum.
 surely · profectō.
 surety · sponsor -ōris m.
 surname · cōgnōmen -inis n.
 surpass, overcome · superō -āre.
 surround · cingō cingere cinxī
 cīntum; circumdō -dare -dedī
 -datum.
 surround · vinciō -īre vinxī vinctum.
 survive · supersum superesse
 superfuī.
 suspended, to be · pendeō pendēre
 pependī.
 sway · dicio -ōnis m.
 sweet · dulcis -e.
 swift · vēlōx -ōcis.
 sword · gladius -ii m.

T

table · mensa -ae f.
 tablet · tabella -ae f.
 tail · cauda -ae f.

take away · dēmō dēmere dēmpsī
dēmtum.
take away · tollō tollere sustulī
sublātum.
take care of · cūrō -āre.
take, capture · capiō capere cēpī
captum.
tale · fābula -ae f.
tamper with · tendō tendere tetendī
tentum.
Tantalus · Tantalus -i m.
Tarquinius · Tarquinius -ii m.
Tartarus · Tartarus -ī m.
task · praescrīptum -ī n.
teach · doceō -ēre -uī doctum.
teacher · magister -tri m; magistra
-ae f.
tear, rend · lacerō -āre.
temple · templum -i n.
tempt · sollicitō -āre; tento -āre.
ten · decem.
tender · tener -era -erum.
tenth · decimus -a -um.
terms · condiciō -ōnis f.
terrestrial · terrestris -tre.
terrible · terribilis -e; dīrus -a -um.
terror · terror -ōris m.
Teutons · Teutoni -ōrum mm.
Thales · Thales -is m.
than · quam (+ comp.).
thanks · grātia -ae f.
that · is ea id.
that, that near you · iste ista istud.
that, that over there · ille illa illud.
theatre · theātrum -i m.
their · suus -a -um.

themselves · sē.
then · tum; deinde; igitur.
there · ibi.
therefore · igitur.
thereupon · deinde.
thick · dēnsus -a -um.
thin · tenuis -e.
thing · rēs rei f.
think · putō -āre (+ double acc.).
third · tertius -a -um.
thirdly · tertiō.
thirst · sitiō -īre -ivī.
thirst · sitis sitis f (acc. sitim, abl. sitī,
no pl.).
thirty · trīgintā.
this, these · hic haec hoc.
thither · illūc.
thou · tū tuī (acc. tē, dat. tibi).
thousand · mīlia nn.
three · trēs tria (gen. pl. trium).
three hundred · trecenti -ae -a.
threshold · līmen -inis n.
through · per (+ acc.).
throw · iactō -āre; iaciō iacere iēcī
iactum; moveō -ēre mōvī mōtum;
across, trāiciō trāicere trāiēcī
trāiectum; down, dēturbō -āre;
dēiciō dēicere dēiēcī dēiectum.
thus · sīc.
thy · tuus -a -um.
tide · aestus -ūs m.
time · tempus -oris n.
timid · timidus -a -um.
tire · defatigō -āre.
to · ad (+ acc.).

to go to meet · obviam ire (+ dat. of person).
 to what place? · quō.
 today · hodiē.
 together · unā.
 tolerably · satis.
 tomb · sepulcrum -ī n.
 tomorrow · crās.
 too little · parum.
 too, too much · nimis.
 top · summum -ī n.
 torture · cruciō -āre.
 torture · supplicium -ī n.
 towards · ad (+ acc.).
 tower · turris -is f.
 town · oppidum -ī n.
 train · erudiō -īre -īvī -itum; instituō -ere instituī institūtum.
 train · exerceō -ēre -uī -itum.
 training · disciplīna -ae f.
 traveller · viātor -ōris m; viātrīx -īcis f.
 treachery · proditio -ōnis f.
 treat · tractō -āre.
 treaty · foedus -eris m.
 trial · iūdicium -ii n.
 tribe · nātiō -ōnis f.
 trick · fraus fraudis f.
 trident · tridens -entis m.
 trireme · trirēmis -is f.
 triumph · triumphus -ī m.
 Trojan · Trōiānus -a -um.
 troublesome · molestus -a -um.
 Troy · Trōia -ae f.
 true · vērū -a -um.
 truly · vērē.

trust · committō -ere -mīsī -missum.
 truth · vērītās -ātis f.
 try to equal · aemulor aemulārī aemulātus sum.
 Tullius · Tullius -ī m.
 Tullus · Tullus -ī m.
 tumult · tumultus -ūs m.
 turn · versō -āre; flectō -ere flēxī flexum.
 turned toward · adversus -a -um.
 tusk · cornū -ūs n.
 twelfth · duodecimus.
 twelve · duodecim.
 twenty · vīgintī.
 twist out, wrench · extorqueō -ēre extorsī extortum.
 two · duo duae duo.
 two hundred · ducenti -ae -a.
 Tyrian · Tyrius -a -um.

U

ugly · turpis -e.
 Ulysses · Ulixes -is m.
 umpire · arbiter -tri m.
 uncertain · incertus -a -um.
 uncle · avunculus -ī m.
 under · sub (+ abl.).
 undergo (of a penalty) · dō dare dedi datum.
 understand · intellegō -ere intellēxī intellēctum.
 unfailing · perpetuus -a -um.
 ungrateful · ingrātus -a -um.
 unhappy · infēlix -īcis.
 unholy (of days) · nefastus -a -um.
 unless · nisi.

unskilled · imperitus -a -um.
 unsuccessful · adversus -a -um.
 unwilling · invītus -a -um.
 unwilling, to be · nōlo nolle nōlui.
 up to · sub (+ acc.).
 uppermost · summus -a -um.
 urge on · incitō.
 use · ūsus -ūs m.
 use, to · adhibeo -ēre adhibuī
 adhibitum.
 useful · ūtilis -e.
 useless · vānus -a -um.

V

value · aestimō -āre (+ gen. of price).
 vanquish · debellō -āre.
 various · varius -a -um.
 vast · vāstus -a -um.
 Vergil · Vergilius -ī m.
 very · multum; very much, plūrimum
 (superl.).
 very many · plūrimus -a -um.
 vex · vexō -āre.
 vice · vitium -iī n.
 victory · victōria -ae f.
 vigorous · strēnuus -a -um.
 vigorously · vehementer.
 villa · vīlla -ae f.
 violate · violō -āre.
 violence · violentia -ae f.
 virtue, courage · virtūs -ūtis f.
 visit · vīsō vīsere vīsī vīsum.

W

wage · gerō gerere gessī gestum.
 wait upon, serve · ministrō -āre.

walk · ambulō -āre.
 wall · mūrus -i m.
 walls (of a town) · moenia moenium
 nn.
 wander · errō -āre.
 wander over · pererrō -āre.
 want for · desum dē(e)sse dēfui
 (+ dat. of thing).
 war · bellum -i n.
 ward off · prōpulsō -āre; arceō arcēre
 arcuī (from, + ab).
 warlike · ferōx -ōcis.
 warn · moneō -ēre -uī -itum.
 warship · nāvis longa.
 wash · lavō lavāre lavī lavātum.
 waste · cōnsūmō -ere cōnsūmpsī
 consumptum.
 watch · vigilō -āre.
 water · aqua -ae f.
 wave · unda -ae f; fluctus -ūs m.
 wax · cēra cērae f.
 way of living · victus -ūs m.
 wealth · divitiae -ārum ff.
 weary · fessus -a -um.
 wedding · nuptiae -ārum ff.
 weep over · dēfleō -ēre -evi -etum.
 weight · gravitās -ātis f; pondus -eris
 n.
 well · bene.
 well, to be · valeō -ēre -uī -itum;
 salveō salvēre.
 what? · quis quid.
 wheel · rota -ae f.
 when · ubi.
 when? · quanndō.
 whence? · unde.

where · ubi.
 where? · ubi.
 wherefore · quam ob rem.
 which? · quis quid.
 while · dum.
 whip · ferula -ae f.
 white · albus -a -um.
 whither? · quō.
 who, which, what · quī quae quod.
 who? · quis quid.
 why? · cūr.
 wicked · improbus -a -um.
 wife · uxor -ōris f.
 wild beast · bestia -ae f.
 wildness · ferōcia -ae f.
 willingly · libenter.
 wind · ventus -i m.
 window · fenestra -ae f.
 wine · vīnum -i n.
 wing · āla -ae f.
 winged · volucer -cris -cre.
 winter · hiems -emis f.
 winter-quarters · hiberna -ōrum nn.
 wisdom · sapientia -ae f.
 wise · sapiēns -entis.
 wish · voluntās -ātis f.
 with · cum (+ abl.).
 with difficulty · aegrē.
 withdraw · cēdō cēdere cessī cessum;
 dēficiō dēficere dēfēcī dēfectum.
 without · sine (+ abl.).
 without doubt · nempe; profectō.
 witty · iocōsus -a -um.
 wolf · lupus -i m.
 woman · fēmina -ae f.
 wonder · mīrāculum -ī n.

wonderful · mīrus -a -um.
 wood · silva -ae f.
 wooden · ligneus -a -um.
 wool · lāna -ae f.
 word · verbum -i n.
 work · opus -eris n.
 working · operārius -a -um.
 workman · faber -bri m.
 world · mundus -i m; orbis terrarum.
 worse · pēior -us.
 worst · pessimus -a -um (superl.).
 worthy of · dignius -a -um (+ abl.).
 worthy of love · amābilis -e.
 wound · vulnerō -āre.
 wound · vulnus -eris n.
 wrestling school · palaestra -ae f.
 wretched · miser -era -erum.
 writer · scriptor -ōris m.
 writing (things concerning) ·
 litterārius -a -um.
 writing tablets · cērae cērārū ff.
 writing-room · tabulinum -i n.
 wrong · iniuria -ae f.
 wrong, to · violō -āre.

Y

year · annus -i m.
 yet · adhūc.
 yield · cēdō cēdere cessī cessum.
 you · (sg.) tū tuī (acc. tē, dat. tibi);
 (pl.) vōs vestrī/vestrum.
 young · iuvenis -is (gen. pl.
 iuvenum).
 young person · iuvenis -is c (gen. pl.
 iuvenum).

your · tuus -a -um (sg.); vester vestra

vestrum (pl.).

youth · iuventūs -ūtis f.

Z

zealous, to be · studeō studēre

studuī.

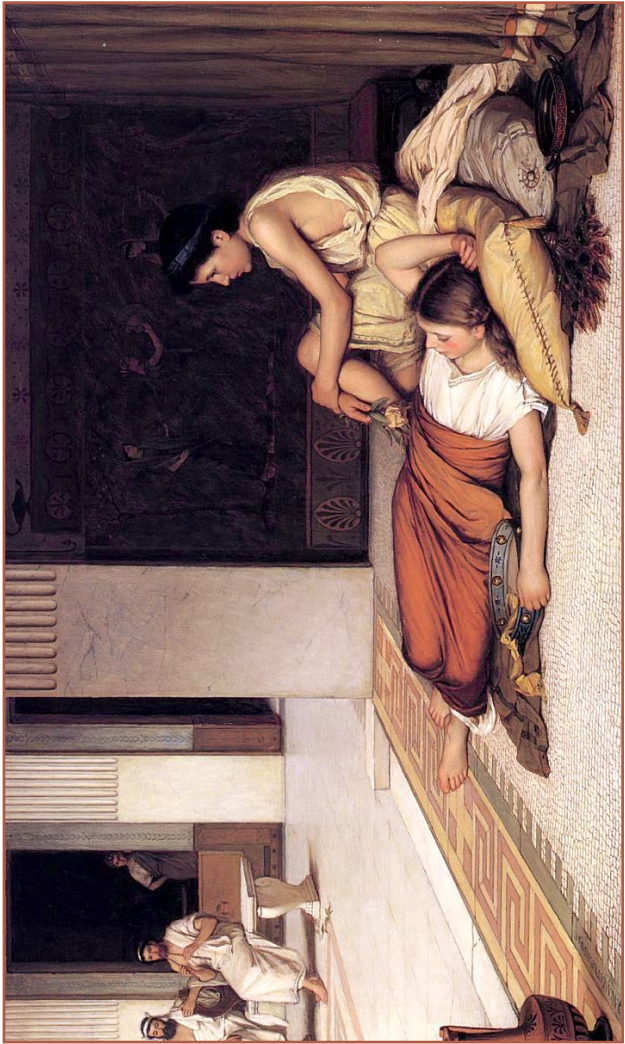
Zeno · Zēnō -ōnis m.



Bell's Modified

LATIN COURSE — APPENDIX





AFTER THE DANCE.

Commentary

GEORGE BELL & SONS was founded in 1839 by George Bell as an educational bookseller, with the intention of selling the output of London university presses. By the 1850s, however, it had become better known as an independent publisher of classics and children's books. George Bell left the piloting of the firm to his sons, Edward and Ernest, but maintained a healthy interest in its day-to-day operation until his death in 1890. In 1986, Bell & Hyman Ltd. merged with George Allen & Unwin, which was acquired by HarperCollins in 1990. Today, a remaining collection of nearly 500 boxes of archived George Bell & Sons Ltd. material is housed at the University of Reading.^o

BELL'S LATIN COURSE *for the First Year in Three Parts* was published at the turn of the twentieth century to rapturous reviews. Compared to modern textbooks, it has many quirks (using macrons to mark ablatives only, introducing the mixed conjugation very late, and ignoring the locative case and subjunctive mood). However, a hundred-year-old textbook can be forgiven for not reflecting changing attitudes in twentieth-century Latin pedagogy – and for its focus on the education of boys exclusively.

BELL'S MODIFIED was made possible through the recent digitisation of the Latin Course from specimen copies in Harvard University and the University of Toronto. It boasts a complete typographical re-rendering of the full text of all three parts; many new, high-definition, full-colour illustrations; and many expanded grammatical explanations and indices.

Still missing from this work are the following vital grammatical building blocks: the accusative-infinitive construction; the subjunctive mood, active and passive; participles, and the ablative absolute construction they form; gerunds, supines, and gerundives; the Roman calendar and weight system; a proper treatment of Roman names; and treatment of common and irregular and defective verbs. This would be able material for beginning a second year, before progressing to Latin texts.

Credits

TEXT CREDITS

TEXT ADAPTED FROM

MARCHANT, E. C. & SPENCER, J. G. (1902). *Bell's Latin Course for the First Year*. George Bell & Sons. York Street, Covent Garden. ^{ooo}

PICTURE CREDITS

Otherwise uncredited pictures are from MARCHANT & SPENCER, above.

Introduction

BARTHOLOMEUS BREENBERGH (1650). *Idealised View with Roman Ruins, Sculptures, and a Port*. Public Domain. ^o

Book One

GIOVANNI PAOLO PANINI (c. 1745–50). *An Architectural Capriccio of the Roman Forum with Philosophers and Soldiers among Ancient Ruins, including the Arch of Janus Quadrifrons, the Sarcophagus of Santa Constanza, the Farnese Hercules and the Cincinnatus*. Public Domain. ^o

SEAN PATHASEMA (c. 1798–1809). *Britannia Triumphant*. Birmingham Museum of Art. [CC BY 3.0](#). Cropped. ^o

W. & D. DOWNEY (1897). *Queen Victoria Photographed for her Diamond Jubilee*. (Also at National Portrait Gallery, London.) Public Domain. ^o

ANGMOKIO (3 May 2008). *An Eastern Imperial Eagle*. [CC BY-SA 2.5](#). Unchanged. ^o

DORI (28 March 2008). *Pigeon Portrait* 4861. CC BY-SA 3.0 US. Flopped.°

ROSA BONHEUR (1844). *Le Labourage*. Braun, Clément et Cie, Paris. Public Domain.°

ALBERT EDELFELT (1883). *At Sea*. Gothenburg Museum of Art. Public Domain.°

Capture of the Carthaginian Fleet by the Romans, in SHIPPEN, EDWARD (1883). *Naval Battles, Ancient and Modern*. J. C. McCurdy & Co., Philadelphia. Public Domain. Recoloured.°

GGIA (24 October 2010). *Panoramic View from Areopagus Hill*. CC BY-SA 3.0. Cropped.°

JACOB JORDAENS (C.17th). *Odysseus in the Cave of Polyphemus*. Pushkin Museum of Fine Arts. Public Domain.°

Book Two

HUBERT ROBERT (1786). *Imaginary View of Rome with Equestrian Statue of Marcus Aurelius, the Column of Trajan and a Temple*. National Museum of Western Art. Public Domain.°

BRITON RIVIÈRE (1881). *A Roman Holiday*. National Gallery of Victoria. Public Domain.°

AUGURMM (2015). *Marek Tuliusz Cyceon*, Muzeum Kapi-tolińskie.°

JOSEPH MARTIN KRONHEIM (1868). *Plate I – Druids, or British Priests*. Pictures of English History. Public Domain.°

OTTO BRAUSEWETTER (c. 1904). *Die Barke des Charon*. Public Domain.°

CHARLES JALABERT (n.d.). *Nymphs Listening to the Songs of Orpheus*. Public Domain.°

T. VAN THULDEN (c. 1640). *Bellerophon Slaying the Chimera*. [After P. P. RUBENS (1635).] Wellcome Trust. Public Domain.°

ANONYMOUS PRINTMAKER (c. 1493). *Hercules en de Nemeïsche Leeuw*. CC0 1.0.°

KRONHEIM, JOSEPH MARTIN (1868). *Plate IV – Boadicea and Her Army, Pictures of English History*. Public Domain.°

MICHEL DE MAROLLES, PIERRE BREBIETTE, JACQUES FAVEREAU, CORNELIS BLOEMAERT, ABRAHAM VAN DIEPENBEECK & JACOB MATHAM (1655). *Tableaux du Temple des Muses*. Chez Antoine de Sommaville au Palais dans la Galerie des Merciers à l'Escu de France.°

Book Three

GIOVANNI PAOLO PANINI (1747). *View of the Roman Forum*. Detroit Institute of Arts. Public Domain.°

KRASZNAI GYULA (1971). *Vettiusok Háza*. CC BY-SA 3.0. Unchanged.°

ARTHUR SMITH (Curator) & GEORGE SCHARF (Illustrator) (1900). 'Tomb of Payava, East Side' in *A Catalogue of Sculpture in the Department of Greek and Roman Antiquities*.°

GUERCINO (1651). *The Libyan Sibyl*. Royal Collection. Public Domain.°°

FERDINAND KNAB (1886). 'The Mausoleum at Halicarnassus' in *Seven Wonders of the Ancient World*. Public Domain.°

MATTES (8 September 2010). Pompeii Atrium Reconstruction, House of the Vettii, Boboli Gardens, Florence, Italy. Public Domain.°

GUSTAVE BOULANGER (1877). *Un repas chez Lucullus; Triclinium d'été*. Public Domain. Cropped.°°

ERIC GABA (July 2006). *Alexander, Son of Philip, [King of] Macedonia*. [CC BY-SA 2.5](#). Unchanged.°

Statuette of Alexander the Great on Horseback. First Century BCE bronze, with silver inlays. 49 × 47 × 29 cm. Naples, Museo Archeologico Nazionale.°

ANTONIO LAFRERI (1575). *Speculum Romanae Magnificentiae: Column of Dilius and Obelisque Fountain*. Metropolitan Museum of Art 41.72 (1.106). Public Domain.°

HABIB M'HENNI (20 March 2021). *Site archéologique de Carthage, Tunisie*. [CC BY 4.0](#). Cropped.°

ÁNGEL M. FELICÍSIMO (1 May 2016). *Tusculum portrait*. [CC BY 2.0](#).°

CAROLE RADDATO (2 July 2015). *Pompey the Great, Augustean copy of a 70–60 BC original, Venice Museo Archeologico Nazionale*. [CC BY-SA 2.0](#).°

THOMAS LANGSFORD (2021). *Ground Plan of the House of Pansa, Pompeii*. [CC BY 4.0](#).

JOHN WILLIAM WATERHOUSE (c. 1874). *In the Peristyle*. Rochdale Art Gallery 122. Public Domain.°

ANONYMOUS (between 1700 and 1799). *The Bay of Naples, seen through a Grotto*. 499996 (National Trust). Public Domain.°

HEINRICH LEUTEMANN (1866). ‚Hannibals Übergang über die Alpen‘ [‘Hannibal’s Passage over the Alps’] in *Bilder aus dem Altertume* [Pictures from Antiquity]. Public Domain.°

Indices

GIOVANNI PAOLO PANNINI (1757). *Imaginary Gallery of Ancient Roman Art*. Metropolitan Museum of Art. Public Domain.°

GIOVANNI PAOLO PANINI (n.d.). *Roman Ruins*. Nationalmuseum, Stockholm. Public Domain. °

Appendices

GIOVANNI PAOLO PANNINI (1757). *Picture Gallery with Views of Modern Rome*. Museum of Fine Arts Boston. Public Domain. °

JOHN WILLIAM WATERHOUSE (1876). *After the Dance*. CC BY-SA 4.0. Enhanced. °

LICENSING

A key term of use for many of the above works is that the contributions made with their help must be released into an identical or compatible license. This work is therefore licensed under CC BY 4.0. Refer to the terms of use for individual works before using them in your own creations. I am not a lawyer. ■

